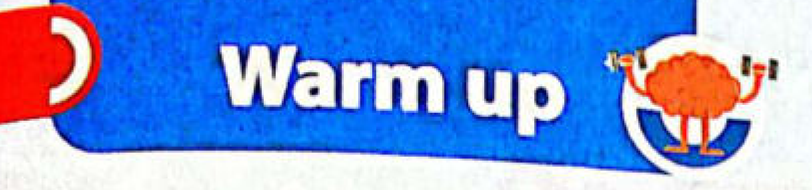
Contents

Unit 7 Health and safety

Objectives

Reading : Leaflet about hygiene around the home
Writing : An email giving advice
Listening : How to give first aid
Speaking : Giving advice
Language : should/shouldn't, must/ mustn't
Critical thinking : Interpreting research: the importance of hygiene





Your guide to personal hygiene:

....

....

....

What to do to achieve your personal hygiene.

....

....

....

....



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

allergy (n)	حساسية
at least	على الأقل
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا (جمع)
bedding (n)	أغطية السرير
breathe (v) – d	يتنفس
CPR (n)	عملية التنفس الصناعى
danger (n)	خطر
dust (n)	غبار/تراب
emergency services	خدمات طوارئ
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
research (n)	بحث/دراسة
respond (v) – ed	يستجيب/يرد
soil (n)	التربة الزراعية

Vocabulary on Reading

agree (v) – d	يوافق
article (n)	مقال
available (adj)	متاح
avoid (v) – ed	يتجنب
bin (n)	سلة مهملات
blog (n)	مدونة
bottom (n)	قاع
cause (v) – d (n)	يسبب/سبب
contain (v) – ed	يحتوى على
drop (v) – ped	يسقط
easily (adv)	بسهولة
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع
food waste (n)	فضلات الطعام
gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة
gloves (n)	قفازات
grow (v)	ينمو
healthy (adj)	صحى/سليم
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية
hygienically (adv)	صحيًا (بشكل صحى)
interpreting (n)	تفسير



leaflet (n)	منشور/نشرة
leave (v)	يغادر/يترك
links (n)	روابط
pet (n)	حيوان أليف
remove (v) – d	يزيل
rule (n)	قاعدة
safe (adj)	سليم/آمن
safety (n)	سلامة/أمان
scientific (adj)	علمى
separate (adj)	منفصل
skin (n)	جلد إنسان (بشرة)
soapy (adj)	صابونى
surprising (adj)	مدهش
toilet (n)	حمام
trousers (n)	بنطلون
trust (v) – ed (n)	يثق فى/ثقة
unusual (adj)	غير عادى
warm (adj)	دافئ
wear (v)	يرتدى
website (n)	موقع على الإنترنت

Vocabulary on Listening

basic (adj)	أساسى
cable (n)	كابل /سِلك (كهربائى)
check (v) – ed	يفحص/يراجع
description (n)	وصف
electrical (adj)	كهربى
equipment (n)	معدات
hurt (v)	يؤذى/يجرح
ingredients (n)	مقادير
lie (v)	يستلقى/يكذب
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد
medical (adj)	طبى
metal (n)	معدن
nearby (adj)	قريب/مجاور
possibility (n)	إمكانية/احتمالية
shout (v) (ed)	يهتف/يصيح
situation (n)	موقف



Workbook Vocabulary

chopping boards	ألواح تقطيع (طعام)
cleaner (n)	منظف/عامل نظافة
cough (v) – ed	يكح
cut (n)	جرح/شق
dirt (n)	قذارة
expert (n)	خبير
extra (adj)	إضافي
fact (n)	حقيقة
messy (adj)	فوضوى
properly (adv)	بشكل جيد
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
replace (v) – d	يستبدل
sneeze (v) – d	يعطس
special (adj)	خاص
sponge (n)	قطعة إسفنج
spread (v)	ينتشر
tissue (n)	منديل ورقى
wet (adj)	مبلل

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as often as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع
become ill	يصبح مريضًا
carry bacteria	ينقل العدوى البكتيرية
come back again	يرجع مرة أخرى
do CPR	يقوم بعمل التنفس الصناعى
DOs and DON'Ts	ما يجب فعله وما لا يجب فعله
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
get dirty	يتسخ
give advice	ينصح
have a shower	يغتسل
have an allergy to	لديه حساسيه من
keep .... clean	يحافظ على ... نظيفًا
make .... harder	يجعل ... أصعب
move away from	يتحرك بعيداً عن
post online	ينشر على الإنترنت
protect .... against	يحمى ... ضد/من ...

research on the same topic	أبحاث فى نفس الموضوع	take air in and out	يستنشق ويزفر الهواء
stay clean	يبقى نظيفًا	know about	يعرف عن
belong to	ينتمى لـ/يخص	live in	يعيش فى
contact with	تواصل مع	live on	يعيش على
drink from	يشرب من	return from	يعود من
evacuate .... from	يخلى ... من	shout at	يصرخ فى
evacuate .... to	يخلى ... إلى	talk to	يتحدث إلى
fall on	يسقط على	think of/about	يفكر فى
full of	مملوء بـ	lie on	يستلقى على
find about	يكشف عن	move around	يتنقل
go into	يدخل فى	near to	قريب من
home for	موطن لـ	respond to	يستجيب لـ

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
agree يوافق	agreement اتفاق	agreeable مقبول
------------------------------	allergy حساسية allergen مادة تثير الحساسية	allergic لديه حساسية
breathe يتنفس	breathing عملية التنفس breath النفس	breathless غير قادر على التنفس breathy لاهث
burn يحرق	burn حرق burner مشعل	burning مشتعل/مضيء
describe يصف	description وصف	descriptive وصفي describable قابل للوصف
dirty يجعل شيئًا قذرًا	dirt قذارة	dirty قذر
dust يزيل التراب	dust تراب	dusty مترب (عليه غبار)
endanger يعرض للخطر	danger خطر	dangerous خطير endangered معرض للخطر
grow ينمو	growth نمو	growing نامٍ/متزايد
interpret يفسر	interpretation تفسير interpreter مترجم (فورى)	interpretive تفسيرى
medicate يعالج/يداوى	medicine طب / دواء	medical طبى
mess يقوم بعمل فوضى	mess فوضى	messy فوضوى
respond يستجيب	response استجابة	responsive متجاوب
soap يضع الصابون على	soap صابون	soapy صابونى
soil يلطخ/يلوث/يوسخ	soil التربة الزراعية	soiled متسخ



Pre-reading question: - What do you do to keep your home clean?

Hygiene at home: Seven DOs and DON'Ts for a healthy life





1. Take your shoes off

The bottoms of your shoes can carry(1) a lot of bacteria into your house. You should always take your shoes off at the door.

2. No more dust(2)

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned. However, dust can make it difficult to breathe and it can cause(3) skin problems. You should clean your house or flat as often as you can.

3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks(4) can easily fall(5) on the kitchen floor. You should clean your kitchen floor at least(6) once a week. You should use warm(7), soapy water so you can remove(8) all the bacteria.

4. Change your bedding

We spend a lot of our time asleep in bed. You should change your bedding(9) at least once every two weeks so bacteria can't live in it.

5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets(10)

Research has shown that contact(11) with pets early in life can protect you against allergies(12). But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything else until you've washed your hands.

6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear gloves(13) if you're going to touch soil(14) in the garden because it can contain bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished gardening, too.

(1) يحمل
(2) غبار
(3) يسبب
(4) مشروبات
(5) يسقط
(6) على الأقل
(7) دافئ
(8) يزيل
(9) أغطية الفراش
(10) حيوانات أليفة
(11) اتصال
(12) حساسية
(13) قفازات
(14) تربة زراعية

7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can grow[15] in your bin[16]. You shouldn't leave your bin open.

Hygiene rules[17] around the world

In the UK, you must put your food waste[18] in a separate[19] bin.
In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house.
In the USA, you should offer[20] to help clean up after dinner at a friend's house.

(15) ينمو
(16) سلة مهملات
(17) قواعد
(18) فضلات الطعام
(19) منفصل
(20) يعرض

Post-reading question:

- Can you think of another DO or DON'T for hygiene at home?



Pre-listening question:

- What do you think is wrong with the man in the picture?



Nurse: Today, I'm going to tell you what to do if you find a person who is lying[1] on the ground and not moving. Call the emergency services immediately[2]. Then you must check[3] if there are any dangers[4] near to the person, like electrical cables[5]. If there are any dangers, move the person away from them. When you know they're safe, shout 'Hello!' or 'Wake up!' and see if the person responds. If the person doesn't respond to you, put your face next to their face so you can check their breathing[6]. If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to do CPR so you can help the person start to breathe again.

(1) يستلقي
(2) فورًا
(3) يتحقق من
(4) مخاطر
(5) الكابلات الكهربائية
(6) عمليه التنفس

Post-listening question:

- What advice can the emergency services give to help someone breathe again?

Workbook Text

Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of dirt[1] and bacteria.

Research shows that the deep cuts in chopping boards[2] are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them properly[3]. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too. However, bacteria really love warm, wet places and so your kitchen sponge[4] probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home.

Experts[5] say that it's most important to wash our hands regularly. If we touch animals, we should wash our hands, and we need to use a tissue[6] when we sneeze to stop the bacteria spreading[7] in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boards and giving them an extra clean once a week. We should replace[8] kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy special cleaners for phones, tablets and computers.

(1) قذارة
(2) ألواح التقطيع
(3) بصورة صحيحة
(4) قطعة إسفنج
(5) خبراء
(6) منديل ورقى
(7) انتشار
(8) يستبدل

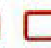
Video Script

We need food to live, but if our food isn't prepared hygienically[1], we can have some serious[2] health problems. That's the reason why food hygiene is very important, both in restaurants and shops, and at home.

Before you start cooking, you must wash your hands, so that there are no bacteria on them. If you have long hair, you should tie it up so no hairs[3] will go into the food you're cooking. After that, you can take your ingredients[4], knives[5] and other equipment and start preparing the food. You must wash fruit and vegetables first. You mustn't touch the metal part of the knife while you're using it.

(1) بطريقة صحية
(2) جاد/خطير
(3) شعرات
(4) مكونات
(5) سكاكين






Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She has an influenza. She can't stop coughing and ....
   a) laughing b) breathing c) eating d) sneezing
2. Bacteria like to grow in warm, wet places like a kitchen ....
   a) oven b) cook c) sponge d) gas
3. My father was very angry because there was .... on all the furniture.
   a) dust b) bin c) cloud d) snow
4. You should use a .... when you sneeze in order not to spread bacteria.
   a) paper b) tissue c) sponge d) toilet
5. You should wash your hands with .... after using the toilet.
   a) gloves b) oil c) dirt d) soap

Focus on Vocabulary

allergy حساسية	a medical condition in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance
at least على الأقل	not less than a particular number or amount
bacteria بكتيريا (جمع)	very small living things that cause diseases
bedding أغطية السرير (ملايات السرير)	sheets, covers, etc. that you put on a bed
breathe يتنفس	taking air in and out of your body
CPR عملية التنفس الصناعى	something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body
danger خطر	the possibility of being hurt or killed

dust غبار/تراب	dry powder consisting of extremely small bits of dirt that is in buildings on furniture, floors, etc. if they are not kept clean
emergency services خدمات طوارئ	people who come to help you very quickly
first aid إسعافات أولية	basic medical help given quickly
research البحث العلمي	studying something to find new facts about it
respond يستجيب/يرد	doing something when someone talks to you
soil تربة زراعية	the top layer of the earth in which plants grow

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
available	متاح/متوافر	feasible/ obtainable	unavailable	غير متاح/غير متوافر
avoid	يتجنب	evade/ avert	face	يواجه
bottom	قاع	base	top	قمة
change	يغير	alter/ modify	remain	يظل
danger	خطر	hazard	safety	أمان
easily	بسهولة	simply/ smoothly	difficultly	بصعوبة
follow	يتبع	pursue	disregard	يتجاهل
hygiene	النظافة الشخصية	personal cleanliness	sanitation	النظافة العامة
interpret	يفسر	clarify	confuse	يربك
leave	يغادر	depart/ abandon	arrive/ reach	يصل
messy	فوضوى	untidy	tidy	مرتب
respond	يستجيب	answer/ reply to	ignore	يتجاهل



Notes on Vocabulary



take ... off

يمكن استخدام (take ... off) بمعانٍ كثيرة مثل:

to remove a piece of clothing from your/somebody's body — يخلع (ملابس)
- He took off his wet boots and sat by the fire.

to leave the ground and begin to fly — تقلع (للطائرات)
- The plane took off an hour late.

to leave a place, especially in a hurry — يترك (مكانًا بسرعة)
- When he saw me coming, he took off in the opposite direction.

to become successful or popular very quickly or suddenly — ينجح (بسرعة/بشكل مفاجئ)
- The new magazine has really taken off.
- Her singing career took off after her TV interview.

to copy somebody's voice, actions or manner in an amusing way (=) impersonate — يقلد (شخصًا)
- Ali can take off his father to perfection.

cause — make

cause + (object) + to + inf. — يسبب
- Nothing will cause me to change my mind.

make + (object) + inf. — يجعل
- Nothing will make me change my mind.

make + (someone/something) + adj. — يجعل
- The latest news made him happy.

contain — include — consist of

contain — يحتوى على (بداخله)
- This drink doesn't contain any sugar.

include — يشتمل على/يتضمن
- Does the price of this service include tax?

consist of — يتكون من
- My house consists of four rooms, a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom.

soil earth ground land floor

soil — تربة زراعية
- This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil to grow well.

earth — الكرة الأرضية/تراب
- Earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.

ground — أرض الشارع
- On my way to school, I dropped my bag on the ground.

land — اليابسة
- Earth consists of water and land.

floor — طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة
- My brother lives on the 15th floor in this building.
- The floor of my room needs to be cleaned.

skin leather

skin — جلد (إنسان/حيوان)
- The only difference between us is the colour of our skins.

leather — جلد مدبوغ
- He would wear his black leather jacket at the party.

spend

spend (time) + (v-ing) — يقضى وقتا فى .....
- Mona spends all her free time painting.

spend (time) with + (somebody) — يقضى وقتا مع (شخص)
- I want to spend more time with my family.

spend (time) in/ at — يقضى وقتا فى (مكان)
- We'll have to spend the night in a hotel.

wear put on

wear — يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص)
- We wear light clothes in summer.

put on — يقوم بارتداء (فى الحال)
- Put on your shoes. We are late for school.

Language Notes

1. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things.

كلمة bacteria هى جمع ويتبعها فعل جمع ... المفرد منها هى bacterium ويتبعها فعل مفرد.

2. Research has shown that contact with pets early in life can protect you against allergies.

كلمة Research كاسم بمعنى أبحاث لا تعد ولا تجمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

3. A lot of bacteria can grow in your bin.

الفعل grow إذا جاء بمعنى ينمو فهو فعل لازم (لا يأتى بعده مفعول) أما اذا جاء بمعنى يزرع فهو فعل متعدٍ (يأتى بعده مفعول).

4. You should wear gloves if you're going to touch soil in the garden.

كلمة gloves هى جمع ويتبعها فعل جمع.

- I bought a pair of gloves which is very expensive.

تعامل كلمة gloves معاملة المفرد إذا سبقها كلمة pair.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother made me .... my room as a punishment.
   - a) clean
   - b) to clean
   - c) cleaning
   - d) to cleaning
2. I saw the woman who sat on the .... of the street asking people for money.
   - a) ground
   - b) land
   - c) floor
   - d) soil
3. To keep healthy, we should avoid foods which .... a lot of fat.
   - a) consist
   - b) include
   - c) enclose
   - d) contain
4. I can't use these cosmetics مستحضرات تجميل as my .... is quite sensitive.
   - a) leather
   - b) skin
   - c) heart
   - d) kidney
5. I was taking .... my shoes when the phone rang.
   - a) from
   - b) of
   - c) off
   - d) up

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The doctor told me that I had a/an .... to animal hair.
a) response b) impact c) allergy d) reply

2 My wife changes the .... of our sons' bed every day.
a) carpet b) leaflet c) board d) bedding

3 I could help the injured man because I had learnt a lot about ....
a) hospitality b) first aid c) hygiene d) diet

4 We called the .... when our teacher felt ill in the class.
a) customer service b) call centre
c) maintenance d) emergency services

5 Most people don't realise that they are .... polluted air until they get sick.
a) smiling b) breathing c) carrying d) breezing

6 The doctor put plaster on my cut to stop .... from getting to it.
a) bacteria b) blood c) pets d) birds

7 When his breathing stopped, I did him .... to make him breathe again.
a) CRC b) CBC c) CPR d) MBC

8 Many skin diseases can be prevented by following good personal ....
a) allergy b) hygiene c) clearance d) saving

9 You should put your rubbish in the .... Take care not to leave it open.
a) ground b) dust c) soil d) bin

10 She is .... well to the new treatment. She will be better in two days.
a) replying b) agreeing c) responding d) answering

11 Some plants and herbs أعشاب grow better in dry ....
a) soil b) floor c) dust d) flour

12 The doctors said she is now out of .... She will be better in a few days.
a) threat b) danger c) safety d) adventure

13 The government should improve .... measures إجراءات on all our railways.
a) economic b) infinity c) maturity d) safety

14 They lack the references مراجع to do their own ...., so they should visit public libraries.
a) service b) paragraph c) research d) history

15 The teacher told us that tomatoes .... best in direct sunlight.
a) grow b) agree c) plant d) enlarge

16 It is known that smoking can seriously damage your .... and cause death.
a) health b) work c) relationship d) trust

17 These old books were all covered with .... when I found them.
a) blogs b) skin c) trust d) dust

18 While I was carrying a ladder, it hit an overhead electrical .... I was about to die.
a) cable b) car c) mountain d) plane

19 This food is home-cooked using fresh .... It is fantastic to eat it.
a) solutions b) ingredients c) parts d) components

20 The reason for the fire could have been a/an .... fault. We are waiting for the investigations.
a) humane b) solar c) electrical d) electronic

21 What .... you to change your mind?
a) made b) caused c) let d) recommended

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

22 The fire department responded .... the call within minutes.
a) for b) at c) to d) from

23 Her hair is very long, so she tied it .... to cook the food.
a) away b) up c) down d) aside

24 You should .... gloves while repairing your car to keep your hands clean.
a) dress b) move c) wear d) put

25 If you left your cut without cleaning, it will be a home .... bacteria.
a) of b) for c) with d) at

26 Scientists say that small birds live mainly .... insects as they are their food.
a) on b) in c) with d) at

27 Do you know that lions and tigers belong .... the cat family?
a) for b) by c) with d) to

28 Raw meat must be kept .... from cooked meat.
a) connected b) insulated c) separate d) warm

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

29 The reporter asked the interviewee to interpret his words. The synonym of the word "interpret" is ....
a) clarify b) confuse c) show d) understand e) explain

30 How many factory workers are in danger of losing their jobs? The antonym of the word "danger" is ....
a) hazard b) freedom c) safety d) difficulty e) security

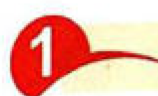
31 Pregnant women should avoid certain foods such as raw eggs. The synonym of the word "avoid" is ....
a) avert b) face c) confuse d) evade e) alter

32 He has changed a lot since I last saw him. The synonym of the word "changed" is ....
a) faced b) modified c) altered d) pursued e) ignored

33 Before leaving the train, make sure you have all your belongings with you. The antonym of the word "leaving" is ....
a) reaching b) arriving c) departing d) abandoning e) clarifying



(should – shouldn't) (must – mustn't)



should/ shouldn't + inf.

We use "should/ shouldn't" for suggestions and advice. ١- للاقتراح والنصيحة.

- You should always wash your hands after you touch the cat. (I advise you to do this.)
- We should go to the party together. (I suggest going to the party together.)
- You shouldn't sleep late. It is bad for you. (I advise you not to do this.)

We use "should" when we ask for or give an opinion (I think – I don't think – Do you think?). ٢- عند طلب أو إعطاء الرأى.

- I don't think you should work till late.
- I think my children should do their best to pass their exams.

٣- عند الاقتراح مع كلمة suggest.

- I suggest you should go with us.

Important Notes

١) من الممكن استخدام الكلمات التالية بدلًا من should فى النصيحة:

should =	had better + inf.	My students had better study hard.
	ought to + inf.	My students ought to study hard.
	I advise ... to ...	I advise my students to study hard.
	It is advisable ... to ...	It is advisable for my students to study hard.
	If I were you, I would ...	If I were you, I would study hard.
	It is important to ...	It is important to study hard.
	It would be a good idea to ...	It would be a good idea to study hard.

٢) من الممكن استخدام الكلمات التالية بدلًا من shoudn't:

shouldn't =	had better not + inf.	You had better not walk alone in uninhabited places.
	oughtn't to + inf.	You oughtn't to walk alone in uninhabited places.
	I advise ... not to ...	I advise you not to walk alone in uninhabited places.
	It is inadvisable to ...	It is inadvisable to walk alone in uninhabited places.
	If I were you, I wouldn't ...	If I were you, I wouldn't walk alone in uninhabited places.
	It is important not to ...	It is important not to walk alone in uninhabited places.
	It wouldn't be a good idea to ...	It wouldn't be a good idea to walk alone in uninhabited places.

٣) مع زمن الماضي تتحول النصيحة إلى لوم blame ويكون الشكل كالتالي:

should have + P.P. (It was wrong not to do that thing)
- You should have come early. (You didn't come early and it was wrong.)

shouldn't have + P.P. (It was wrong to do that thing)
- You shouldn't have wasted your time. (You wasted your time and it was wrong.)



2 must/ mustn't + inf.

must

تستخدم must:

We use must for:

1. Necessity. الضرورة

- You must study hard. (It is necessary to study hard.)
- I must phone my friend to tell a very important thing.
- Plants must get enough light and water if they are to grow properly.

2. Strong advice. نصيحة قوية

- You must stop smoking to keep healthy.
- You must study hard to get high marks.

3. Warm invitations. دعوات حارة

- You must come to my birthday party. It will be tomorrow.
- You must have lunch with us. I will wait for you.

4. Strong feelings. مشاعر قوية

- I must buy a present for my mother's birthday.
- We must phone Noha to ask about her mother as she is ill.

mustn't

- We use mustn't to express prohibition: (something dangerous OR against the law)

- نستخدم mustn't للتعبير عن التحريم (شيء خطير أو ضد القانون).

- You mustn't park your car here. It is not allowed.
- You mustn't smoke in petrol stations. It is against law.





- You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

- يمكن استخدام بدائل must فى المثال التالى:

mustn't =	It is forbidden (banned/ prohibited) to + inf.	It is forbidden (banned/ prohibited) to smoke in hospitals.
	It is not allowed to + inf.	It is not allowed to smoke in hospitals.
	Subj. + (am – is – are) not allowed to + inf.	You are not allowed to smoke in hospitals.

- We also can use "mustn't" for strong advice:

- من الممكن استخدام mustn't للتعبير عن النصيحة القوية.

- You mustn't stay up late as it is bad for your health.
- You mustn't waste your time in vain.
- You mustn't eat this food. It is poisonous.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Oh dear! It is later than I thought, I .... go now.
   a) should b) must
   c) need d) mustn't

2. This book is very valuable. You .... read it.
   a) need b) shouldn't
   c) should d) mustn't

3. You .... come early to attend the conference from the very beginning.
   a) don't have to b) need
   c) mustn't d) must

4. You .... turn this music down before your dad gets angry.
   a) had better b) mustn't
   c) ought d) shouldn't

5. It is .... to sleep early to be able to get up early.
   a) necessity b) advice
   c) advisable d) forbidden

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... write to my brother. I haven't written to him for long.
a) have b) must c) mustn't d) shouldn't

2 Mona's eyes are not good. She .... wear glasses for reading. It is my advice.
a) must to b) could c) ought to d) shouldn't

3 This is a military area, you .... to photograph anything.
a) are allowed b) aren't allowed
c) must d) needn't

4 We don't have much time for the train. We .... hurry.
a) must b) mustn't c) may d) needn't

5 The baby is asleep and I want to do the housework. You .... shout.
a) should b) must c) needn't d) mustn't

6 Students .... forget their teacher's instructions or they will be punished.
a) oughtn't b) mustn't
c) don't have to d) should

7 You don't have enough money for this expensive jacket, you .... look for a cheaper one. I suggest.
a) mustn't b) should c) shouldn't d) might

8 It is really a good film. You .... go and see it with your family.
a) advise b) should to c) had better d) ought

9 He suggested that we .... go to the park to have fun.
a) should b) must c) needn't d) mustn't

10 You .... talk to your mother like that. It is impolite.
a) must b) needn't c) mustn't d) may

11 When you come to Cairo again, you .... come and see us.
a) should b) must c) has to d) ought

12 No one is .... to smoke in public places. It is forbidden.
a) prevented b) banned c) necessary d) allowed

13 You had a lot of problems as I told you. You .... to my advice.
a) have listened
b) should listen
c) should have listened
d) can't have listened

14 I .... arrive at school on time. It is a rule.
a) should
b) am allowed to
c) mustn't
d) have to

15 You .... drive fast in the city centre. It is really dangerous.
a) must
b) have to
c) are inadvisable to
d) mustn't

16 I told my daughter that she'd better .... the essay again to modify it.
a) write
b) to write
c) writing
d) not to write

17 You .... drive very carefully near schools as there are a lot of children.
a) must
b) are advisable
c) shouldn't
d) mustn't

18 This shirt is very tight, you .... to try another one.
a) should
b) must
c) ought
d) are banned

19 To get a high mark in the exam, you .... revise regularly.
a) should to
b) had better to
c) must to
d) ought to

20 You .... try this cake. It is really delicious.
a) needn't
b) mustn't
c) must
d) suggest

21 You .... wear your shoes inside the house because it makes the floor dirty.
a) needn't
b) are not allowed
c) shouldn't
d) hadn't better

22 You .... walk off when the teacher is speaking with you. It is impolite.
a) should
b) are prohibited
c) had better
d) mustn't

23 This site is very dangerous to kids, they .... be here.
a) must
b) mustn't
c) should
d) shouldn't to

24 Men in Egypt .... do their military service. It is their duty.
a) must
b) would
c) should
d) may

25 I think you .... do more exercise to keep fit.
a) must
b) mustn't
c) should
d) shouldn't

2 Fill in the space:

1 Traffic rules are similar in most countries. But in some European countries, people ....(a).............. drive on the left. Big lorries aren't ....(b).............. to drive in the city centre. Seat belts must ....(c).............. put on. So if you drive there, it's .... (d).............. to know well about the traffic rules.

2 Tourism is an important source of our national income. We ....(a).............. forget that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hard-working employees. So, the government ....(b).............. build hotels that aren't expensive but clean and comfortable. Also, we had ....(c).............. reduce prices for them to encourage them to come to Egypt. On the other hand, we ....(d).............. remember they are our guests and should treat them in a friendly way.

3 Here are some advice you must follow if you have an exam. I think that you .... (a).............. have enough sleep the night before the exam. You should also .... (b).............. up early and have a healthy breakfast. In the exam room, you .... (c).............. be nervous and start answering the easy questions before the difficult ones. You ....(d).............. spend too much time answering only one question. You should have enough time to check your answers.

4 I read an advertisement in the papers for a job of a secretary. The applicant .... (a).............. master office skills. He also must ....(b).............. fluent in English and French. He ....(c).............. to be able to translate from Arabic to English. Moreover he ....(d).............. use the fax and computer. I had an interview with the manager and the monthly salary offered is good.

5 Taking a nap is very good for your health. Remember that the best time to take a nap is about eight hours after you get ....(a).............. . A nap that lasts too long ....(b).............. also make it difficult for you to sleep at night. If time is a problem, try a short nap even ten minutes of sleep can ....(c).............. helpful. In fact, you ....(d).............. have naps to be able to complete your day without being tired.

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of my daughters has a/an .... to cow's milk.
   a) emergency b) healthy c) allergy d) sense
2. The teacher .... deeply before speaking again. It was clear that he was very angry.
   a) breathed b) smiled c) looked d) sneezed
3. Restaurants may be closed down if they fail to maintain standards of hygiene. The synonym of the word "**hygiene**" is ....
   a) public cleanliness b) personal cleanliness
   c) sanitation d) personal awareness
4. He inhaled the smoke and couldn't stop ....
   a) laughing b) coughing c) sniffing d) spreading
5. While one of you gives .... to the injured, the other should call an ambulance.
   a) first aid b) emergency services
   c) first help d) training
6. During ...., one passenger began to feel ill and wanted the pilot to land.
   a) take-off b) take-on c) take-out d) take-down
7. Pets can .... certain bacteria, viruses, and fungi that can cause illness if transmitted to humans.
   a) make b) carry c) invent d) discover
8. I want to spend more time .... my family. I love them very much.
   a) by b) to c) in d) with
9. It would be a good idea to stop smoking, so you .... do that.
   a) may b) mightn't c) should d) mustn't
10. You .... wash your hands before and after meals.
    a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) must d) might
11. We .... forget that we have an important meeting tomorrow.
    a) aren't allowed b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) mustn't
12. Hend .... be at home before 10 p.m. or she will be punished.
    a) should b) have to c) must d) is forbidden
13. It is .... to sleep early and get up early to have good health.
    a) necessity b) advisable c) forbidden d) banned
14. What .... I do if I have a difficult problem? Really, I need your advice.
    a) might b) should c) advice d) mustn't
15. If you are not well, you .... ask Yousra to go instead.
    a) mustn't b) ought c) had better d) should to
16. Oh! It is raining again. I .... my car.
    a) should have washed b) must have washed
    c) shouldn't have washed d) can't have washed



2 Fill in the space:

Nowadays, almost everyone uses the Internet. Although computer technology can ....(a).............. difficult to learn, it is very easy to use the internet. In fact, you ....(b).............. know everything about computers. This will make you able to use the internet easily. There is almost nothing that the internet doesn't ....(c).............. information about. But, the internet and computers ....(d).............. also make problems for both children and adults.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Marwa was reputed as a wicked and quarrelsome lady. She lived with her husband whom she ill-treated. She cut off her relations with her neighbours. When one of her relatives paid her a visit, she would quarrel with him and make him leave for good.

One day, Marwa went to the butcher's. When the butcher gave her the meat she asked for, she threw it angrily to the ground saying that it was of a bad quality. A dog passing began to eat the meat. She kicked it severely and it bit her. Her leg was bleeding and she left the butcher's in a rage.

Some days later, she suffered terribly. She went to the doctor who examined her. The doctor told her that she was suffering from a very terrible and incurable disease known as **rabies**. It is caused by the bite of a mad dog. **There is no cure for this disease**. The doctor warned her that if she bit anyone, he or she would die.

She returned home sad and told her husband everything. She asked him to bring her a pen and paper. She sat down and began to write a list of names. He said to her, "Are you writing your will, my dear?" She said "No, I'm writing the names of those whom I'm going to bite." Seeing his name top on the list, he ran away like a mad man. He never returned home **until the worst had happened**.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The dog bit Marwa ....
   a) once b) twice
   c) thrice d) it isn't mentioned in the passage
2. "**There is no cure for this terrible disease.**" This means ....
   a) death is probable b) death is impossible
   c) it can't be cured and death is sure d) it can be cured and death is sure
3. Her husband's name was top on the list. This shows that ....
   a) he was the first to love b) she loved him
   c) she wanted to give him all her money d) she hated him most of all

4 The sentence "**until the worst had happened.**" means that ....

a) she bit all the people she wrote their names
b) she died
c) she wrote the names of those she would bite
d) she ran away like a mad woman

5 Another meaning for the word severely is ....

a) gently   b) kindly   c) strongly   d) carelessly

B) Answer the following questions:

6 When do you think a person writes his will?
7 Why do you think Marwa is a hateful character?
8 What is rabies? What causes it?

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. We have to take great care of trees as they help to keep the balance of nature and as scientists say, "Trees help the earth to breathe".
2. We all have always dreamed of living in a modern and advanced country where people are respected and are tolerant to each other.
3. Television is thought to show a variety of programmes that appeal to people of different ages. Also, it helps students by presenting some useful educational programmes.

B) Translate into English:

١- لابد أن يكون للوالدين العادات الصحية السليمة وقواعد النظافة الشخصية حتى يتعلم الطفل هذه العادات حيث إن الأطفال يقلدون آباءهم.

٢- لابد أن نتحمل جميعًا مسئولية الحفاظ على نظافة مياه النيل وكذلك الحفاظ على كل قطرة مياه لأن نهر النيل يعتبر شريان الحياة فى مصر.

٣- عادة ما تبذل الحكومة جهدًا كبيرًا وقت الأزمات خاصة عند تعرض البلاد للكوارث الصحية مثل انتشار الفيروسات الخطيرة مثل فيروس كورونا.

Enrich your Vocabulary

balance	توازن	advanced	متقدم
tolerant	متسامح	variety	تنوع
appeal to	تروق لـ	imitate	يقلد
drop of water	قطرة مياه	artery	شريان
crisis	أزمة	disaster	كارثة
Coronavirus	فيروس كورونا المستجد		

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. We should respect older people and follow their advice.
2. Youth and social networking sites.



Lessons 3&4





Key Vocabulary

blanket (n)	بطانية
burn (n) (v)	حرق/يحرق
evacuate (v) – d	يخلي (مكانًا)
immediately (adv)	في الحال
wrap (v) – ped	يلف

Vocabulary on Reading

back (n)	ظهر
break (v)	يكسر
complain (v) – ed	يشكو
cut (v) (n)	يجرح/جرح (صغير)
damage (n)	تلف
fire (n)	حريق
happen (v) – ed	يحدث
hurt (v)	يؤلم
injured (adj)	مصاب
offer (v) – ed	يعرض/يقدم عرضا
remember (v) – ed	يتذكر
smoke (n)	دخان

Workbook Vocabulary

apologise (v) – d	يعتذر
argument (n)	جدال
beach (n)	شاطىء (بلاج)
borrow (v) – ed	يستلف
explain (v) – ed	يشرح
helmet (n)	خوذة
plaster (n)	لاصق طبي/ضمادة
realise (v) – d	يدرك
serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
smell (n)	رائحة



Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة	make a mistake	يخطئ
at the weekend	فى نهاية الأسبوع	make sure	يتأكد
get angry	يغضب	put pressure on	يضغط على
have an argument with	لديه جدال مع	receive advice	يتلقى نصيحة
have problems	لديه مشكلات	stay calm	يبقى هادئا
come up	يحدث قريبًا	take action	يتخذ إجراء
complain about	يشكو بشأن	on fire	محترق
decide on	يقرر بشأن	put ... on	يضع .... على
get to	يصل إلى	sorry for	يأسف على
help with	يساعد فى		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apologise	يعتذر	apology	اعتذار	apologetic	اعتذارى/تبريرى
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلى
complain	يشكو	complaint complainant	شكوى صاحب الشكوى		
evacuate	يخلى (مكانا)	evacuation evacuee	إخلاء مُرحّل	evacuative	إخلائى
explain	يشرح	explanation	شرح	explanatory	تفسيرى
injure	يصيب	injury	إصابة	injured	مصاب



Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Can you remember any good advice that you have received?

To : (name)
Subject : Advice

Dear .... ,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my neighbour, Mrs Zeinab? She had an accident[1] last year and now she doesn't go out[2] much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat[3] yesterday and the bins were full. The floor and kitchen were dirty, too. She complained[4] about her back hurting[5] and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams coming up[6]. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

....

(1) حادث
(2) يخرج
(3) شقة
(4) يشتكى
(5) ألم /إصابة
(6) يحدث قريبا

Post-reading question: - Can you help your friend with this problem? How?

Workbook Text

To : Amir
Subject : Help!

Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the argument[1] you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay calm and explain[2] that he should ask you before he borrows[3] your things. I'm sure he will realise that he made a mistake[4] and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow? I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was planning to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot[5] about it! The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is really dirty. There's dust everywhere and there's a strange smell[6] in the kitchen! What should I do? Help!

Regards,
Maher

(1) جدال
(2) يشرح
(3) يستعير
(4) ارتكب خطأ
(5) ينسى
(6) رائحة



Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In a/an .... case, we must stay calm to decide on the best action to take.
   - a) argument
   - b) agreement
   - c) evacuation
   - d) fact
2. In accidents, the injured person should be .... up in a blanket to keep them warm.
   - a) given
   - b) evacuated
   - c) broken
   - d) wrapped
3. During fires, buildings should be .... to save people from dangers.
   - a) evacuated
   - b) burnt
   - c) removed
   - d) damaged
4. My friend .... his back while playing the final match.
   - a) burnt
   - b) complained
   - c) hurt
   - d) cured
5. I must .... for cancelling the meeting as the manager is very ill.
   - a) remember
   - b) apologise
   - c) realise
   - d) explain

Focus on Vocabulary

blanket بطانية	a warm cover on a bed
burn حرق	damage to the body caused by fire or heat
evacuate يخلى (مكانًا)	to leave a place because it is not safe
immediately فى الحال	very quickly, without waiting
wrap يلف	to cover something with cloth or paper

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
argument	جدال	disagreement/ debate	agreement/ harmony	اتفاق
evacuate	يخلى (مكاناً)	abandon/ empty	remain	يظل
immediately	فى الحال	at once/ instantly	later	فيما بعد
realise	يدرك	understand/ grasp	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم
serious	خطير	dangerous/ hazardous	safe/ secure	آمن
wrap	يلف	cover	uncover	يكشف

Notes on Vocabulary

realise recognise

realise يدرك
- I suddenly realised that the boy was crying.

recognise يتعرف على
- I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I recognised her immediately.

complain (that/ of/ about/ to)

complain that + subject + verb + ... يشكو أن
- She complained that no one had been at the airport to meet her.

complain of/ about يشكو من
- Nora has been complaining of severe headaches.
- She often complains about not feeling appreciated at work.

complain to يشكو إلى
- Neighbours complained to the police about the dogs barking.

remember + (to + inf.) / (v-ing)

remember + (to + inf.) يتذكر ثم يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم بعد)

▸ I remembered to give her the message.

(I remembered first, then I gave her the message.)

remember + (v-ing) يتذكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم فى الماضى)

▸ I remembered giving her the message.

(I gave her the message and now I remember that I did so.)

forget + (to + inf.) / (v-ing)

forget + (to + inf.) ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم)

▸ I forgot to go to that meeting. (I forgot so I didn't go.)

forget + (v-ing) قام بالفعل ونسى أنه قام به (الفعل تم)

▸ I forgot going that meeting. (I forgot now that I went.)

Language Notes

1. I'm sure he will realise that he made a mistake and he will say sorry too.

- تستخدم فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أيضًا.

2. I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

- يتبع الفعل suggest بـ (v-ing).

▸ I suggest (that) she study her lessons at night.

ومن الممكن أن يأتى بعده جملة كاملة يكون تكوينها كالآتى: (فاعل + فعل فى المصدر + ...)

3. The old building is still burning.

- يستخدم الفعل burn بمعنى يحترق (لا يحتاج إلى مفعول).

▸ My brother burnt his old books.

- ومن الممكن أيضًا استخدامه بمعنى يحرق (يحتاج إلى مفعول).



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am sorry. I forgot .... the letter for you as I was busy.
   a) posting b) to posting
   c) to post d) post
2. I'm going to complain .... the manager because you insulted me.
   a) for b) of
   c) about d) to
3. The moment I saw her, I .... that she was very angry.
   a) recognised b) failed
   c) accompanied d) realised
4. I .... him as soon as he came into the room.
   a) recognised b) failed
   c) accompanied d) realised
5. Please, remember .... off the light before going out of the room.
   a) switching b) to switch
   c) to switching d) switched

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's cold tonight. Can I have another .... on my bed, please?
a) blanket b) bedding c) cleaner d) curtain

2 After the fire, my neighbour was taken to hospital with serious ....
a) compliments b) burns c) complaints d) damages

3 Children were .... from the city to escape the dangers of war.
a) evacuated b) left c) stayed d) removed

4 When the telephone rang, my daughter answered it ....
a) immediate b) differently c) immediately d) once

5 He spent the evening .... up the presents for the party.
a) wrapping b) burning c) giving d) taking

6 Ask your teacher for .... on how to prepare for the exam.
a) mistake b) action c) argument d) advice

7 His .... leg prevented him from playing the final match.
a) serious b) healthy c) injured d) separated

8 Ahmed never .... about his work, but he's obviously exhausted.
a) arranges b) complains c) realises d) recognises

9 We had a/an .... with the waiter about the bill. They added more taxes.
a) agreement b) statement c) discussion d) argument

10 My friends describe me as a .... man as I don't like jokes.
a) serious b) kind c) funny d) humorous

11 I can't play football this week because I've .... my foot.
a) moved b) attacked c) hurt d) replaced

12 I think you should .... to your brother for wasting his time.
a) thank b) apologise c) realise d) offer

13 There was a/an .... between my parents about our expenses. They had two different opinions.
a) agreement b) discussion c) achievement d) argument

14 The seller will .... how to use this new system. I don't know how to use it.
a) discuss b) explain c) tell d) borrow

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

15 My father always put his coffee .... the table and forgot to drink it.
a) at b) in c) on d) up

16 He was sorry .... making such a mistake.
a) to b) with c) at d) for

17 All the neighbours complained .... the noise during the party.
a) from b) to c) about d) by

18 He always helps his wife .... the housework. He is very kind.
a) at b) with c) from d) of

19 Have you ever seen a building .... fire? I think it is very scary.
a) in b) at c) with d) on

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

20 The verb "realise" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
a) cover
b) understand
c) misunderstand
d) remain
e) grasp

21 The government should find a solution to the serious problem of unemployment. The antonym of the word "serious" is ....
a) hazardous
b) safe
c) dangerous
d) secure
e) empty

22 She answered almost immediately. The synonym of the word "immediately" is ....
a) at once
b) later
c) unseriously
d) fairly
e) instantly

23 The police gave the order to evacuate the area. The synonym of the word "evacuate" is ....
a) remain
b) uncover
c) understand
d) abandon
e) empty

24 The present was beautifully wrapped in gold paper. The synonym of the word "wrapped" is ....
a) remained
b) covered
c) tidied
d) confused
e) folded





Expressing Necessity:

- من الممكن التعبير عن الإلزام فى الأزمنة المختلفة كما يلى:

- **have to / has to / need (s) to + inf. = It is necessary for ... to ...** فى زمن المضارع
  - You have to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.
  = It is necessary for you to wear a helmet.
- **had to + inf. = It was necessary for ... to ...** فى زمن الماضى
  - They had to leave early in order not to miss the train.
  = It was necessary for them to leave early.
- **will have to + inf. = It will be necessary for ... to ...** فى زمن المستقبل
  - You will have to show your passport to the officer at the airport.
  = It will be necessary for you to show your passport.

Expressing Lack of Necessity:

- من الممكن التعبير عن عدم الإلزام فى الأزمنة المختلفة كما يلى:

- **needn't / don't – doesn't have to / don't – doesn't need to + inf.** فى زمن المضارع
  - She isn't late for school so she doesn't have to / needn't hurry.
- **didn't have to + inf.** (لم يكن مضطراً وبالفعل لم يقم بالفعل) فى زمن الماضى
  - I didn't have to buy more bread. We already have a lot. (I didn't buy bread.)
- **needn't have + P.P.** (لم يكن مضطراً للقيام بالفعل ولكنه قام به) فى زمن الماضى
  - You needn't have come so early. Why did you do that?
- **won't have to / won't need to + inf.** فى زمن المستقبل
  - I won't need to travel by train. My friend will take me in his car.



- **don't/ doesn't have to / needn't + inf.**
  = It is not necessary for ... to + inf.
- **didn't have to + inf. / needn't have + P.P.**
  = It was unnecessary for ... to + inf.
- **won't have to + inf.**
  = It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You have got plenty of time. You .... hurry.
a) should b) must
c) needn't d) doesn't have to

2 You .... study history at school this year. It is a basic subject.
a) should b) have to
c) mustn't d) need

3 I ran fast to catch the train which was late and I waited for long. I ....
a) didn't have to hurry b) needn't hurry
c) should have hurried d) needn't have hurried

4 We have already cleaned the house. You .... clean it again.
a) need to b) don't need to
c) mustn't d) needed

5 You .... work a bit harder or you will fail in the exams.
a) 'd better b) shouldn't
c) ought d) need

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is enough petrol in your car, you .... go to the petrol station.
   a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) don't have to
2. Your flight is 5 hours from now, you .... prepare your luggage now. We're still early.
   a) must b) have to c) needn't d) shouldn't
3. You .... shouted at my little son. He will never forgive you.
   a) can't have b) should have c) may have d) shouldn't have
4. You .... wash your car, it is still clean.
   a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) doesn't have to
5. I'm sorry I couldn't come yesterday. I .... travel as my brother was ill.
   a) have to b) must c) need to d) had to
6. You .... more bread. We already have a lot.
   a) can't buy b) must buy
   d) needn't have bought d) had to buy
7. Your writing is full of mistakes. You .... it carefully.
   a) needn't have checked b) should have checked
   c) must have checked d) didn't have to check
8. I felt a lot better yesterday, so I .... to go to the doctor's.
   a) needn't b) mustn't c) needn't have d) didn't have
9. Does my son .... take this medicine, doctor?
   a) has to b) must c) have to d) should
10. I .... to buy my daughter a present as it was her birthday.
    a) ought to remember b) should remember
    c) should have remembered d) shouldn't have remembered
11. We .... our umbrellas to England. It didn't rain at all.
    a) needn't have taken b) didn't have to take
    c) must take d) had to take
12. It .... for all of our students to come to school last week to share in the fun day.
    a) had to b) is necessary c) was necessary d) is a must
13. I can do my work on my own. You .... to help me.
    a) needn't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) don't need
14. I really .... out yesterday. It was raining heavily and I got wet.
    a) didn't have to go b) needn't have gone
    c) can't have gone d) shouldn't go

15 My daughter got a very low mark in the exam. She .... more and it was wrong of her.
a) should have studied
b) must have studied
c) shouldn't have studied
d) needn't study

16 We spent the weekend in the farm, but we .... it in Alexandria.
a) must have spent
b) couldn't have spent
c) can't have spent
d) could have spent

17 Tomorrow, I .... travel to Alex to meet my boss.
a) will need b) will have to c) had to d) could have

18 Dalia .... to study hard to pass her exams.
a) have b) must c) needs d) should

19 You .... buy a new suit for the wedding. I can give you mine.
a) don't have to b) needn't to c) mustn't d) aren't allowed

20 It .... necessary to do my best to pass my last exams.
a) will be b) is c) was d) wasn't

21 It is a national holiday tomorrow, so I .... to school.
a) needn't have gone
b) won't have to go
c) mustn't have gone
d) must have gone

22 A timetable .... be set for finishing our work. It is necessary.
a) mustn't b) can't c) should d) must

23 You .... eat this food. It is poisonous and you will be ill or dead.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) needn't

24 Smoking in public places and public transport is ....
a) allowed b) banned c) necessary d) advisable

25 I am not late for school, so I .... hurry.
a) needn't b) has to c) had to d) mustn't

26 My children .... wear a uniform in primary schools in Egypt.
a) need b) mustn't c) have to d) shouldn't

27 You .... swim in this area because there are sharks.
a) must b) needn't c) can d) mustn't

28 I think the accident is your own mistake. You .... driven so fast.
a) should have b) shouldn't have c) can't have d) must

29 It was wrong of you to sleep late. You .... early.
a) shouldn't sleep
b) can't have slept
c) shouldn't have slept
d) ought to have slept

30 I think you .... do some sports to be healthy. I only advise you.
a) ought b) can't c) might d) had better



2 Fill in the space:

1. Water is life. We all ....(a).............. waste water. We ....(b).............. use it wisely. Many careless people use water foolishly. So, parents and teachers must ....(c).............. their children and students how to save water. It is also ....(d).............. for our mass media to play a role in this case.

2. It is obvious that stress is a serious problem. The people ....(a).............. are suffering from stress often feel worried. They often feel tired all the time. Stress ....(b).............. make people angry, moody or nervous. Also, stress can lead to a variety of serious mental illnesses. If stress increases, one's mental health is ....(c).............. danger. Stress attacks the body and affects everything. So, we ....(d).............. to reduce stress and rest for a while.

3. Having a large family can be a form of insurance. Even when they are young, children can work ....(a).............. a small farm or a workshop as apprentices. People in poor countries ....(b).............. their children to provide them with security in their old age. These people ....(c).............. be wrong. They ....(d).............. to be convinced that with smaller families, there will be more food, better schools, more employment and thus a better standard of living.

4. Our life today is quite different from life fifty years ago. Life in the past ....(a).............. very simple and easy. In the past people ....(b).............. animals to go from place to place. People died from many diseases which they ....(c).............. cure. Today, thanks to modern science and technology, there are many inventions which .... (d).............. made man's life easier and more comfortable.

5. Sport is an essential part of our life. It ....(a).............. known that practising activities at school is greatly important for our students. The students ....(b)..............take part in school activities are more likely to be creative. So, teachers ....(c).............. encourage their students to participate in school activities effectively. All kinds of sports ....(d).............. bring strong physical health, great team abilities, and strong organisational features.

Life Skills

Asking for advice طلب النصيحة	*Giving advice* إعطاء النصيحة
• What should/ must I do to .....? • Can you give me advice about .....? • How do you advise me .....? • What do you suggest .....?	- I advise you to (not to) + inf. - You should (not) + inf. - You had better (had better not) + inf. - I think it would be a good idea to (not to) + inf. - It is advisable to (not to) + inf. - If I were you, I would (not) + inf. - In my opinion, you should ....

Responding to advice

Agree – Accept قبول النصيحة	**Refuse** رفض النصيحة
• Yes, I know, I should (not) ... • You are right. • Thanks for your advice. I will do that.	• I don't think so. • I will see. • I'm afraid, I can't do that.



What to do if there is a fire:

• **There are some tips you will need during a house fire.**

1. Get the fire extinguisher طفاية الحريق.
2. Raise an alarm to inform others in the house.
3. Call the fire department.
4. Leave valuables behind and never delay to find them.
5. Always crawl and keep yourself close to the ground.
6. Cover your nose with a damp towel فوطة مبللة.
7. Close the doors behind you once you leave the house.
8. Once you leave the burning house, stay out and don't return again.

Model Essay

An essay about what to do in a fire

Fires are very dangerous and scary. They cause a lot of damage and destructions as well as injuries and deaths. Always remember to stay calm to be able to call for help. You have to know how to stay safe if a fire breaks out in your house. And to prevent a house fire from causing severe damages, you need some tips which can help you stay safe.

So, here are some tips that you will need if there is a fire in your house; firstly, you should go for your fire extinguisher if you hear the sound of the fire alarm and don't ignore it. Secondly, you should do anything to inform others in the house that there is a fire; by screaming or using the alarm. Thirdly, you must then pick your phone and call the fire department to come immediately. Fourthly, you mustn't wait to find the valuable things; you must escape at once. Above all, you should cover your nose with a shirt or a damp towel to prevent smoke from entering your lungs.

Once you get out of the house, you should close the doors to prevent fire from spreading outside the house. Also, never return to your house even if you left your animals or property behind.

Giving advice:

Speaking

• Giving advice about how to be healthy:

- Imagine that you and your friend are discussing how to be healthy.
- You can visit the website https://www.wikihow.life/Become-Healthy to get more advice about this subject.

- Prepare answers for the following questions:

1. Do you already follow any of the rules of health?
2. Which rule do you want to start doing? Why?
3. What are the other rules that you can suggest?

Practice

• Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Barkat and Rafiq about the rules of health.

Barkat: Do you follow the rules of health?

Rafiq : Yes, of course.

Barkat: ....?

Rafiq : It is very important to our health.

Barkat: Can you give me some advice about the rules of health?

Rafiq : ....

Barkat: Could you please tell me the benefits of following the rules of health?

Rafiq : ....

Barkat: Thanks a lot, Rafiq. I have learnt a lot about the rules of health.



General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If I were you, I would not place too much .... in this bad man.
a) trust b) doubt c) forgiveness d) prediction

2 We should put cold water on burns ....
a) surprisingly b) differently c) immediately d) difficultly

3 The teacher asked the students to .... the poem.
a) separate b) interpret c) remove d) breathe

4 The earthquake caused .... to property estimated at 1,000,000 pounds.
a) danger b) adventure c) break d) damage

5 After the accident, he suffered .... and bruises كدمات.
a) cuts b) fires c) arguments d) pandemics

6 I tried to .... calm during the funeral.
a) pay b) stay c) make d) do

7 Please, don't .... angry with me. It wasn't my fault.
a) get b) make c) have d) keep

8 I can't decide .... who to invite to my wedding party next week.
a) at b) on c) out d) in

9 It is .... to eat healthy food to keep fit.
a) necessity b) necessary c) must d) forbidden

10 You .... show your passport when you leave or reach any country.
a) have to b) should c) mustn't d) must

11 You .... park your car here. There is a "No parking" sign.
a) have to b) mustn't c) needn't d) didn't have to

12 Yesterday, I .... to school as it was a national holiday. I rested at home.
a) had to go b) needn't have gone
c) didn't have to go d) went

13 You .... drive over 100 km an hour on this road. It is against the law.
a) might b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) must

14 They didn't win the match. They .... well and hard to win.
a) must have trained b) needn't have trained
c) should train d) should have trained

15 I was very nervous before the interview, though I .... Everyone was so friendly and I got the job.
a) needn't worry b) didn't have to worry
c) can't have worried d) needn't have worried

16 You .... go into this building. It is impossible as it is a military building.

a) needn't
b) can't
c) should
d) must

2 Fill in the space:

Disabled people have many problems since they were born. So, the government and individuals ....(a).............. work together to offer more support and help to the disabled and children with special needs. They should have special centres ....(b).............. they can be helped to be better. Also, schools should ....(c).............. equipped with everything that may help. In fact, the media must increase public awareness about the problems they ....(d).............. face.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometres from earth? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return? That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars One mission in 2031.

Surprisingly, 200,000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they know that they will never see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or the thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or disease. They also knew that their new lives would be difficult, and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars. The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space.

A special settlement will be built on Mars where food will be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life: there will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, for some fearless pioneers, it is a challenge they cannot refuse.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Why did the people decide to travel to Mars?

a) They want to see if they can survive there.
b) They want to see the dust storms.
c) Scientists made them go there.
d) They don't like earth.

2 What is the main idea of the text?
a) One day, we will all live on Mars.
b) Life on Mars will be very difficult.
c) The people who go to Mars will be famous.
d) Life on Mars will never be possible.

3 What does the word "settlement" mean?
a) A farm.
b) A place where a group of people live.
c) A factory.
d) A rocket.

4 What does the underlined "it" refer to?
a) An offer to go to Mars.
b) A six-month journey into space.
c) Time spent with three other people.
d) An offer to send in an application.

5 People who would go to Mars thought that the life there would be ....
a) easy
b) smooth
c) marvelous
d) tough

B) Answer the following questions:

6 How would you feel if someone told you that you could never return to earth?
7 Why do you think that many people will live on Mars in the future?
8 Find a word that is similar to the word: "certain"

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Electricity has become a main part of our life. People can't do without it. We depend on electricity in almost all aspects of life.
2. It is known that energy and water are the basis and the arteries of life. All living things and machines can't live or work without them.
3. We must bear in mind that increasing production is the only way of stability and safety. With it, we can increase our income and overcome the burdens of life.

B) Translate into English:

١- من الضروري لأى إنسان أن يحافظ على نظافة البيئة المحيطة به، وكذلك نظافته الشخصية؛ حتى لا يتعرض للكثير من الأمراض المعدية.
٢- تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا بارزًا وهامًا فى حياتنا، فنحن لا نستطيع أن نتخيل الحياة بدون وسائل الاتصالات ووسائل النقل الحديثة.
٣- مما لا شك فيه أن للتلوث آثارًا خطيرة على البيئة سواء كان ذلك للإنسان أو الحيوان أو النبات، ومن هنا يجب علينا - أفرادًا وحكومات - أن نعمل بجد لكى نقلل من نسبة التلوث.

Enrich your Vocabulary

aspects	مظاهر/مجالات	outstanding	بارز
burdens	مصاعب	imitate	يقلد
upset	يزعج	arteries	شرايين
expose to	يتعرض لـ	responsibility	مسئولية

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. The importance of cleanliness.
2. How to avoid illnesses and infectious diseases.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't .... a word of this to anyone. It's a secret.
   a) hear b) listen
   c) eat d) breathe
2. We're hoping to .... up the important negotiations this week.
   a) tie b) roll
   c) wrap d) soil
3. I couldn't .... my laughter after hearing that joke.
   a) contain b) include
   c) extend d) spread
4. The hills were covered with a .... of snow during the winter.
   a) blanket b) cloth
   c) germ d) pile
5. These lines of the poem are somewhat hard to .... I need to ask my teacher.
   a) interact b) interpret
   c) investigate d) report
6. The patient is .... to the new medication. Doctors have said this.
   a) feeling b) responding
   c) answering d) realising
7. They made a plan to .... the boss because they don't like his way.
   a) relieve b) elect
   c) reward d) remove
8. They are .... ways to increase the use of solar power.
   a) searching b) researching
   c) recognising d) hindering
9. The company .... a profit in the first quarter after the new development.
   a) returned b) reflected
   c) realised d) restored
10. Many of the pages in this book had been .... by the child's dirty fingers.
   a) printed b) soiled
   c) brushed d) drawn

11 If you .... in my place, would you leave or stay till the end?

a) was
b) were
c) are
d) had been

12 Don't forget .... the letter to your boss today.

a) sending
b) to sending
c) send
d) to send

13 You should clean your place when you .... working and before leaving it.

a) finished
b) have finished
c) had finished
d) finishes

14 .... he to travel abroad, he'd do post graduate studies.

a) If
b) Unless
c) Were
d) Was

15 Are you all going to clean the school by ....?

a) yourself
b) yourselves
c) herself
d) themselves

16 We .... the car for 6 months before it was stolen.

a) had been owning
b) has owned
c) had owned
d) will own

17 It is a bad thing that dust .... comes back again immediately after cleaning.

a) quick
b) quicker
c) slowly
d) quickly

18 Hala .... tennis all afternoon and needs a shower now.

a) has been played
b) has been playing
c) is playing
d) had played

19 I spent a lot of time .... in bed because of my illness.

a) sleep
b) is sleeping
c) slept
d) asleep

20 I don't enjoy watching any sports .... squash.

a) expect for
b) side from
c) a part from
d) side

Test 1 Based on Unit 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I have a/an .... to certain foods, so I can't eat any of them.
a) emergency b) sense c) allergy d) experience

2 During the operation, his .... stopped three times before his death.
a) blood b) breathing c) thinking d) moving

3 Follow your doctor's important ...., and you will stay away from infections.
a) role b) advice c) rule d) operation

4 Mountain climbers need special .... in order to complete their mission properly.
a) equalities b) quantities c) equipment d) apparatus

5 We can't make a cake without sugar. It is an important ....
a) compound b) ingredient c) factor d) tool

6 Physical exercise can protect you .... heart disease.
a) against b) with c) by d) for

7 I .... phone my father more often as he is very ill and it is very important for him.
a) can b) need c) must d) might

8 He didn't pass his exams. He .... hard for them.
a) should study b) must study
c) should have studied d) can't study

9 You .... speak loudly, I can hear you and the baby is asleep.
a) might b) mustn't c) must d) oughtn't

10 We .... cooperate to reduce pollution. It would be a good idea for us.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) should be

11 They .... the meeting as I saw them in the street at the same time of the meeting.
a) must have attended b) might have attended
c) can't have attended d) shouldn't have attended

12 We .... have a licence to drive a car.
a) should b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

13 A burglar could easily climb in through that window. The synonym of the word "easily" is ....
a) smoothly b) simply
c) hard d) difficultly
e) safely

14 She found the keys at the bottom of her handbag. The antonym of the word "bottom" is ....

a) sanitation
b) hazard
c) base
d) peak
e) top

15 **Fill in the space:**

You should always be positive. You also must ....(a).............. a role to play in the development of your country. You ....(b).............. expect the government to do everything alone without your help. It is ....(c).............. to know that a nation's progress is made with the help of many efforts. These efforts ....(d).............. made by all devoted citizens.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As I put my key into the keyhole, the door slid open, to my amazement, I saw that the kitchen light was on. I had left my house at about ten that morning and I could not explain why I might have left it on. It immediately dawned on me that someone had broken into the house and the first thing I thought of doing was to call on my neighbour Mr. Hassan.

As soon as we got into the hall, we found that everything was in a terrible mess. The armchairs were all overturned, two small tables lay turned over on the floor and the radio had been, smashed. There could be no doubt that the burglar had left nothing untouched. Before going on to inspect the rest of the house, I called the police.

Then we went into my bedroom. All my clothes were thrown all over the bed and the floor. The bed cover had been removed and the mattress had been emptied of its feathers. The police officers arrived a few minutes later and made a thorough search and declared that the burglar must have been quite experienced for he had even ransacked the kitchen cupboards. I told the officers it would take me at least two day's hard work to sort out all those things and find out whether anything had been stolen. Fortunately, I never used to leave money in the house and the only thing that they could have taken would be my watch which I had left in the bathroom. We all went to the bathroom only to find the watch there. Mr Hassan remarked that burglars never imagined they could possibly find anything valuable in a bathroom.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 When the writer reached his house, he found the door ....
a) bolted
b) open
c) locked
d) unfastened

17 The police officers thought that the burglar was ....
a) foolish
b) clever
c) inexperienced
d) rash

18 The underlined word "we" refers to ....
a) the police officers
b) Mr Hassan and the writer
c) Mr Hassan and the police officer
d) Mr Hassan, the writer and the police officers

19 Burglars never imagined they could find .... things in a bathroom.
a) cheap
b) inexpensive
c) workless
d) precious

20 The word "declared" in the last paragraph means ....
a) guessed
b) announced
c) refused
d) denied

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What do you think the best places to keep our valuable belongings?

22 What did the burglar do inside the house?

23 Give a suitable title to the passage.

24 Translate into English:

- إن الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة أصبح ضرورة. ولذلك يجب على كل من الأفراد والحكومات أن يتعاونوا لخلق بيئة صحية ونظيفة خالية من الأوبئة والأمراض.

25 Translate into Arabic:

Vitamins are very necessary for good health. It is known that their absence may cause serious diseases. Foods that contain vitamins are called protective foods.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Keeping the water of the Nile clean.





Unit 8 Robots

Objectives

Reading : Online posts about the advantages of new technology
Writing : An essay about the advantages and disadvantages of having technology in the house
Listening : Discussion on how technology can improve learning
Speaking : Discussing consequences
Language : Zero, first and second conditionals
Critical thinking : Is technology always good?
Respect for diversity: People have different views related to technology

Warm up

The following are some of the most important inventions of modern history, arrange them according to what you think is the most important to the less important.

	Invention	Year	Inventor	Notes
....	Printing Press	1450	Johannes Gutenberg	allowed literacy to greatly expand
....	Electric Light	1879	Thomas Edison	powered countless social changes
....	Automobile	1885	Karl Benz	increased personal mobility and freedom
....	Telephone	1876	Alexander Graham Bell	spreadcommunication across wide areas
....	Radio and Television	1895 & 1926	Guglielmo Marconi & John Baird	made the world smaller
....	Vaccination	1796	Edward Jenner	protected people from disease
....	Computer	1939	John Atanasoff, et al.	transformed business world; predecessor to the Internet
....	Airplane	1903	Orville and Wilbur Wright	allowed people and products to quickly move
....	Gas powered tractor	1892	John Froelich	started agricultural mechanization
....	Anesthesia	1844	Horace Wells	provided a great leap forward for medicine



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

benefit (v) – ed (n)	يستفيد/فائدة	hybrid vehicle (n)	مركبة تعمل بمصدرين للوقود
click (n)	نقرة / ضغطة (على الماوس)	internet (n)	الإنترنت
familiar (adj)	مألوف	invention (n)	اختراع
find out (v)	يكتشف	navigate (v) – d	يوجه/يقود
get around (v)	يتجول/ينتقل من مكان لمكان	robot (n)	إنسان آلي
go out (v)	يخرج	vehicle (n)	مركبة
GPS (Global Positioning System)	نظام تحديد المواقع (فى السيارة)		

Vocabulary on Reading

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	even if	حتى لو
air-conditioning (n)	نظام تكييف الهواء	exactly (adv)	بالضبط
control (v) – led	يتحكم	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
distance (n)	مسافة	free time (n)	وقت الفراغ
easily (adv)	بسهولة	global (adj)	عالمى
electricity (n)	كهرباء	invention (n)	اختراع
engine (n)	محرك	machine (n)	ماكينة/آلة



petrol (n)	بنزين
position (n)	موقع أو مكانة
positioning (n)	ملاحة (تحديد موقع)
project (n)	مشروع
really (adv)	حقًا
relax (v) – ed	يستريح/يسترخى
system (n)	نظام
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
useful (adj)	مفيد

Vocabulary on Listening

cause (n) (v) – d	سبب/يسبب
communication (n)	اتصال
concentrate (v) – d	يركز
consequences (n)	نتائج
discuss (v) – ed	يناقش
feel like (v)	يشعر وكأنه
lead (n) (v)	قيادة/يدير
luxurious (adj)	فَخم /فاخر
luxury (n)	رفاهية/ترف
reason (n)	سبب
result (n)	نتيجة
statement (n)	بيان

Workbook Vocabulary

annoying (adj)	مزعج
charge (v) – d	يشحن
culture (n)	ثقافة
direction (n)	اتجاه
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف
electric (adj)	كهربى
fail (v) – ed	يفشل
fridge (n)	ثلاجة
lose (v)	يخسر
memory (n)	ذاكرة
shopping list (n)	قائمة التسوق
stressful (adj)	مُجهِد
terrible (adj)	فظيع/رهيب
waste (n) (v) – d	إسراف/يُضيّع
wheel (n)	عجلة (سيارة مثلا)

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a click of a button	ضغطة زر	get nervous	يتوتر
appear on phone	يظهر على التليفون	give directions	يعطى اتجاهات
buy ... online with	يشترى ... على الإنترنت بـ	give an opinion	يعطى رأيا
cycle around town	يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة	go abroad	يسافر للخارج
do exercise	يؤدى تدريبًا	go down	يقل
do something faster	يفعل شيئًا أسرع	go long distances	يذهب مسافات بعيدة
do things	يقوم بعمل أشياء	go online	يتصل بالإنترنت
drive the engine	يشغل المحرك	have fun	يحصل على المتعة
for this reason	لأجل هذا السبب	most of the time	معظم الوقت
from one place to another	من مكان لآخر	on computer	على الحاسب الآلى
get answers to	يحصل على إجابات لـ	putting parts together	تجميع أجزاء معًا
get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق	interested in	مهتم بـ
agree with	يتفق مع	lead to	يؤدى إلى
communicate with	يتواصل مع	ride on	يركب على
connect to	يتصل بـ	send to	يرسل إلى
concentrate on	يركز فى	travel on	يسافر على
familiar with	مألوف لدى	useful to	مفيد لـ
help with	مساعدة فى	walk around	يتجول

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
annoy يضايق	annoyance ضيق	annoyed متضايق annoying مزعج
benefit يستفيد	benefit فائدة beneficiary منتفع	beneficial مفيد
communicate يتصل	communication اتصال	communicative اتصالى
concentrate يركز	concentration تركيز	concentrated مُركز
culture يستنبت/يزرع (خلايا أو بكتريا)	culture ثقافة	cultural ثقافى cultured مثقف
distance يُبعد (بشكل معنوى)	distance مسافة	distant بعيد
familiarise يجعل الأمر مألوفًا	familiarity معرفة – دراية	familiar مألوف
globalise يعولم	globe الكرة الأرضية globalisation العولمة	global عالمى
invent يخترع	invention اختراع inventor مخترع	inventive ابتكارى/مبدع
------------------------	luxury رفاهية/ترف	luxurious فخم/فاخر
navigate يوجه/يقود	navigation الملاحه/التنقل navigator ضابط الملاحة (ربان/ملاح/بحار)	navigational ملاحى/انتقالى
relax يسترخى	relaxation استرخاء	relaxed مسترخٍ relaxing مريح



Pre-reading question:

- What things would it be difficult to live without?

What is the best invention[1] that we have today and why is it so great? Please leave your comments[2] below.

Baher 12 minutes ago

The internet is the best invention that we have today. You can find information about anything you're interested in[3]. It's really useful if you need to find out something for a school project[4], for example. I'd never be able to do my homework without it! The internet also makes life easier in your free time. You can buy anything you want online with a click[5] of a button. You can also communicate with your friends easily, even if they live abroad.

Khadeeja 23 minutes ago

In my opinion, GPS (Global Positioning System) is the best invention. GPS helps you to navigate[6] your journey from one place to another. You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't familiar with[7]. In the past, people needed maps to get around[8], but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to get somewhere, the technology will tell you exactly where to go.

(1) اختراع
(2) تعليقات
(3) مهتم بـ
(4) مشروع
(5) نقرة
(6) يقود/يوجه
(7) مألوف لدى
(8) يتجول
(9) مركبات
(10) لحسن الحظ
(11) مركبات هجينة
(12) أقل بكثير
(13) مسافات

Most cars, buses and other vehicles[9] need petrol, but petrol is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol? Fortunately[10], we now have hybrid vehicles[11]. Hybrid vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine. For this reason, the vehicle uses a lot less[12] petrol. There are also cars that are only electric. At the moment, they cannot go long distances[13], although they are useful to travel short distances, like to school or to the shops.

Post-reading question:

- What do you think the most useful invention is if you need help with your schoolwork?



Pre-listening question:

- What are the consequences of inventing the internet? Mention two.



مختلف (1)

اتصال (2)

سببت (3)

إجازات ترفيهية (4)

يركز (5)

Ahmed : Well, the reason that we have the internet is so that people in different[1] countries can talk to each other very easily and get answers to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and easy communication[2], it can lead to problems if people spend too much time talking online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused[3] some.

Mustafa : The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on luxury holidays[4] and you think 'Why isn't my life like that?' This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all concentrate[5] on our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.

Post-listening question:

- What are the problems people have when they spend too much time watching television?

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By using GPS, the car can find the place you want to get to and then .... your journey to it.
   a) control b) take c) navigate d) connect
2. This man's face looks ...., but I can't remember who he is.
   a) familiar b) useful c) helpful d) unfamiliar
3. The internet is the most useful .... if you need help with your schoolwork.
   a) navigation b) invention c) invitation d) exploration
4. What is the .... of having such an expensive car?
   a) harm b) benefit c) consequence d) reason
5. What type of .... is it? – It's an SUV car.
   a) vehicle b) instrument c) link d) lorry

Focus on Vocabulary

click ضغطة (على الماوس)	the action of pressing a button on a computer mouse
familiar مألوف	well-known to you and easy to recognise
find out يكتشف	learn something that you didn't know before
get around يتجول/ينتقل من مكان لمكان	travel from place to place
go out يخرج	leave your home to do something fun with other people
GPS (Global Positioning System) جهاز الملاحة (فى السيارة)	the most useful invention if you don't know how to find a place

invention اختراع	a useful machine, tool, instrument, etc. that has been invented
navigate يوجه/يقود	find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another
robot إنسان آلي	a machine that is controlled by a computer
the internet الإنترنت	the most useful invention if you need help with your schoolwork
vehicle مركبة	a machine with an engine that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck
hybrid vehicle مركبة هجينة	a vehicle that has both a petrol or diesel engine and an electric motor

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
annoying	مزعج	disturbing/ troublesome	pleasant سار
easily	بسهولة	simply/ smoothly	difficultly/ hard بصعوبة
entertainment	تسلية	amusement/ enjoyment	boredom/ dissatisfaction ملل
exactly	بالضبط	absolutely	nearly تقريبا
fail	يفشل	break down/ decline	succeed/ pass ينجح
familiar	مألوف	common/ usual	uncommon/ unfamiliar غير شائع/غير مألوف
stressful	مجهد	exhausting	relaxing مريح
terrible	فظيع/رهيب	horrible	wonderful رائع
useful	مفيد	beneficial	harmful مؤذ

Notes on Vocabulary



position / location

position — موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس)/مكانة/وظيفة/مركز في الملعب
- First, get yourself into a comfortable position.
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.

location — موقع/مكان (للتصوير)
- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices.
- Most of the movie was shot on a location in Africa.

air-conditioning / air-conditioner / air-conditioned

air-conditioning (n) — نظام تكييف الهواء
- We all think that air-conditioning makes life easier.

air-conditioner (n) — جهاز تكييف الهواء
- The seller told me that I should clean the filters of the air-conditioner regularly.

air-conditioned (adj) — مكيف الهواء
- I prefer going to this restaurant as it is fully air-conditioned.

journey / trip / voyage / flight

journey — رحلة/سفر: السفر من مكان إلى آخر (وخاصة السفر الطويل)
- It was a long and difficult journey across the mountains.

trip — رحلة قصيرة لغرض معين
- My father came back from a business trip to China.
- He's just returned from a fishing trip to Aswan.

voyage — رحلة بحرية
- The ship *Titanic* sank on its first voyage.

flight — رحلة جوية
- What was the direction of the flight when the plane crashed?

electric electrical electricity electrician electronic

electric (adj) — كهربائى: أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)

- I have a modern electric washing machine.
- Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries.

electrical (adj) — كهربائى: أى يتعامل مع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)

- The fire started with an electrical fault.
- My father works as an electrical engineer.

electricity (n) — الكهرباء

- We can't do without electricity.

electrician (n) — عامل فنى كهرباء

- A company needs four electricians.

electronic (adj) — إلكترونى

- The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.

abroad broad board aboard border

abroad — الخارج (خارج حدود بلد ما)

- He worked abroad for five years.

broad — فسيح/عريض

- The room is broad.

board — لوحة (إعلانات)/سبورة

- The exam results went up on the board.

aboard — على متن السفينة/ الطائرة/ القطار

- The plane had an accident, but luckily all the passengers aboard were safe.

border — حد بين دولتين

- There is a national park on the border between Kenya and Tanzania.

memory memorial

memory — الذاكرة

- My mobile has a 1GB card memory.

memory — ذكرى

- We have good and bad memories.

memorial — نُصُب تذكارى

- The wall was built as a memorial to soldiers who died in the Second World War.



familiar (with / to)

familiar with — على دراية بـ
- Are you familiar with this type of computer?

familiar to — معروف لدى
- This street was familiar to me when I was young.

able to — capable — ability — enable

(be) able to + (inf.) — قادر على
- Birds are able to fly using their wings.

(be) capable of + (v-ing) — قادر على
- Birds are capable of flying using their wings.

(have) the ability to + (inf.) — لديه القدرة على
- Birds have the ability to fly using their wings.

(someone / something) + enable + (someone / something) + to + (inf.) — ...... يمكن ...... من ......
- Wings enable birds to fly.

Language Notes

1. What would you do if you couldn't use the internet ever again?

- تستخدم صيغة not ..... ever again للنفي المطلق بمعنى (لم/لن ... مرة أخرى على الإطلاق).

2. The internet also makes life easier in your free time.

- كلمة internet دائما ما تسبق بكلمة the لأن الإنترنت اختراع ودائمًا ما تسبق الاختراعات بـ the.

3. You can buy anything you want online with a click of a button.
- She had heard about an online course.

- تستخدم كلمة online كحال وصفة بنفس الصيغة.

4. It can lead to a lot of stress and it can stop people enjoying their free time.
- It can lead to wasting our time.

- لاحظ أن lead to من الممكن أن يأتى بعدها اسم أو (v-ing).

5. The technology will tell you exactly where to go.

- فى الكلام غير المباشر من الممكن حذف الفاعل بعد أداة الاستفهام.

6. What is the benefit of having such an expensive car?

- تستخدم such بمعنى مثل هذا قبل (صفة + موصوف)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle, who's a businessman, makes about 30 business .... a year.
   a) trips
   b) journeys
   c) picnics
   d) voyages
2. We can warm up the room quite quickly with this .... fire.
   a) electric
   b) electrical
   c) electricity
   d) electrician
3. Scientists have to find cleaner ways of generating ....
   a) electric
   b) electrical
   c) electricity
   d) electronic
4. I took my father's place in our shop while he was ....
   a) abroad
   b) broad
   c) aboard
   d) board
5. Because Ali has lived in many European countries, he's .... speaking different languages.
   a) able to
   b) capable of
   c) enable
   d) ability

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you want to watch the new film, just .... on this link.
   a) tick b) visit c) stick d) click
2. This smell is very .... to everyone who lives near a bakery. They are used to it.
   a) familiar b) useful c) famous d) stressful
3. My wife said that the dishwasher is the most wonderful .... as it helps her a lot.
   a) navigation b) invention c) discovery d) design
4. A lot of birds fly at night and .... by the stars.
   a) control b) notice c) navigate d) lead
5. My father always uses .... to show the exact position of a person or thing by using signals from satellites.
   a) CBC b) GPR c) GRC d) GPS
6. My father sold our car, so we had to use public transport to ....
   a) get around b) get across c) get better d) get over
7. The .... picks up the bomb, carries it away from buildings, and blows it up.
   a) tool b) robot c) air-conditioning d) equipment
8. The woman gave the police a full description of the thief and his .... This helped arrest him.
   a) face b) vehicle c) location d) position
9. If you want to know more information about the museum, you can find information on the ....
   a) navigator b) position c) internet d) location
10. If you don't keep the windows closed, the .... system can't work properly.
    a) air-conditioned b) air-conditioning c) air-conditioner d) air-condition
11. They .... Mona as the new director because she is the suitable person for the job.
    a) navigated b) realised c) discovered d) chose
12. The magazine gives lots of .... advice on how to save money. It is fantastic.
    a) useful b) horrible c) conflicting d) terrible
13. It was a successful experiment. It led us to the right ....
    a) effects b) requirements c) consequences d) qualities
14. The most .... habit of my friend is speaking while eating. I can't stand that!
    a) usual b) wonderful c) annoying d) useful
15. My father's disease was a .... experience for the whole family.
    a) stressed b) stressful c) personal d) relaxing
16. My father used to .... a bicycle to work every day.
    a) control b) navigate c) drive d) ride
17. My mobile phone is not working. I don't think the battery is ....
    a) charging b) changing c) choosing d) cycling

18 A .... car is a vehicle with an engine that uses both petrol and electricity.
a) plant b) hybrid c) mixed d) hyphened

19 A lot of people believe that crime is a direct .... of poverty.
a) consequence b) reason c) purpose d) idea

20 The holiday changed my mood. I have felt .... a new man since I came back.
a) look b) same c) like d) sound

21 My uncle is very rich, so he stayed in a five-star .... hotel in London.
a) luxurious b) easy c) normal d) ordinary

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

22 **A:** Please, can you .... me directions to the station? **B:** I don't know the way to it.
a) give b) make c) say d) do

23 My best friend felt I was right, he agreed .... me.
a) to b) for c) at d) with

24 In the king's procession (مسيرة), the knight rode .... horses around the capital.
a) in b) on c) with d) for

25 Akram always .... nervous whenever he has a final exam at school.
a) makes b) has c) gets d) is

26 Our teacher explained the events that led .... the start of the First World War.
a) for b) on c) at d) to

27 Be quiet, please. Let me concentrate .... my homework.
a) with b) by c) at d) on

28 We are going .... for a meal and then on to a movie. How about joining us?
a) in b) to c) out d) on

29 My neighbour was shocked when he found .... that his son failed the exam.
a) in b) at c) on d) out

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

30 The television was his only source of entertainment. The synonym of the word "**entertainment**" is ....
a) navigation b) dissatisfaction c) amusement d) discovery e) enjoyment

31 I can easily finish my work tonight. The antonym of the word "**easily**" is ....
a) absolutely b) inexactly c) difficultly d) simply e) hard

32 Just as I stepped into the shower the phone rang. It was so annoying. The synonym of the word "**annoying**" is ....
a) relaxing b) disturbing c) pleasant d) troublesome e) horrible

33 He failed in his attempt to win the gold medal. The antonym of the word "**failed**" is .... .
a) passed b) broke down c) declined d) attended e) succeeded

34 The voice on the phone sounded familiar. The antonym of the word "**familiar**" is ....
a) uncommon b) common c) unfamiliar d) horrible e) beneficial



If Conditionals (zero – first – second)

- If you heat ice, it melts. (It is a true fact.) حقيقة (الحالة الصفرية)
- If you come early, you will meet the manager. (It is probable.) احتمال (الحالة الأولى)
- If he arrived early, he would catch the bus. (It is not possible.) عدم احتمال (الحالة الثانية)

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

If / When + present simple, present simple

• We use it to talk about facts and things that are always true.

- تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتعبير عن الحقائق والأشياء التى دائمًا ما تكون صحيحة.

- If/When you heat water, it boils.
- If I need help with a school project, I search online.
- If/When wet wood is burnt, it gives off much smoke.




لاحظ أن:

- عند وجود علامة من المضارع البسيط always – usually – often... فى جملة جواب الشرط نستخدم الحالة الصفرية.

- If I feel hungry, I always eat anything till I arrive home.

- من الممكن استخدام when بدلًا من if فى الحالة الصفرية فقط.

- When there is heavy rain, I stay at home.

2 First conditional الحالة الأولى

If + present simple, subject + (will – may – can) + inf.

• We use it to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future.

- نستخدم الحالة الأولى للتعبير عن أحداث من الممكن والمحتمل أن تحدث فى المستقبل.

- If the bus arrives late, I'll take a taxi.
- Dalia is ill. If she is better tomorrow, she'll come to school.
- If I need help with our project, I will call you.





لاحظ أن:

▸ **If + present simple, أمر – طلب**

- فى الحالة الأولى من الممكن أن نستخدم الأمر والطلب فى جواب الشرط مع عدم وجود فاعل.

- If you meet Mona, tell her that I'm waiting.
- If there is a fire, call the fire department.
- If you see my father, don't tell him about my results.

▸ **If + present simple, subject + should + inf.**

- فى الحالة الأولى نستخدم should + inf. فى جواب الشرط عند النصيحة.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you are tired, you should have some rest.

- ومن الممكن أن نبدأ الجملة بكلمة Should بدلًا من If ويكون الشكل كالتالى:

▸ **Should + subject + inf. ..... subject + will + inf.**

- Should Mona come early, I will tell her what happened.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If water freezes, it .... to ice.
   a) will turn b) would turn c) turns d) would have turned
2. If I spend too long on the computer, I usually .... a headache.
   a) will get b) would get c) got d) get
3. If she .... hard, she will win next week's race.
   a) train b) trains c) trained d) had trained
4. If Mona comes early, she .... her boss before leaving.
   a) is meeting b) will meet c) had to meet d) would meet
5. What will you do if you .... your keys?
   a) lose b) would lose c) will lose d) are losing

3 Second conditional الحالة الثانية

If + past simple, subject + (would – might – could) + inf.

• We use it to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future.

- نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن مواقف غير حقيقية أو غير محتملة فى الحاضر أو المستقبل.

- If he went faster, he would catch the bus.
  = He doesn't go faster, so he won't catch the bus.
- If I got a bad grade for this project, I would be really unhappy.
- If he slept early, he could get up early.





- If + subject + (was – were) ....., subject + (would + inf.)

❶ استخدام الحالة الثانية مع was – were للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث الفعل فى الحاضر (ومن الأفضل استخدام were مع المفرد أو الجمع).

- If she was/were a princess, she would be much happier.
  = She isn't a princess, so she won't be much happier.
- If I was/were rich, I would build a palace. = I am not rich, so I won't build a palace.

- If I were you, I would + inf. = You should + inf.

❷ من الممكن استخدام الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن النصيحة.

- If I were you, I would study hard to get high marks.
  = I advise you to study hard to get high marks.

❸ من الممكن أن نبدأ الجملة فى الحالة الثانية بكلمة Should أو كلمة Were وتكون القاعدة كما يلى:

- Should + subject + inf., subject + would + inf.
  - Should Sara sleep early, she would get up early.
- Were + subject + to + inf., subject + would + inf.
  - Were Rania to run faster, she would catch the bus.
    = If Rania ran faster, she would catch the bus.
- Were + subject + (صفة – وظيفة -...), subject + would + inf.
  - Were he clever, he would get high marks. = If he were clever, he would get high marks.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you had an invitation to the party, you .... to attend easily.
   a) would allow b) would have been allowed
   c) would be allowed d) would have been allowing
2. I would put on protective glasses if I .... you.
   a) were b) will be c) had been d) am
3. Mona .... to the party if we invited her.
   a) will come b) might come c) might have come d) comes
4. Should we decide now, we .... to Alexandria.
   a) would go b) went c) would have gone d) are going
5. Maha wouldn't come with us if her mother .... well.
   a) didn't feel b) felt c) hadn't felt d) doesn't feel

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you .... smoking, you would probably feel healthier.
   a) stop b) stopped c) didn't stop d) had stopped
2. What will you do if you .... by a snake?
   a) bite b) will bite c) are bitten d) were bitten
3. If you are hungry, ... another sandwich.
   a) will take b) take c) don't take d) taking
4. If my sister has a baby boy, she .... him Ahmed.
   a) calls b) would call c) will call d) would have called
5. If you add six to eight, you .... fourteen.
   a) would get b) might get c) get d) got
6. If you .... the bill before Friday, we will take the computer back.
   a) paid b) don't pay c) didn't pay d) pay
7. If Noha .... the game, she would be happy.
   a) was winning b) won c) wins d) has won
8. If they had another chance, they .... the first prize.
   a) will get b) would get c) would have got d) get
9. If I .... they were honest, I would gladly lend them the money.
   a) had known b) have known c) know d) knew
10. .... he find a good job, he will move to a new flat.
    a) If b) Were c) Should d) When
11. If you .... Ali, could you tell him to come for the wedding party?
    a) ring b) rang c) had rung d) rings
12. If she beat her friend at chess, she .... very happy.
    a) is b) will be c) would be d) would have been
13. I .... angry if it turns out that you are wrong.
    a) will be b) will c) would be d) was
14. If a plant isn't watered, it ....
    a) would have died b) would die c) die d) dies
15. When I work a lot in the garden, I .... tired at night.
    a) feel b) felt c) might feel d) would feel
16. If you reached your goals, ... very happy?
    a) you would be b) you will be c) would you have been d) would you be

17 I wouldn't reach this stage if she .... me.
a) had helped b) helped c) hadn't helped d) didn't help

18 If he .... at the meeting early, he would have the chance to meet the boss.
a) had arrived b) has arrived c) arrives d) arrived

19 If you go out, please .... me the newspaper.
a) will buy b) buy c) would buy d) bought

20 Would Rania understand the lesson if she .... the summary?
a) reads b) read c) had read d) will read

21 If you .... ill, you should go to hospital to be examined.
a) felt b) had felt c) feel d) are feeling

22 If I .... an interview tomorrow, I will try to look my best.
a) haven't b) have c) will have d) have had

23 Were Ali .... us, he would invite us to the party.
a) see b) to see c) seen d) had seen

24 If I .... in my 70s and rather unfit, I might consider taking up squash.
a) were b) hadn't been c) weren't d) had been

25 .... he a doctor, he could help us.
a) If b) Should c) Had d) Were

26 If you want to be fit, you .... eat healthy food.
a) would b) ought c) would have d) should

27 .... Hana be clever, she would answer the question.
a) Were b) Had c) Should d) If

28 If you .... our teacher, remember me to him.
a) will visit b) visited c) visits d) visit

29 If anyone .... a problem, they always feel nervous.
a) have b) has c) had d) will have

30 .... hard, he would get high marks.
a) If he study b) Should he to study
c) Were he to study d) Should he studies

31 If you .... the apples now, they won't taste very sweet.
a) picked b) will pick c) pick d) had picked

32 If you .... that stone, you would break the window.
a) has thrown b) threw c) had thrown d) throw

33 If metal is heated, it ....
a) will expand b) expand c) expands d) would expand

34 If you can't dictate your conditions, you .... negotiate.
a) would b) should c) need d) ought

2 Fill in the space:

1. Your goal is something that you want to achieve. If I ....(a)............. you, I would think about what I want and decide on my goal. You ....(b)............. write your goal on a piece of paper, put your goal poster on your wall and look at it every day. If you do this, you ....(c)............. know what you have to do to reach your goal. Also, you have to know that ....(d)............. you think positively, it will be impossible to achieve your goal.

2. In fact, there are many things that affect the decision-making process. Human nature affects decision-making. If we had the choice, we ....(a)............. prefer to avoid pain rather than gain something. Also, if we ....(b)............. stressed, it will affect our decision-making. But, we must know that without ....(c)............. our right decisions, we would lose many things in life. So, we ....(d)............. be careful to take the best decisions for a better life.

3. "We live and learn" is a good saying. If we want to be successful, we ....(a)............. gain more experience from the situations we get through. You should know that ....(b)............. successful is not an easy task. As ....(c)............. as we have ambition and patience, we will be able to succeed. This is because they are the ....(d)............. important qualities for success.

4. There are many reasons why children live and grow up on the streets. One of these reasons ....(a)............. poverty. Some very poor families who ....(b)............. have enough money to feed their children send them out to make a new life. Other reasons include wars and disasters in which a child's parents ....(c)............. killed and children are left to look after themselves. So, ...(d)............. we are interested, we should try to help these children.

5. Reading is a useful hobby. It ....(a)............. us spend a nice time. Also, you can gain a lot of information ....(b)............. you read a lot. So, every week our teacher takes us to the school library ....(c)............. we find different books. We can read books there and we can borrow them to read at home. My favourite writer is Naguib Mahfouz. I enjoy ....(d)............. his works very much.

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The voice which I heard on the phone was .... I thought he was a man I had talked to before.
   a) familiar b) useful c) helpful d) stressful
2. One day, I hope to have a/an .... to help me clean my room.
   a) GPS b) air-conditioner c) robot d) vehicle
3. My brother always buys his needs online with a .... of a button.
   a) hit b) kick c) control d) click
4. Because of the bad economic situation, his income .... down last year.
   a) went b) made c) gave d) did
5. Are you familiar .... this new electric car?
   a) in b) from c) at d) with
6. If you want to connect .... the internet, just click here.
   a) with b) to c) by d) at
7. If she .... a child, she wouldn't have to adopt one.
   a) has b) had had c) had d) has had
8. If it went on raining for much longer, the river ....
   a) would flood b) will flood c) floods d) flooded
9. If you mix yellow and blue, you .... green.
   a) get b) would get c) got d) would have got
10. Water .... if the temperature is zero or below.
    a) will freeze b) would freeze c) could freeze d) freezes
11. She won't mind if I .... early, will she?
    a) had left b) will leave c) would leave d) leave
12. .... you heat water, it evaporates.
    a) Unless b) Whether c) Without d) When
13. You can't travel on this train .... you have a reservation.
    a) without b) if c) unless d) in case
14. .... running every day is a good exercise, I will try to practise it.
    a) In case of b) Without c) Unless d) If

2 Fill in the space:

If you come to love all people, all people will love you. But in case you insisted on loving yourself only, nobody ....(a)............ love you but yourself. It's strange enough that selfish people feel surprised ....(b)............ they feel ill and nobody visits them and inquires after them. Selfish people ....(c)............ be surprised when they are denied assistance from others and find nobody ready to help them, therefore they accuse the whole world of ....(d)............ unkind to them, unaware of the fact that they should blame nobody but themselves.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There is no longer any doubt that smoking is a fatal habit. Figures indicate that the number of victims of smoking is increasing. In fact the number of those who have died from smoking-related diseases surpasses the number of victims of epidemics, wars or accidents in our times.

When the World Health Organisation (W.H.O) in 1982, after a great deal of scientific research, announced that smoking is a primary cause of lung cancer, heart and chest diseases. Countries like Britain and the U.S.A. immediately took actions.

Media campaigns were launched explaining the dangers and encouraging smokers to stop smoking. They have succeeded and the percentage of smokers has gone down significantly among educated people in England.

However, the tobacco companies naturally were not very pleased with this and tried to make up for this loss by opening new markets in what is called the Third World Countries. So, they held festivals, had automobile races, gave out prizes for different kinds of competitions, thus raising the rate of consumption in these countries by eight percent annually in the last few years.

The war between the tobacco companies and health organisations could be considered a war between good and evil, a vital important war, a war to try and save our youth and our future. A war in which each person must take part for the sake of his own and his country's future.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tobacco companies were not pleased with the W.H.O's announcement because ....
   a) smoking is a fatal habit
   b) the victims of smoking are increasing
   c) smokers stopped smoking
   d) it would cause a big loss of wealth
2. Smoking is a fatal habit. This means ....
   a) it is a habit of fate
   b) fate is the way to smoking
   c) it is a habit that causes death
   d) you mustn't avoid it
3. The W.H.O. ....
   a) encouraged a large number to stop smoking
   b) gave out prizes for different competitions
   c) took part in the war between good and evil
   d) tried to make up for its loss
4. The tobacco companies are to blame because ....
   a) the percentage of smokers has gone down
   b) media campaigns were launched
   c) they opened new markets in the Third World Countries
   d) smoking is a fatal habit

5 The numbers of victims of smoking .... the numbers of victims of epidemics and wars.

a) exceeded b) equalled c) increased d) decreased

B) Answer the following questions:

6 What action did advanced countries take when W.H.O. made its announcement?
7 What shows that smoking is the most fatal thing nowadays?
8 What measures were taken by these tobacco companies to make up for their loss?

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress as the immune system is less efficient when we are worried.
2. All religions respect democracy. They respect human rights, they respect all the values that all of us carry.
3. Any country is in great need of persons of wisdom to modernise the educational system and achieve justice among people.

B) Translate into English:

١- إن مترو الأنفاق يعد واحدًا من الإنجازات الهامة للدولة المصرية فى السنوات الأخيرة؛ لدوره الهام فى حل مشكلة التكدس المرورى وتقليل عدد الحوادث.

٢- يجب علينا جميعًا أفرادًا وحكومات أن نبذل أقصى ما فى وسعنا؛ لكى نتمكن من تحسين جودة منتجاتنا المحلية وبالتالى تحقيق النمو الاقتصادى.

٣- الأم هى المدرسة الأولى للطفل فهى من تعلمه الأخلاق والقيم وكيفية التعامل مع من حوله قبل أن يتعلم القراءة والكتابة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

stress	الضغط	immune system	جهاز المناعة
human rights	حقوق الانسان	wisdom	الحكمة
justice	العدالة	traffic jam	التكدس المرورى
morals	الأخلاق	values	قيم

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. The internet is one of the most important inventions.
2. Climate change and the problems that follow.



Lessons 3&4





Key Vocabulary

app (n)	تطبيق على التليفون المحمول
chat (v) – ted (n)	يدردش/دردشة
feedback (n)	التغذية الاسترجاعية (رد الفعل لشيء ما)
quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
translation (n)	ترجمة

Vocabulary on Reading

advantages (n)	مزايا
comment (n)	تعليق
completely (adv)	تماماً
cost (v)	يتكلف
disadvantages (n)	عيوب
device (n)	جهاز/أداة
negative (adj)	سلبى
positive (adj)	إيجابى
stress (n)	ضغط عصبى
understanding (n)	فهم

Vocabulary on Listening

exact (adj)	مضبوط
human being	إنسان
improve (v) – d	يتحسن
notebook (n)	مُفَكّرَة
remember (v) (ed)	يتذكر
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا



Workbook Vocabulary

admit (v) – ted	يعترف	memories (n)	ذكريات
argue (v) – d	يجادل	offer (v) – ed	يعرض
careful (adj)	حريص	personal (adj)	شخصى
carefully (adv)	بعناية/بحرص	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
century (n)	قرن (مائة عام)	positive (adj)	إيجابى
collect (v) – ed	يجمع	printing press (n)	آلة طباعة
details (n)	بيانات/تفاصيل	progress (n)	تقدم
documentary (n)	فيلم/برنامج وثائقى	seem (v) – ed	يبدو
download (v) – ed (n)	يحمل/تحميل	share (v) – d	يشارك
electronic (adj)	إلكترونى	smile (v) – d	يبتسم
extreme (adj)	مبالغ فيه/شديد	studies (n)	دراسات
guess (v) – ed	يخمن	surprising (adj)	مدهش
imagine (v) – d	يتخيل	worried (adj)	قلق

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

for or against	مع أو ضد	lose interest in	يفقد الاهتمام فى
change into	يتغير إلى	social network accounts	حسابات الشبكة الاجتماعية
communicate with	يتواصل مع	turn on his phone	يشغل هاتفه
effect on	تأثير على	think about	يفكر فى
feel about	يشعر بشأن	travel from ... to ...	يسافر من ... إلى ...
give to	يعطى لـ	type of	نوع من
in conclusion	فى الختام	useful for	مفيد لـ
lead to	يؤدى إلى	worried about	قلق بشأن
summary of	ملخص لـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
admit	يعترف	admittance	اعتراف		
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلى
care	يهتم	care	اهتمام	careful	حريص
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعى
comment	يعلق	comment commentary	تعليق تعليق	------------------------------	
complete	يكمل	completion	تكملة	complete	كامل
exact	ينتزع	exaction	انتزاع/ابتزاز	exact	مضبوط
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative	خيالى
surprise	يدهش	surprise	دهشة	surprising surprised	مدهش مندهش
understand	يفهم	understanding	فهم	understandable understanding	معقول/مفهوم متفهم/متجاوب
worry	يقلق	worry	قلق	worried	قلق



Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What is your favourite technological device: computer, TV or something else?

I like technology a lot and I use it every day. It helps me find information for my school work and I can buy things easily online. But technology isn't always a good thing. It can lead to(1) a lot of stress(2) and it can stop people enjoying their free time.

Karim

I don't know what I would do without(3) technology! It makes life easier(4) and you can do things so much faster. And how would we travel without technology? You can travel from Cairo to London in just five hours in a plane!

Dina

(1) يؤدى إلى
(2) ضغط/توتر
(3) بدون
(4) أسهل



Post-reading question: - Write two advantages and two disadvantages of technology.



Pre-listening question:
- How can technology help us to learn?

(1) نص القراءة	
(2) ترجمة	
(3) يفضل	
(4) يدون ملاحظات	
(5) بنفسك	

Amal : Technology is so useful when you're learning something, Hana! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading a text[1], you can find the translation[2] for it.

Hana : You're right, Amal, but does that really help you to learn? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.

Amal : Well, not exactly, but if you use a language app, for example, you can do quizzes about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you feedback on your writing so you can do it better next time.

Hana : I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer[3] using a pen and paper and making notes[4] in my notebook. I don't need a smartphone.

Amal : That's OK. Everyone's different. For me, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can chat to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own[5]. If you have questions, they'll help you.

Post listening question:
- In your opinion, how useful is technology when you are learning something?

Workbook Text

Is technology always a good thing?

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer?

On the one hand[1], there are always dangers with new technology. More than two thousand years ago, a Greek philosopher[2] called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their memories[3]. In the 16th century[4], following the invention of the printing press[5], a Swiss philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information. And in the 20th century, many people thought that the radio would make it difficult for students to think about their studies[6].

On the other hand, technology usually offers[7] some advantages[8]. Books and writing are seen as positive[9] things today and most people think that their advantages are more important than any disadvantages[10].

In conclusion[11], perhaps it takes many years before we can see clearly whether new technology is good or bad.

من ناحية (1)
فيلسوف (2)
ذكريات (3)
قرن (مائة عام) (4)
آلة طابعة (5)
دراسات (6)
يعرض (7)
مزايا (8)
إيجابي (9)
سلبيات (10)
في الختام (11)

Video Script

Will people need to learn foreign languages in the future? Or will technology speak them for us? Some people think that if apps and translation software[1] continue to improve[2] over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become a thing of the past. But can an app or a piece of software really communicate like a person can?

They can definitely[3] translate words, or even whole sentences, from one language to another. But they can't smile[4] at the person you're talking to and show them that you really mean what you're saying.

When you speak in a foreign[5] language, you speak to another human being and human beings find it difficult to become friends with smartphones or computers – we are programmed[6] to prefer other human beings. That's why we can feel sure that learning languages still has a future.

برنامج ترجمة (1)
يحسن (2)
بالتأكيد (3)
يبتسم (4)
أجنبي (5)
مبرمج على (6)




Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you are a student, you can .... an app and start a chat with your teacher.
   a) download b) load c) argue d) collect
2. Some courses don't have tests, but they have a/an .... to make sure that students are learning well.
   a) app b) quiz c) exam d) feedback
3. All courses offer ...., so you can track your progress.
   a) stress b) argument c) admittance d) feedback
4. Ahmed has a new .... on his smartphone to learn foreign languages.
   a) chat b) app c) link d) click
5. In the future, we will have the .... to travel to space for our holidays.
   a) technology b) invention c) possibility d) invitation

Focus on Vocabulary

quiz اختبار قصير	questions to find out how much you know
translation ترجمة	words changed into another language
an app تطبيق على التليفون المحمول	software on your smartphone/ electronic program
feedback التغذية الاسترجاعية (رد الفعل لشيء ما)	information about how well or badly you did something
chat يدردش	to communicate with other people online

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
admit	يعترف	confess/ acknowledge	deny/ conceal ينكر
advantages	مزايا	merits/ pros	disadvantages/ demerits/ cons عيوب
argue	يجادل	discuss	agree يتفق
careful	حريص	cautious	careless مهمل
completely	تماما	totally	incompletely/ partially جزئيا/غير كامل
extreme	مبالغ فيه/شديد	severe	moderate معتدل
personal	شخصي	private	public عام
surprising	مدهش	astonishing/ amazing	usual معتاد
understanding	فهم	grasping	misunderstanding إساءة الفهم
worried	قلق	anxious	calm/ relaxed هادئ/مريح

Notes on Vocabulary



everyday — every day

everyday (adj.) يومى (صفة)

- We all suffer from the problems of everyday life.

every day (adv.) يوميًا (ظرف)

- Ali travels to Alexandria to work every day.

too much — too many

too much + (Uncountable Noun) اسم لا يعد — كثير جدًا

- There was too much work for one person.

too many + (Countable Noun) اسم يعد — كثير جدًا

- You've been reading too many novels.

by — on — in مع وسائل المواصلات

by — مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)

- I travelled abroad by plane.
- He went to work by car.

on — مع وسائل المواصلات (التى يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)

- I went to Tanta on a train.
- I go to school on foot.

لاحظ استخدام كلمة on مع foot

in — مع وسائل المواصلات (التى لا يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)

- I go to school in my car.
- She goes to Luxor in a taxi.

Language Notes

1. But technology isn't always a good thing.

- كلمة technology اسم لا يعد يعامل معاملة المفرد.

2. On the one hand, there are always dangers with new technology.

▸ On the other hand, technology usually offers some advantages.

- يستخدم التعبيران on the one hand & on the other hand للتعبير عن الرأى والرأى المخالف.

3. In the 16th century, following the invention of the printing press, ...

- كلمة following استخدمت هنا كحرف جر بمعنى بعد.

4. A Swiss philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that ....

- كلمة called بمعنى يدعى/يسمى وقد حذف ضمير الوصل who بالاضافة إلى الفعل المساعد is.

5. More than two thousand years ago, a Greek philosopher.

- لاحظ أن كلمة thousand لا تجمع إذا جاء قبلها عدد.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He travelled to Luxor and Aswan .... train.
   a) in b) on
   c) by d) at
2. I wasted .... time during the break.
   a) too many b) too much
   c) much any d) any many
3. She went to university .... her new car.
   a) in b) on
   c) by d) at
4. Mona visits her mother in the hospital ....
   a) every day b) everyday
   c) ever d) every days
5. The writer's book has become successful as it is written in a simple .... language.
   a) every day b) everyday
   c) ever d) every days

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 After reading a text, students take a short reading comprehension ....
a) competition b) quiz c) chat d) feedback

2 My brother is specialised in .... from French into English.
a) translation b) writing
c) imagination d) rephrasing

3 Laila spends hours .... on the phone to her friends.
a) writing b) understanding c) chatting d) penning

4 We need both positive and negative .... from our customers.
a) disadvantages b) advantages
c) pros d) feedback

5 Have you got a dictionary .... on your phone?
a) quiz b) app c) chat d) hardware

6 I didn't buy the new car because it .... too much.
a) priced b) valued c) cost d) estimated

7 The research may lead to a better .... of how the disease develops.
a) understanding b) comment
c) agreement d) imagination

8 Do you have any .... to make about the cause of the disaster?
a) reviews b) chats
c) commentaries d) comments

9 They made a TV .... about Mount Fuji volcano.
a) play b) documentary c) admittance d) details

10 A/An .... number of teenagers leave school without being able to read and write.
a) extreme b) personal c) surprising d) amazed

11 The scientist's family have left a very positive .... on him.
a) agreement b) effect
c) account d) argument

12 There have been major new developments in satellite ....
a) technology b) sociology
c) application d) knowledge

13 The police want to know .... when you left the building.
a) extremely b) absolutely
c) fairly d) exactly

14 My father bought a new .... to be able to go online using his mobile.

a) smartphone
b) smart laptop
c) smart car
d) smart tablet

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

15 Our teacher wanted us to .... a quiz about the last lesson.

a) make b) do c) give d) solve

16 At lectures, I used to .... notes about what the professor had said.

a) do b) play c) make d) try

17 When we change words of a language .... another one, this means we translate them.

a) for b) with c) into d) by

18 The group produces a monthly summary .... their research.

a) of b) for c) at d) with

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

19 The accused man admitted stealing his neighbour's car. The synonym of the word "**admitted**" is ....

a) denied
b) confessed
c) disagreed
d) argued
e) acknowledge

20 Doctors are worried about the possible spread of the disease. The antonym of the word "**worried**" is ....

a) anxious
b) astonishing
c) cautious
d) relaxed
e) calm

21 One of the many advantages of living in Alexandria is that you can eat out at almost any time of day. The synonym of the word "**advantage**" is ....

a) merit
b) demerit
c) pros
d) cons
e) disadvantage

22 I completely forgot that it was his birthday yesterday. The antonym of the word "**completely**" is ....

a) totally
b) incompletely
c) usually
d) partially
e) calmly

23 In such a small town it was surprising to find so many really good restaurants. The synonym of the word "**surprising**" is ....

a) astonishing
b) amazing
c) severe
d) anxious
e) cautious




Language

Extra Notes

If (Third conditional)

Third conditional الحالة الثالثة

If + past perfect , subject + (would – might – could) have + P.P.

- We use it to talk about past situations or actions that didn't happen.

- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن مواقف وأحداث فى الماضى لم تحدث (أمنية فى الماضى).

- If you had gone to the cinema with us, you would have enjoyed your time.
  = You didn't go to the cinema so you didn't enjoy the film.
- If she hadn't passed the exam, she wouldn't have gone to university.
  = She passed the exam, so she went to university.

- لاحظ أن عند وجود كلمة تدل على الماضى لابد من استخدام الحالة الثالثة حتى وإن كانت الجملة فيها حقيقة.

- If you had put water in the freezer yesterday, it would have turned into ice.
- Without studying hard, he wouldn't have passed last year's exams.



If + subject + had + (object), subject (would – could – might) + inf.

- had هنا فعل أساسى وليس مساعدًا لذلك نستخدم الحالة الثانية.

- If I had enough money, I would buy this mobile phone.

- من الممكن استخدام Had فى بداية الجملة بدلًا من If ويكون الشكل كالتالى:

Had + subject + p.p. , subject + would have + p.p.

- Had he told us early, I would have been able to help him.
  = If he had told us early, I would have been able to help him.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If he hadn't bought that car, he .... that accident.
   a) wouldn't have
   b) didn't have
   c) wouldn't have had
   d) would have

2. If you .... earlier, you would have caught the train.
   a) had left
   b) leave
   c) left
   d) would leave

3. .... he missed the bus; he would have taken a taxi.
   a) If
   b) Were
   c) Unless
   d) Had

4. What .... if he had told them about our problems?
   a) will happen
   b) would happen
   c) has happened
   d) would have happened

5. If he had the will, he .... his problems easily.
   a) would solve
   b) will solve
   c) solves
   d) would have solved

Important Language Notes

Unless + جملة مثبتة = If + جملة منفية

Unless he ran fast, he would miss the bus.
If he didn't run fast, he would miss the bus.

Without + noun/ v-ing = But for + noun

Without studying hard, you will fail.
Without / But for his cleverness, he wouldn't succeed.

In case of + noun/ v-ing

In case of emergency, call 122.

if = provided = provided that = providing = as long as في الحالة الأولى والثانية

- I will get high marks provided / as long as I study hard.

If it weren't for + noun, subject + would + inf.

If it hadn't been for + noun, subject + would have + p.p.

- If it weren't for doctors, many people would die.
  = Without doctors, many people would die.
- If it hadn't been for his help, I would have failed the exam.
  = Without his help, I would have failed the exam.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... you had finished the project, you wouldn't have been free to travel.
   a) If b) Without c) Unless d) Provided that
2. .... her courage, the kid wouldn't have been saved.
   a) Unless b) In case of c) If d) Without
3. If it .... for money, we wouldn't be able to buy anything.
   a) weren't b) didn't c) hadn't been d) doesn't
4. They will win the match .... they train hard.
   a) unless b) as long as c) without d) in case of
5. Without .... our best, we wouldn't pass our exams with high marks.
   a) do b) doing c) to do d) have done

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If they had had another chance, they .... the first prize.
a) would get b) will get c) may get d) would have got

2 If Ghada had walked all the way, she .... there by now.
a) would be b) would have been
c) will be d) had been

3 Ramy would have been better if he .... his medicine regularly.
a) has taken b) took c) had taken d) hadn't taken

4 I wouldn't have found my wallet .... he had helped me.
a) if b) without c) in case d) unless

5 If he .... at the meeting early, he would have had the chance to meet the boss.
a) had arrived b) has arrived c) arrives d) arrived

6 I wouldn't have come if I .... that you were busy.
a) know b) have known c) had known d) knew

7 If he had frozen food, he .... it at the moment.
a) wouldn't be eating b) won't eat
c) wouldn't eat d) would have eaten

8 If I had known his address, I .... him a letter.
a) would send b) will send c) can send d) could have sent

9 If I .... him yesterday, I would have asked him to come with me.
a) have seen b) saw c) was seeing d) had seen

10 If you .... at the time that these trees started growing, you would have seen people build some of Egypt's ancient temples.
a) lived b) live c) had lived d) would live

11 If people hadn't had enough sleep, they .... ill.
a) will become b) would have become
c) would become d) wouldn't have become

12 Unless he had followed my advice, he .... all his money.
a) would have lost b) wouldn't have lost
c) wouldn't lose d) won't lose

13 If you .... that stone, you would have broken the window.
a) has thrown b) threw
c) had thrown d) throw

14 He .... more crops if he had used modern farming methods.

a) would have grown
b) would grow
c) had grown
d) will grow

15 I would have attended the meeting if I .... time.

a) would have had
b) had had
c) had
d) have had

16 If you .... the project more thinking, you would have gained much more from it.

a) would give
b) have given
c) had given
d) would have given

17 What .... if he had left the meeting?

a) will happen
b) would happen
c) had happened
d) would have happened

18 If the money he had .... enough, he would have built a new hospital.

a) has been b) had c) had been d) had to

19 If he hadn't helped me with some money, I .... able to buy a new flat.

a) wouldn't be
b) will be
c) would have been
d) wouldn't have been

20 I wouldn't have found my wallet without ....

a) helping b) being helped c) helped d) he helped me

21 .... we gone to the club, we would have been happier.

a) If b) Unless c) Hadn't d) Had

22 If it .... for your help, I wouldn't have succeeded.

a) hadn't b) isn't c) hadn't been d) weren't

23 Sara would have been fatter .... she had eaten much.

a) if b) unless c) but for d) in case of

24 .... they had the required qualities, they would get the job.

a) Unless b) Provide c) As long as d) Supposed

25 .... eating healthy food is essential, I will do it.

a) If b) Without c) In case of d) Unless

26 .... for the Nile, Egypt would be a desert land.

a) If it were
b) If it had been
c) If it hadn't been
) If it weren't

27 If I had my hair cut, I .... to the party.

a) would have gone
b) wouldn't have gone
c) would go
d) will go

28 If I .... with you yesterday, I would have dismissed this rude employee.

a) were b) had been c) would be d) am

29 We are going to start painting the house tomorrow .... it doesn't rain.

a) unless b) provided c) without d) when

30 .... as fast as they could, they wouldn't catch the train.

a) If they ran
b) Were they to run
c) In case of running
d) Unless they ran

2 Fill in the space:

1 How would you feel if you travelled into space for six months to live on a planet? And how would you feel if you ....(a).............. told that you could never return? That is what is planned for people who are ....(b).............. to space in the future. A lot of people surprisingly have applied ....(c).............. the mission. They said that their plan is not different from those who immigrated before. They also know that their new lives would be difficult, and that they ....(d).............. probably never see their countries again.

2 The person I admire most is a footballer. He ....(a).............. playing football at the age of twelve. Now, he's one of the best footballers in the world. He ....(b).............. scored a lot of goals for his team. I think if he ....(c).............. been so successful, the country wouldn't have given his name to one of the sports clubs. He retired from playing football ....(d).............. he was forty-five after having lots of prizes.

3 Many things we do today cause us to put on weight. You should know that you put on weight ....(a).............. you put on more calories after having meals at restaurants. There, you choose food rich ....(b).............. calories and eat larger quantities. If you want to lose weight and be healthy, you ....(c).............. eat homemade food instead. Also, fresh fruits and vegetables have fewer calories ....(d).............. make you lose weight faster. Above all, exercise is the perfect solution for solving weight problems.

4 It is said that many people can be effective teachers but in fact it is more complicated and difficult than many people think. There are ....(a).............. qualities for effective teachers. They are those who ....(b).............. how to control their class without screaming and don't let the discipline get out of hand. They know their students as individuals and treat them with respect only .... (c).............. they are in return treated the same. Teachers who teach ....(d).............. disabled must have additional qualities.

Life Skills

Asking for opinion	Expressing opinion
• What is your opinion about ....? • Do you think that ....? Why? • What do you think about/of ....?	- In my opinion, ... - I think ....

Discussing consequences

- The reason that we have .... is that ....
- The reason that we have a computer is that we can do our work.
- Although we need ...., it can lead to ....
- Although we need the internet, it can lead to some problems for kids.
- The problem with .... is that ....
- Perhaps we should/ shouldn't ....



Model Essay

• How technology can improve learning

Technology has affected the different industries as a whole and education is one of them. From schools to colleges and universities, everyone can feel the impact of technology. Surely, there are advantages and some disadvantages for technology. Apart from the argument that technology has negatively affected students' learning, I think it has made the academic learning better.

Technology has also proved to be a helping hand for teachers who sometimes find it hard to explain certain things within normal classrooms. Teachers are able to prepare their lessons in a very good way by including different types of activities and interactive controls for students.

Also, communication is an essential part of any activity. And when it comes to education, it helps students and teachers to communicate easily whether at schools or from their homes. I think learning will be everywhere and at any time. In addition to that, technology could help students to do any kind of researches. As they can find any information they want on the internet.

The use of technology has made things a lot more fun than ever. We all know that a student learns more when he/she practices especially with having fun.

Finally, we can say that technology is going to stay and develop. There are more revolutions that are exposed in the industry, so we need to be ready for every new update.

Speaking

Discussing consequences

Discussing consequences about technology

Imagine your friend and you are discussing the consequences about new technology.

You can visit the website https://tophat.com/blog/how-does-technology-impact-student-learning/ to get more information about this subject.

Prepare answers for the following questions:

1. In your opinion, how useful is technology when you are learning something?
2. How do you use technology to help you learn English?
3. Will this technology have a positive or a negative effect on our lives?

Practice

• **Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:**

Ali and Taher are talking about the consequences of technology in learning process.

Ali : Do you think modern technology helped us in the learning process?

Taher : Of course, it helped us during the period of Coronavirus.

Ali : How useful was it during that period of time?

Taher : ....

Ali : I agree with you. Distance learning helped us a lot.

Taher : But do you think it will have positive or negative effects on our lives?

Ali : ....

Taher : How can it have negative effects?

Ali : ....

General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We were just .... about what we did last weekend.
   a) looking b) searching c) cheating d) chatting
2. I like watching .... series more than talk shows.
   a) ever day b) everyday c) ever d) every days
3. What .... of music do you like, my friend?
   a) effect b) affection c) result d) type
4. Sorry, I can't answer questions about my .... life.
   a) personnel b) personal c) individual d) popular
5. In this small town, it was .... to find so many really good restaurants.
   a) extreme b) personal c) private d) general
6. Are you for or .... using the mobile phone while driving?
   a) with b) at c) against d) about
7. All the current events may lead .... the start of a war.
   a) to b) at c) for d) with
8. If the farmer's fields had got very dry last summer, he .... them.
   a) would irrigate b) will irrigate
   c) would have irrigated d) wouldn't have irrigated
9. If you .... the first prize, they would have celebrated you.
   a) won b) had won c) win d) would win
10. Rana would have been a doctor .... she had studied harder.
    a) unless b) without c) in case of d) if
11. .... he found the suitable place, he wouldn't have stayed in this city.
    a) If b) Had c) Hadn't d) Weren't
12. We would have been able to catch the thief .... we had had the same speed.
    a) if b) in case of c) without d) but for
13. Without calling me yesterday, she .... many problems.
    a) will have b) would have c) may have d) would have had
14. Had they not rushed Mona to hospital, she ....
    a) would have died b) would die
    c) will die d) could die
15. Unless he had gone to university, he .... into the army.
    a) would go b) would have gone
    c) will go d) had gone

2 Fill in the space:

The world population is increasing greatly. If this rate of increase in population continues, the whole world ....(a).......... face famine and a lot of people will die of lack of food. It is a great problem ....(b).......... scientists do their best to solve. They are thinking of using sea water for irrigation to ....(c).......... able to plant more food. If this ....(d).........., the problem may be solved soon.

3 Read the following comprehension:

Helen has been a vegetarian for a year and a half. "It happened all of a sudden," she says. I just couldn't eat meat any more. It made me feel sick. I suddenly thought of it as eating an animal, like a piece of cow, instead of a piece of beef. I did have a few meat meals during the first few weeks, but I felt so incredibly guilty and ashamed afterwards that I soon stopped. I wouldn't eat meat now if you paid me.

When I told my mum I wanted to be a vegetarian, she went, "No, no." But I talked to dad and he said I could; I got round them by telling them I'd probably be sick if they gave me meat. Mum took me to the doctor who gave me loads of advice, and I've felt fine ever since. I've got thinner, but that's OK by me. I gave up meat because I think it's wrong to kill animals.

Some vegetarian foods annoy me, like when they're called vegetarian beef or something, because that's imitating meat which is nearly as bad as having the real thing. I don't find vegetarian food boring. School's no problem either because they always have a soya meal for the vegetarians. I do get a bit of stick from my friends about my belief. They say, "I'll get you a sheep's heart for your birthday." But I can be a bit annoying sometimes because I'm always trying to convert them. They don't want to and it's difficult.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When Helen told her mother that she wanted to be a vegetarian, the mother ....
   a) didn't care about that
   b) was quite happy
   c) felt uneasy
   d) fell ill at once
2. Helen has been a vegetarian for .... months.
   a) eight
   b) eighty
   c) eighteen
   d) eighty-one
3. The underlined words "to convert them" mean to ....
   a) help them eat well
   b) persuade them to be vegetarians
   c) offer them a lot of meat
   d) make them eat fish

4. Helen felt guilty after ....

a) stopping eating beef
b) becoming a vegetarian
c) eating a few meat meals
d) feeling sick

5. At first, Helen's mother .... her intention to become a vegetarian.

a) agreed to
b) refused to
c) ignored
d) admired

B) Answer the following questions:

6. When did Helen become a vegetarian?
7. What is your opinion of eating meat?
8. Give a suitable title to the passage.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Smoking cigarettes and pollution represent two fearful enemies to man as they destroy health and bring about suffering and death.
2. Unlike other means of transport, the bicycle does not use petrol. This means that it keeps the air clean and does not need a big space to park.
3. There are different types of tourism which attract tourists to our country. The most common type is travelling for pleasure and relaxation.

B) Translate into English:

١- لا توجد تفرقة فى مصر مبنية على الدين أو النوع أو اللون أو المكانـــة الاجتماعيـــة أو الثروة. كلنا متســـاوون: الرجـل أو المرأة، المسيحى أو المسلم.

٢- تشـجع الحكومــة الصناعات المحلية حتى نسـتغنى عن كثير من الواردات التى تحتاج إلــى الكثير من العملة الصعبة وفى نفس الوقت توفر فرص عمل للشباب.

٣- فى الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أى دولة أن تقف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام.

Enrich your Vocabulary

represent	يمثل	discrimination	تفرقة
fearful	مخيف/مرعب	social position	المكانة الاجتماعية
pleasure	سعادة/متعة	apart from	بمعزل عن
bring about	يسبب	do without	يستغنى
relaxation	استرخاء		

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. From your own point of view, what the most influential invention is.
2. Schools as we dream of.



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The restaurant's perfect location by the lake is its .... over the other restaurants in the area.

a) advantage
b) disadvantage
c) drawback
d) advert

2 Our company provides .... such as health insurance تأمين صحي and paid vacations.

a) damages
b) benefits
c) adventures
d) projects

3 We could hear the .... of her high-heeled shoes on the pavement as she came toward us.

a) trick
b) bang
c) click
d) strike

4 The disease is .... from one person to another through the air.

a) communicated
b) translated
c) pumped
d) contacted

5 He could not .... his anger any longer, and he began shouting at the clerk.

a) extend
b) control
c) reflect
d) reject

6 The novel is written in an easy .... style so it is popular with ordinary people.

a) average
b) familiar
c) strange
d) hard

7 The captain managed to .... the ship through the storm.

a) investigate
b) mislead
c) deviate
d) navigate

8 Drawing, like writing, can be a/an .... for expressing your feelings.

a) vehicle
b) miracle
c) obstacle
d) marvel

9 News of the accident soon .... the country through social media.

a) published
b) revealed
c) got around
d) pressed

10 The young woman has resigned from her .... as secretary.

a) position
b) location
c) situation
d) profession

11 The computer is .... of all inventions of modern world.

a) the better
b) the most better
c) the best
d) better than

12 My son did his homework perfectly, so I was pleased with ....

a) him
b) himself
c) he
d) me

13 .... coming out of hospital, I have been to the gym every day.

a) Since
b) Before
c) By
d) As soon as

14 I think .... was responsible for damaging the trees should be fined.

a) whatever
b) whichever
c) that
d) whoever

15 The password is only known by ....

a) many
b) a few
c) a little
d) much

16 Since the operation two months ago, Ali .... to walk again. He can already take one or two steps unaided.

a) has learned
b) had learned
c) had been learning
d) learned

17 Some of my mother's jewellery .... missing and she is angry.

a) are
b) have been
c) were
d) is

18 *The Days* .... by our great writer Taha Hussein.

a) were written
b) was written
c) had written
d) were writing

19 I always find chemistry and physics ....

a) interested
b) interest
c) interesting
d) interests

20 The house is .... for all of the three families to live in.

a) too large
b) so large
c) enough large
d) large enough

Test 2 Based on Unit 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's quite easy to .... Alexandria by car.
a) get around b) get on c) get better d) get over

2 At work, we use an .... kettle to make tea.
a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician

3 We are going on a .... to a strange country by plane.
a) picnic b) voyage c) journey d) flight

4 She .... that the job wasn't as easy as it might seem.
a) invented b) discovered c) explored d) covered

5 We never travelled .... when we were kids.
a) board b) broad c) aboard d) abroad

6 Do you want any help .... the new laptop?
a) with b) at c) for d) up

7 If you .... me your email address, I will send you what you want.
a) sent b) send c) sends d) had sent

8 I wouldn't be able to communicate with my family if they .... the internet at home.
a) don't have b) wouldn't have c) can't have d) didn't have

9 If you need to send a message or an email, ... your smartphone.
a) use b) will use c) can use d) uses

10 Unless you had a modern car, you .... able to go to Aswan.
a) will be b) wouldn't be
c) wouldn't have been d) won't be

11 If the food .... outside the fridge for a long time, it rots.
a) put b) was put c) puts d) is put

12 Noha would have come to the party if she ....
a) would have invited c) was invited
c) had been invited d) has been invited

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

13 The words .... and .... have the same meaning as the word "**annoying**".
a) disturbing b) disgusting
c) common d) familiar
e) troublesome

14 The opposite of the word "**useful**" is ....

a) beneficial

b) horrible

c) harmful

d) unfamiliar

e) useless

15 **Fill in the space:**

Shopping in a big city is very tiring nowadays. First of all, if you ....(a)........... shopping, it will take you a long time to find a suitable place for parking. Then, you ....(b)............ to move among the crowded shoppers who ....(c)............ scattered everywhere in the mall. After a long and tiring journey, you find yourself exhausted and wishing to leave as ....(d)............ as possible.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Bringing up children is a complex process. The parents are the child's first educators. Every mistake they make in bringing up their children is a battle lost in the fight for a better future. Children should be armed with good qualities to become good citizens. The things that are most vital in the care of a child are a little bit different throughout the age periods. During the first year a baby needs a lot of motherly care. He has to be fed, he eats often, and his food is usually different from the adults. For his spirit to grow normally, he needs someone to dote on him, to think that he is the most wonderful baby in the world, to make noises and baby talk to him, to hug him and smile at him and to keep his company during wakeful periods.

In big families, children are not always given due care. A child is liable to be neglected by the mother because she is either busy or has many other children to care for. The infant whose mother can't take care of him during daytime needs individual care whether it is in his own home or someone else's who may be a relative, a neighbour or a friend whom the other knows and has confidence in. If a new maid or nurse is to come to the house; the mother should know her well before she leaves the baby in her care. Nearly all working mothers nowadays take their children to nurseries. Sometimes the nursery is no good for them. The care there is mechanical rather than warmhearted. There is too much risk of epidemics of colds and other infectious diseases.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 According to the passage, a child ....
a) his teachers at school
b) his friends in the street
c) TV and Radio
d) his parents at home

17 According to the passage, big families give .... to their children.
a) due care
b) good care
c) care
d) little care

18 Mothers nowadays feel that bringing up children is a very .... process.
a) easy b) difficult c) normal d) usual

19 The underlined word "him" refers to ....
a) an educator b) a baby c) a relative d) a neighbour

20 In the second paragraph, the phrase "**has confidence in**" means to ....
a) deceive b) support c) trust in d) be afraid of

B) Answer the following questions:

21 In what way is the food of a baby different from that of an adult?
22 What are the disadvantages of taking children to nurseries?
23 How do you think we can show interest in our children?

24 Translate into English:

- يجب أن يتعاون الشعب مع الحكومة لزيادة الاستثمار؛ من أجل مواجهة مشكلة البطالة، وذلك عن طريق إنشاء المشروعات الصغيرة والتى تستوعب عددًا من العاملين.

25 Translate into Arabic:

Communication has become easier and the chance for individuals to obtain mass information at a great speed has become available.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

How important is the internet in society?

Unit 9 A good education

Objectives

Reading : Text about Charlotte Brontë and her novel *Jane Eyre*
Writing : A summary of *Jane Eyre*
Listening : A discussion on changing schools; agreeing or disagreeing on an opinion
Speaking : Agreeing and disagreeing
Language : Past simple passive; Past simple and past perfect (Active)
Communication : Supporting your opinion with reasons
Life skills : Different ways of learning



Warm up



GOOD EDUCATION Make them love learning	BAD EDUCATION Make the bad learning
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

cruel (adj)	قاسٍ
governess (n)	مربية
housekeeper (n)	مديرة المنزل
orphan (n)	يتيم
servant (n)	خادم/خادمة

Vocabulary on Reading

advertise (v) – d	يعلن
author (n)	مؤلف
become (v)	يصبح
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
dead (adj)	ميت
education (n)	تعليم
employ (v) – ed	يوظف
fire (n)	حريق
forget (v)	ينسى
honesty (n)	أمانة
hurt (v)	يؤذى
importance (n)	أهمية
kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة
later (adv)	فيما بعد
leave (v)	يغادر
nearby (adj)	قريب/مجاور
own (v) – ed	يمتلك
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما
relations (n)	أقارب
secret (n)	سر
teach (v)	يُدرس/يُعلِّم
unkind (adj)	غير طيب أو عطوف
unusual (adj)	غير عادى
wealthy (adj)	ثرى

Vocabulary on Listening

discuss (v) – ed	يناقش
extra (adj)	إضافى
fail (v) – ed	يرسب/يفشل
imagine (v) – d	يتخيل
helpful (adj)	مفيد
improve (v) – d	يحسن
level (n)	مستوى
school term (n)	فصل دراسى
understand (v)	يفهم
upset (v)	يضايق

Workbook Vocabulary

believe (v) – d	يصدق/يعتقد	gardener (n)	جناينى/بستانى
bully (n)	بلطجى/متنمر	headmaster (n)	ناظر
comfortable (adj)	مريح	hope (v) – d	يأمل
continue (v) – d	يستمر	huge (adj)	ضخم
earn (v) – ed	يكسب مالًا	previous (adj)	سابق
energy (n)	طاقة	realise (v) – d	يدرك
friendly (adj)	ودود		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

become friends with	يصبح صديقًا مع	lose job	يفقد وظيفة
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	make friends	يكوِّن صداقات/يصادق
keep ... warm	يحافظ على ... دافئًا	received no replies	لم يتلق ردًا
do an online course	يقوم بدورة تدريبية عبر الإنترنت	live with	يعيش مع
apply for	يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)	lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال بـ
chat with	يدردش مع	move to	ينتقل إلى
come round	يزور	return to	يعود إلى
copy of	نسخة من	right for	مناسب لـ
cruel to	قاسٍ مع	save from	ينقذ من
fight with	يحارب/يتقاتل مع	send away	يطرد
have lessons with	يحضر دروسًا مع	stay in/at	يبقى فى
hear about	يسمع عن	travel to	يسافر/يذهب إلى
instead of	بدلًا من	work for	يعمل لدى
keep ... under control	يبقى ... تحت السيطرة	worried about	قلق بشأن
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع		



Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
advertise	يعلن	advertisement advertising advertiser	إعلان إعلان مُعلن	------------------------------	
believe	يعتقد/يصدق	belief	اعتقاد	believable	قابل للتصديق
---------------------------		cruelty	قسوة	cruel	قاسٍ
discuss	يناقش	discussion	نقاش		
employ	يوظف	employment employer employee	توظيف صاحب العمل موظف	employable	قابل للتوظيف
fail	يرسب/يفشل	failure	فشل	failed	فاشل
---------------------------		honesty	أمانة	honest	أمين
own	يمتلك	owner ownership	مالك ملكية	------------------------------	
serve	يخدم	service	خدمة	serviceable	نافع/مفيد
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	مُحسن/مُعدل
help	يساعد	help	مساعدة	helpful	معين/مساعد
upset	يضايق	upset	اضطراب	upsetting	مزعج/مقلق



Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Why do some children have to live with relatives who are not their parents?

Jane Eyre



Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous authors[1]. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is *Jane Eyre*. It was written in 1847. Jane Eyre was an orphan[2] who lived with her cousins and her wealthy[3] aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was unkind and they did not want Jane to live with them.

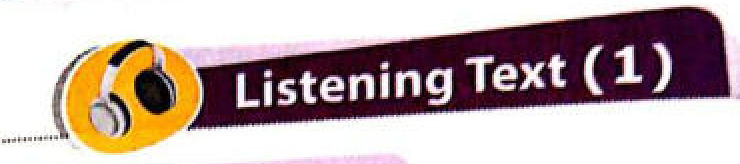
Jane was sent away to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the owner[4], Mr Brocklehurst, was very cruel[5], so the students lived unhappy lives. Finally, Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane decided to apply for[6] a job as a governess[7]. Governesses were often employed by rich families. She started to teach a young French girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind housekeeper[8].

One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall and Jane saved Mr Rochester. He said that the fire was started by a servant[9] called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Jane left Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

(1) مؤلفون
(2) طفلة يتيمة
(3) ثرى
(4) مالك
(5) قاسٍ
(6) يتقدم لوظيفة
(7) مربية
(8) مديرة المنزل
(9) خادمة

Post-reading question:
- What does the story tell you about the character of Jane Eyre?





Pre-listening question:

- What do you know about boarding school?

Teacher : We don't know much about Jane's early school days, but I imagine she had gone to school before she moved(1) to her aunt's house, as we know she could read. We also know that she was sent to a boarding school(2) after she had upset(3) Mrs Reed and her cousin John.

Omar : What's a boarding school?

Teacher : It's a school where children live as well as study. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich. And of course some rich children were taught at home. Governesses(4), like Jane, were employed to teach them.

Ali : My cousin, Kamal, had lessons at home.

Teacher : Did he, Ali? Why was that?

Ali : He had to stay at home for six months because he'd broken(5) his back when the school term started. He wanted to go to school, but he'd already made lots of friends and they came round(6) to see him, so it wasn't too bad.

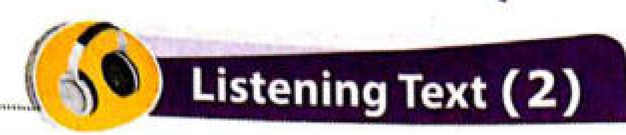
Teacher : Did a teacher come to his house every day?

Ali : No. He was sent an email every day with the work that his friends were doing in school, but my aunt helped him when he couldn't understand it.

(1) انتقلت
(2) مدرسة داخلية
(3) أزعجت
(4) المربيات
(5) كسر
(6) زار

Post-listening question:

- How were boarding schools in the past?



Pre-listening question:

- Do you think it is easy for a student to change schools? Why?

(1) إضافي	
(2) مستوى	
(3) فشل	
(4) يترك الأمور على حالها	
(5) يناقش	

Dareen : Dad, I don't want to change schools. I want to go to school with my friends.

Father : It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lot of different schools before we came back to Egypt. You can make new friends at a different school.

Dareen : I like my friends at my school now.

Father : It is easy to keep in touch with your friends. I always see you on your phone. I lost touch with the people I'd gone to school with.

Mother : If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online course. Some extra[1] lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons. And they say some of these online courses are fantastic. They can understand what your level[2] is and give you work that's just right for you. In fact, you were given a new computer to help you study.

Father : And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school.

Mother : Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from her online teachers.

Dareen : But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only failed[3] the test because I'd been ill when I took it.

Father : OK. OK. We'll leave things the way they are[4] for now and then we can discuss[5] it again after your exams at the end of the year.

Dareen : OK. Thank you.

Post-listening question:

- Do you think learning at home today helps students get a good education? Why?

Workbook Text

Dear Ellen,

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am glad[1] to say that I have found one as governess and I am quite happy.

The house is not very large but it is very comfortable[2] and the gardens are huge. Although I earn[3] less money than in my previous[4] job, I am working with kind, friendly people. I have two pupils: an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy.

My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so much energy[5]. I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under control and make them happy.

Well, I must continue with my work. I hope to see you soon.

Kind regards,

Charlotte

(1) سعيد
(2) مريح
(3) يكسب
(4) سابقة
(5) طاقة

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They no longer .... cigarettes at sporting events to encourage young people to stop smoking.
   a) let　b) advertise　c) announce　d) forgive
2. The .... has signed the book before giving it to me as a present.
   a) reader　b) actor　c) author　d) maker
3. The businessman was found .... in his car, so we called the police.
   a) dead　b) died　c) death　d) dying
4. My friend is used to expensive cars as he was born into a .... family.
   a) big　b) wealthy　c) comfortable　d) huge
5. I think the internet was the most important invention in the 20th ....
   a) year　b) decade　c) century　d) millennium



cruel قاسٍ	unkind and hurting others
governess مربية	a woman who teaches children in their home
housekeeper مدبرة المنزل	a servant who looks the whole house
orphan يتيم	a child whose parents are dead
servant خادم/خادمة	a person who works for people in their house

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
comfortable	مريح	relaxed/ relaxing	uncomfortable/ annoying	غير مريح
cruel	قاسٍ	unkind/ wicked	friendly/ gentle	ودود/لطيف
dead	ميت	lifeless	alive	حي
employ	يوظف	hire	fire/ discharge	يفصل/يُقيل
huge	ضخم	enormous/ giant	tiny	ضئيل الحجم
importance	أهمية	significance	insignificance/unimportance	عدم أهمية
nearby	قريب	close	far/ faraway	بعيد
previous	سابق	earlier/ former	later	فيما بعد
realise	يدرك	understand	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم
teach	يدرس/يُعلِّم	educate	learn	يتعلم
unusual	غير عادى	uncommon	common/ conventional	شائع/تقليدى
wealthy	ثرى	rich	poor/ destitute	فقير/معدم

Notes on Vocabulary



(be) born (in/ on/ into/ with)

(be) born in + (مكان/سنة) — ولد في .....

- My sister was born in Alexandria.
- Ali was born in 2002.

(be) born on + (عام/شهر/يوم) — ولد في .....

- His mother was born on 21st August 1979.

(be) born into ... — ولد في عائلة

- Nora was born into a good family.

(be) born with + (disease) — مولود بـ(مرض)

- Merna was born with a small hole in her heart.

Possessive ('s) + Superlative Adjective without (the)

لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفات التفضيل بعد ('s) الملكية.

- Ahmed Shawky was one of Egypt's most famous poets.
- Ali is the world's fastest male swimmer in our team.

work (with/ for/ in/ on/ as)

work with — يعمل مع

- All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.

work for — يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح (شخص/شركة)

- My brother works for a big company in the city.
- Egypt works for peace in the Middle East.

work in — يعمل في (مكان/مجال)

- I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.

work on — يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)

- The writer said that he was working on a new novel.

work as — يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)

- My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram newspaper.

later latter

later فيما بعد (ظرف)
- I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.

latter الأخير أو الثانى من اثنين (صفة)
- This point is explained fully in the latter part of the chapter.

quiet quite quit

quiet هادئ (صفة)
- We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby.

quite إلى حد ما/تماماً (ظرف)
- The food in the canteen is usually quite good.

quit يغادر (يترك العمل) (فعل)
- He quit his job after an argument with a colleague.

a six-year-old girl & six-year-old girls

a six-year-old girl بنت عمرها ٦ سنوات
- I will play a game with a six-year-old girl. She is my daughter's friend.

six-year-old girls بنات عمر كل منهن ٦ سنوات
- All the players in our team are six-year-old girls.

لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

second/ minute/ hour/ day/ week/ month/ year/ decade/ century

- We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday.
- Our company held five-hour meetings.

فى حالة وجود كلمة (time) بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد و(s') فى حالة الجمع:

- He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.

gain earn

gain يكتسب/يحصل على شيء معنوى مفيد (خبرة/معرفة معلومات/شهرة/الوزن/السرعة)
- I gained a lot of weight while I was on holiday.

earn يكسب (قوتاً أو رزقاً) مقابل عمل
- How much do you earn if you don't mind me asking?

make **force**

make + (object) + inf. يجعل
- I like him because he makes me laugh.

make + (someone/something) + adj. يجعل
- He wants to make the world a better place.

force + (object) + to + inf. يجبر/يجعل
- She forced her daughter to sleep early.

recognise **realise**

recognise (v) – d يتعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته)
- I didn't recognise you in your uniform.

realise (v) – d يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا)/يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)
- Do you realise you're an hour late?
- She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

Language Notes

1. Do you think learning at home today helps students get a good education?

- كلمة education لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولكن من الممكن أن يأتي قبلها (a/an) إذا قصد نوع معين من التعليم أو التدريب.

2. Many of the children from rich or important families had lessons with a teacher who came to their homes instead of them going to school.

- تستخدم instead of كحرف جر ويأتي بعدها v-ing أو Noun ولكن هنا تم استخدام ضمير المفعول بعد instead of وقبل v-ing لتوضيح الفاعل المقصود.

- In some countries, students can learn at home instead.

- تستخدم instead كظرف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

3. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich.

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة like هنا بمعنى مثل لتشبيه شيء بأخر.

4. They didn't have it in my local bookshop, so I kept going back to check.

- لاحظ استخدام v-ing بعد الفعل keep.

- My friends were lovely, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible.

- وأيضًا keep on بمعنى يستمر وتتبع بالفعل مضافًا إليه ing.



Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you go to America or Europe one day, you will .... the importance of learning foreign languages.
   a) release b) realise
   c) improve d) rationalise
2. One hundred pounds is what my uncle .... a day. He's a mechanic.
   a) pays b) wins
   c) gains d) earns
3. When you work .... a big company, you will have a good salary.
   a) from b) for
   c) with d) as
4. He had to go to hospital after an accident, but unfortunately he died ....
   a) late b) latter
   c) later d) lately
5. My father worked .... a pilot in Egypt Airline Company.
   a) in b) for
   c) at d) as

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She worked as a .... in the king's palace. She lived with the king's family and taught his children at home.
a) servant b) headmistress c) governess d) nurse

2. People who are .... to animals should be punished.
a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind

3. Tourism industry can .... millions of people such as workers, hotel staffs and travel agents.
a) employ b) rent c) imply d) apply

4. Rich people have .... to do their housework such as cleaning the floors and washing clothes.
a) gardeners b) guards c) lawyers d) servants

5. This .... uses long, complex sentences. That is his style of writing.
a) photographer b) actor c) author d) composer

6. Everyone likes working for Mr Hamdi. They say he is a very kind ....
a) customer b) employee c) employer d) client

7. Don't go near the .... because it is giving off a lot of heat.
a) fire b) energy c) power d) strength

8. She applied for the job which was .... in Al-Ahram newspaper.
a) employed b) advertised c) broadcast d) informed

9. .... is an investment in the future of a country and its young people.
a) Advertisement b) Unemployment c) Cruelty d) Education

10. I visit my grandparents very often because they live in a .... village.
a) remote b) strange c) nearby d) far

11. She left good wealth for her .... grandchild in the will وصية.
a) orphan b) passing c) dead d) dying

12. My uncle is very ...., so he never has to worry about money.
a) cruel b) wealthy c) comfortable d) relaxed

13. .... is one of the most important morals accepted by any society.
a) Wealthy b) Unkindness c) Cruelty d) Honesty

14. The sharp knife .... my mother's hand while she was cooking.
a) killed b) damaged c) hurt d) pressed

15. Her voice was full of sadness when she talked about her .... husband.
a) dead b) kind c) rich d) wealthy

16. Most of the .... used nowadays comes from fossil fuels.
a) strength b) energy c) fire d) food

17. My elder brother chose to .... his studies abroad.
a) keep b) advertise c) stay d) continue

18 I want to hire a .... look after my garden and take care of plants there.
a) guardian b) planter c) gardener d) plantar

19 She had never .... being able to visit such remote villages.
a) imagined b) said c) told d) kept

20 My mother is crying. Something must have .... her.
a) upset b) pleased c) failed d) improved

21 I am proud to be .... by Mr Adel. He helped me to become the best student I could.
a) brought b) graded c) taught d) graduated

22 I thought the best way to .... my English was to live in England.
a) prove b) approve c) improve d) provide

23 I asked for a/an .... two weeks to finish the work.
a) rise b) increase c) free d) extra

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

24 My father asked me to .... friends with Ali again, but I couldn't forgive him.
a) lose b) miss c) become d) apply

25 We need to .... for the job online so we need an internet connection.
a) supply b) stay c) hear d) apply

26 After moving to my new house, I can walk to work instead .... going by car.
a) in b) with c) of d) by

27 How long have you worked .... Mr Nader? I think he is a kind employer.
a) with b) for c) at d) in

28 A huge factory like this isn't right .... such a small village.
a) as b) at c) by d) for

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

29 How many people did the company employ? The antonym of the verb "**employ**" is ....
a) hire b) fire c) understand d) learn e) discharge

30 She was often cruel to her sister. The synonym of the adjective "**cruel**" is ....
a) friendly b) gentle c) lifeless d) wicked e) unkind

31 She used to wear loose, comfortable clothing. The synonym of the word "**comfortable**" is ....
a) fitting b) relaxing c) gentle d) enormous e) close

32 It is unusual to find malls of this size in this village. The antonym of the word "**unusual**" is ....
a) uncommon b) former c) common d) conventional e)alive

33 She has two children from a previous marriage. The synonym of the word "**previous**" is ....
a) earlier b) far c) later d) former e) destitute



Past simple passive — المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى البسيط

- Taha Hussein wrote many wonderful novels. (مبنى للمعلوم Active)
- Many wonderful novels were written by Taha Hussein. (مبنى للمجهول Passive)

من هنا يكون تكوين المبنى للمجهول بوجه عام هو Obj. + v. to be + P.P.

والمبنى للمجهول فى الماضى البسيط هو Obj. + (was – were) + P.P.

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
- A lot of tourists visited the Egyptian Museum last week.	- The Egyptian Museum was visited by a lot of tourists last week.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
- When was the house cleaned?	- The house wasn't cleaned yesterday.
- Was the house cleaned yesterday?	



لاحـــظ:

١) عند وجود فعلين فى الجملة يصاغ المبنى للمجهول كما يلى:

- الأفعال التى يأتى بعدها المصدر فى المعلوم يسبق المصدر بـ to فى المجهول.

- I saw my friend play the game.
  = My friend was seen to play the game.

- الأفعال التى يأتى بعدها v+ing فى المبنى للمعلوم يبقى كما هو فى المجهول.

- I saw my friend playing the game.
  = My friend was seen playing the game.

٢) فى بعض الجمل يكون هناك أكثر من مفعول فيكون المبنى للمجهول كما يلى:

- My father gave me a present for my birthday.
  = I was given a present for my birthday.
  = A present was given to me for my birthday.

- إذا بدأنا بالمفعول غير المباشر (الشخص) نبنى للمجهول مع تكملة باقى الجملة.
- إذا بدأنا بالمفعول المباشر (الشىء) نبنى للمجهول ونضع قبل المفعول غير المباشر حرف جر to أو for.



٣) أى فعل يضاف إليه ing (V+ing) يبنى للمجهول بـ (being + P.P.).

- I don't like people asking me about my age.
  = I don't like being asked about my age.

٤) من الممكن استخدام get بدلًا من v. to be مع بعض الأفعال مثل:
(burnt - married - lost - used - arrested).

- My little son was lost in the crowd.
  = My little son got lost in the crowd.

٥) الأفعال التى تحول بطريقتين (say - think - report - claim - allege).

It + passive + that + sentence
Subject + passive + to + inf./have + P.P.

Present

- They think that he likes vegetables. (Active)
  = It's thought that he likes vegetables. = He is thought to like vegetables.

Past

- They thought he went out alone.
  = It was thought that he went out alone. = He was thought to have gone out alone.

٦) يتم تحويل الجملة الأمرية كما يلى Let + obj. + be + P.P.

- Open the gate. (Active)
- Let the gate be opened. (Passive)

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The letter .... by post last month.
   a) will send b) sent c) was sending d) was sent
2. Ali is said .... to London 2 weeks ago.
   a) to travel b) to have travelled c) travelled d) was travelling
3. There was a fight in our street, but nobody ....
   a) could hurt b) were hurt c) was hurting d) got hurt
4. This picture .... by a good photographer last week.
   a) took b) was taking c) was taken d) would be taken
5. He was asked .... the match by many of his supporters.
   a) play b) playing c) to play d) to have played

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... a lovely big cake on my last birthday.
   a) was giving b) gave c) was given d) had given
2. Students .... to help clean the garden around the school.
   a) sent b) were sending c) have sent d) were sent
3. We .... to the club to enjoy our time after our exams.
   a) took b) were taking c) were taken d) have taken
4. The company .... over by the government in 2007.
   a) took b) was taken c) is taken d) has been taken
5. The meeting had to .... because of the manager's illness.
   a) postpone b) postponed
   c) been postponed d) be postponed
6. After the robbery of the bank, many suspects ....
   a) were arrested b) are arrested c) arrested d) got arresting
7. My house was broken into yesterday, but nothing ....
   a) wasn't stolen b) stolen c) was stolen d) had stolen
8. My car didn't work well as it .... for a long time.
   a) was checked b) had checked c) wasn't checked d) didn't check
9. This road .... very often in the past but now many people use it.
   a) wasn't used b) didn't use c) isn't used d) wasn't using
10. I was given two hours .... my decision which was so important.
    a) to be made b) made c) to making d) to make
11. I hate .... when I am speaking.
    a) to disturb b) to be disturbed
    c) be disturbed d) disturbed
12. It .... that two people were killed in the explosion.
    a) is reporting b) is reported c) reports d) has reported
13. The Lighthouse of Alexandria .... by earthquakes in the fourteenth century.
    a) was damaged b) is damaged
    c) has damaged d) damages
14. Our great football team .... in 1902.
    a) formed b) was formed
    c) has been formed d) had been formed
15. It is known that Gustavo Eiffel .... the Eiffel Tower in 1889.
    a) was designed b) was designing c) had designed d) designed

16 I prefer food .... by my mother. It is very delicious.
a) to cook b) cooking c) being cooked d) cooks

17 Don't let yourself .... by other people. Try to be cautious.
a) deceive b) to be deceived c) is deceived d) be deceived

18 A good piece of advice was given .... me by my father.
a) to b) with c) by d) of

19 I .... to stay up late to finish all my work as a punishment.
a) am making b) was made c) was making d) had made

20 My mother is very proud of her new grandson who .... last week.
a) had born b) has born c) was born d) born

21 I .... that we would have a training for using the new machine.
a) has been told b) told c) was told d) had told

22 You .... to the party with your friends. Why didn't you go?
a) were inviting b) were invited
c) invited d) have invited

23 While I was on holiday, my camera .... from my hotel room.
a) was disappearing b) was disappeared
c) disappeared d) had disappeared

24 My husband .... to go to a remote area to work there.
a) had forced b) was forcing
c) was forced d) have been forced

25 The soldier came secretly for fear of .... by anyone.
a) was seen b) seeing c) had been seen d) being seen

26 My teacher gave us a lot of questions, but many of them .... as they were difficult.
a) weren't answered b) didn't answer
c) answered d) hadn't answered

27 Sally .... to the wedding party but she couldn't go as she was busy.
a) is invited b) will be invited c) invited d) was invited

28 The house .... in 2011 belongs to my grandmother.
a) built b) was built c) which built d) building

29 I remember .... to the zoo when I was young and I really enjoyed that.
a) taking b) being taken c) been taken d) to be taken

30 The bridge .... during the floods but fortunately no one was hurt.
a) was collapsed b) has been collapsed
c) collapses d) collapsed

2 Fill in the space:

1 For thousands of years, people had wanted to link the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea to shorten the sea journey from the west to the east. The first canal ....(a).............. built around 1300 BCE. However, it was not ....(b).............. care of, and it wasn't used after the eighth century. In 1858, the Egyptian government began work on a new canal ....(c).............. the Suez Canal. It has become the ....(d).............. important waterway in the world since then.

2 The internet is used every day by millions of people all over the world, but its history is not often mentioned. The internet ....(a).............. designed by a telecommunication company, or by a group of computer enthusiasts. In fact, it was originally a military project ....(b).............. ARPA net. In the 1960s, some scientists ....(c).............. asked to design a network of computer like a spider's web. The network was designed ....(d).............. continue working even after a nuclear attack!

3 Nowadays paper is made from straw of rice, sticks of cotton, rags, linen and grass. First it ....(a).............. made by rollers moved by mills, but now there are huge machines which manufacture paper. Paper factories ....(b).............. spread all over the world. At present, you can easily read a book which .... (c).............. printed in clear, big letters and on nice, smooth sheets of paper. Now books have neat and fine appearance due to the refined quality of paper .... (d).............. in printing.

4 Advertising is a media message helps to sell products or ideas to a target audience, namely use the buyers. By ....(a).............. well informed, consumers can compare, contrast, try and finally, choose the right product. However, some advertisements give a false image ....(b).............. products. Advertisers promote these products to .... (c).............. people feel the need to buy. In other words they advertise their products ....(d).............. sending attractive messages to influence consumer's decision.

5 We all know that money is very important for all of us. But, it is also ....(a).............. to be the root of evil. But I don't totally agree with this idea, as it can be .... (b).............. in both good and evil sides. A lot of donations ....(c).............. given to charities by good citizens to help the poor. As money is important, it should ....(d).............. spent on useful projects.

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's .... to keep an animal chained up like that all the time.
   a) powerful b) cruel c) strong d) kind
2. My wife hopes our children will get a good ....
   a) development b) unemployment c) cruelty d) education
3. The coach continued to .... with the referee throughout the match.
   a) accept b) argue c) discuss d) agree
4. Ramy was a/an ...., so a woman adopted him at nine months.
   a) orphan b) murderer c) dead d) honest
5. His father's family lived in a big house with .... They were very rich.
   a) scientists b) criminals c) lawyers d) servants
6. My father is the .... of two books on Egyptian history.
   a) photographer b) actor c) author d) developer
7. They discovered paintings dating to the 17th .... They were painted in 1690.
   a) year b) millennium c) century d) decade
8. When my neighbour came out of prison, no one wanted to .... him.
   a) employ b) rent c) imply d) apply
9. Preparations .... by the time the guests arrived.
   a) was finished b) was finishing c) had been finished d) had finished
10. Ronald Reagan .... President of the United States in 1980.
    a) was elected b) elected c) has elected d) had elected
11. The wheel .... thousands of years ago.
    a) is invented b) was invented c) had invented d) invented
12. The windows and the door ...., then I went out and drove my car to work.
    a) locked b) had locked c) were locked d) was locked
13. While I was walking through the forest, I .... and called for help.
    a) was losing b) got lost c) went lost d) lost
14. It .... that Egypt is considered the motherland of many peoples.
    a) can't deny b) can't be denying b) is denying d) can't be denied
15. An important letter was sent .... yesterday. I was so happy when I received it.
    a) to me b) with me c) by me d) at me
16. Having .... in a friendly way, I felt so relaxed in the exam.
    a) treated b) had treated c) been treated d) have treated

2 Fill in the space:

I think Egypt is the most attractive country in the world. It is always ....(a)............ by a lot of tourists to enjoy its fine weather. It ....(b)............ known that Egypt has third of the world's monuments. A lot of tourist sites have ....(c)............ developed recently to attract more visitors. In addition to that, some other sites are going to ....(d)............ developed in the near future. It is our role that we should encourage tourism as it is a source of hard currency.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

New fashions in clothing are not created only for the commercial exploitation of women. The change of fashion every year adds spice to life. Year after year, there is a change in colour, model and style. Ham-lines are taken up or let down, waist-lines are taken in or let out, neck-lines are lowered or raised and so on.

Women follow fashion to please themselves and also to please men. The world would be a dull place if women always wore the same clothes. There is no exploitation when designers decide one thing this year and next year another thing. No one is surprised because a huge demand for new styles always exists. Over and above, mass production makes clothes cheap and available to everyone.

These days nearly all men follow fashion. Their hair-style, shirts, suits and shoes cope with fashion. Men who resist fashion are becoming a minority. Changing fashion is not a waste. The clothing industry provides employment and gains for vast numbers who are connected with it such as sheep farmers, designers, textiles mills and stores. The clothing industry spends a lot on industrial research new materials such as nylon, rayon and terylene have been introduced. Also, it is a huge import-export business which is important to the world trade. To appear fashionable gives confidence to us. Fashion contributes a great deal to society.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Fashion adds spice to life because ....

a) it makes people look fashionable
b) it gives a sweet flavor to our life
c) it gives a tasteless flavor to our life
d) it is not tasteful

2 "Men who resist fashion are becoming a minority". This means that ....

a) men who side with fashion are becoming a smaller number
b) men who side against fashion are becoming a smaller number
c) men who side against fashion are becoming a little in number
d) men who oppose fashion are the majority

3 The clothing industry is of great use because ....
a) changing fashion is waste
b) men oppose fashion
c) it spends a lot on industrial research
d) it provides employment and gains for those connected with it

4 As a result of the industrial research, ...
a) nearly all men follow fashion
b) there is no exploitation
c) new materials have been introduced
d) mass production makes clothes cheap

5 What did the write mean by (vast numbers)?
a) few numbers
b) low numbers
c) medium numbers
d) large numbers

B) Answer the following questions:

6 When do you think the world would be a dull place?
7 In your opinion, what do the majority of men do?
8 Why is the industrial research of great use?

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. It has become clear that the most serious problem, which affects us at the moment, is the increasing number of people who actually inhabit this planet.
2. I love music as it is considered one of the most important and powerful things in my life. My life without melodies and harmonies would be totally empty.
3. The good morals and values of the Egyptian people appears in times of hardships and crises as we have seen in the crisis of Coronavirus.

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب علينا توفير بيئة آمنة لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة، وأن نهتم بالموهوبين ونوفر الأنظمة التعليمية التى تنمى مواهبهم.
٢- لقد قام الكثير من الكتاب المصريين بكتابة مقالات وكتب عديدة؛ للمطالبة بحقوق المرأة والمساواة بينها وبين الرجل.
٣- التعليم الجيد والمتطور والإبداعي هو حق لكل طفل مصرى؛ حتى ينمو مواطنًا قادرًا على مساعدة بلاده على مواكبة الدول المتقدمة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

inhabit	يسكن	melodies	نغمات
hardships	صعوبات	talents	الموهوبون
women's rights	حقوق المرأة	equality	المساواة
cope with	يواكب	creative	إبداعى

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. A good country is the result of a good education.
2. A meeting you attended and benefitted from it.



Lessons 3&4





Vocabulary on Reading

abilities (n)	قدرات	knowledge (n)	معرفة
artist (n)	فنان	mean (v)	يعنى
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبرى	musician (n)	موسيقار
business (n)	عمل تجارى	practise (v) – d	يمارس
change (n)/(v) – d	يغير/يتغير	skill (n)	مهارة
critical (adj)	انتقادى	so-called (adj)	المزعوم/ما يسمى بـ
engine (n)	محرك/موتور	solver (n)	حلّال المشاكل
engineering (n)	هندسة	subject (n)	مادة دراسية/موضوع
equipment (n)	معدات	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
experiment (n)	تجربة عملية	thinking (n)	تفكير
keen (adj)	حريص	understanding (n)	فهم

Vocabulary on Listening

age (n)	سن/عمر	home-schooled (adj)	المتعلم فى المنزل
bookshop (n)	مكتبة لبيع الكتب	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
break (n)	راحة/فاصل	laugh (v) – ed	يضحك
bullying (n)	البلطجة/التنمر	lose (v)	يفقد
check (v) – ed	يتأكد/يفحص	lucky (adj)	محظوظ
completely (adv)	تمامًا	mind (v) – ed	يمانع
confidence (n)	ثقة	opposite (n)	عكس
copy (n) (v) (y-ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	otherwise (adv)	وإلا
electrician (n)	فنى كهرباء	practical (adj)	عملى
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	shelf (n)	رف
explain (v) – ed	يشرح	terrible (adj)	فظيع

Workbook Vocabulary

appreciate (v) – d	يقدِّر	exciting (adj)	مثير
brilliant (adj)	رائع/ذكى	feelings (n)	مشاعر
conclusion (n)	استنتاج	imagination (n)	خيال
description (n)	وصف	serious (adj)	جاد
discussion (n)	مناقشة	statements (n)	صياغات
especially (adv)	خصوصًا		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a long way from	بعيدًا عن
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
bring success	يجلب النجاح
do sports	يمارس الرياضة
do things	يقوم بفعل أشياء
do well	يؤدى بشكل جيد
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
for a while	لبرهة من الزمن
for instance	على سبيل المثال
get an education	ينال تعليمًا
agree with	يتفق مع
carry on	يستمر
disagree with	لا يتفق مع
good at	جيد فى
help with	يساعد فى
keep on	يستمر فى
kind of	نوع من
learn from	يتعلم من
get on well with	يتناغم/ينسجم مع
give jobs	يوفر/يعطى وظائف
give reasons	يعطى أسبابًا
keep going back	يستمر فى العودة
make electricity	يولِّد كهرباء
make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء
run open days	يعمل فى أيام مفتوحة
start school	يبدأ الدراسة
part of	جزء من
pick ... up	يلتقط
ready for	جاهز لـ
sorry for	آسف على
support ... with	يدعم ... بـ
take part in	يشارك فى
thanks to	بفضل
useful for	مفيد لـ
way of	طريقة لـ
way to + inf.	طريقة لـ

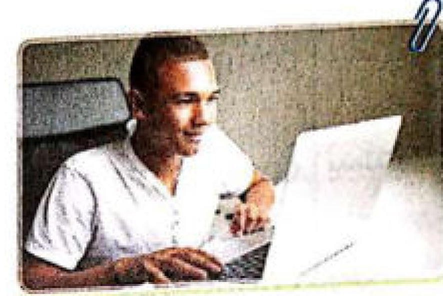
Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
appreciate يقدّر	appreciation تقدير	appreciative تقديرى
bully يتنمر/يبلطج	bullying التنمر/البلطجة bully متنمر/بلطجى	----------------------------
complete يكمل/يتمم	completion إكمال/إتمام	complete كامل
conclude يستنتج	conclusion استنتاج	conclusive حاسم
confide يثق	confidence ثقة	confident واثق
criticise ينتقد	critic ناقد criticism نقد	critical انتقادى
describe يصف	description وصف	descriptive وصفى
explain يشرح	explanation شرح	explanatory تفسيرى
home-school يتعلم فى المنزل	home-schooling التعليم فى المنزل	home-school خاص بالتعليم فى المنزل
mean يعنى	meaning معنى	meaningful ذو معنى meaningless بلا معنى
practise يمارس/يتدرب	practice ممارسة/تدريب	practised ماهر
solve يحل	solution حل	solvable قابل للحل
succeed ينجح	success نجاح	successful ناجح



Pre-reading question:
- What was the first time you heard about STEM schools?

STEM subjects



Science, technology, engineering(1) and maths were taught in schools long before the invention of the internet. However, we now live in a time when these subjects(2) are more important than ever. This does not mean that music, history, languages and other subjects are not important. However, understanding(3) the so-called(4) STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future.

Many businesses do not have enough people with knowledge of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are keen to(5) give jobs to young people with these skills(6).

In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run(7) open days at which students can try building(8) car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise(9) maths.

Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects can be both interesting and fun for boys and girls of all abilities(10). Schools might not have the equipment to build engines, but many now use different experiments(11) and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text. This also helps with critical thinking skills(12) which students can use in other subjects.

It is said that 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need artists, musicians, language teachers and other experts(13), but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem solvers(14) and inventors of the future.

(1) هندسة
(2) مواد دراسية
(3) فهم
(4) ما يسمى بـ
(5) يميل إلى
(6) مهارات
(7) تدير
(8) صناعة
(9) يتدرب على
(10) قدرات
(11) تجارب
(12) مهارات التفكير الناقد
(13) خبراء
(14) حلّالو المشاكل

Post-reading question:
- In your opinion, what is the most interesting thing about STEM subjects?



Pre-listening question:
- What is your dream job? Why?

Girl 1 : I don't think that everyone needs to go to university. In fact I think it's a waste(1) of time for some people.

Girl 2 : That's true. If you know you want a job doing something practical(2), like being an electrician(3), or if you have great idea for a business, why not start immediately?

Girl 1 : Exactly.

Boy 1 : I know in some countries, children start school really early, but I think three is too young. I mean, at that age all children want to do is play!

Boy 2 : I'd say the opposite(4). The earlier you start the better. It will give you a good start(5) in life.

Boy 3 : They say that your school days are the best days of your life and I think that's probably(6) true. It's not just about learning, it's also about making friends and learning to help each other.

(1) مضيعة
(2) عملي
(3) شخص يعمل بالكهرباء
(4) النقيض
(5) بداية
(6) من المحتمل
(7) توقف
(8) عدا ذلك
(9) مميزات
(10) على سبيل المثال

Boy 4 : You're right. My parents both loved school and made really good friends there.

Girl 3 : If you're really ill, then it's great that there are ways of learning at home so that there isn't a break(7) in your education. But, otherwise(8), you should go to school.

Girl 4 : I don't agree with you. There are lots of advantages(9) with learning at home. There isn't any bullying, for instance(10).

Girl 5 : I don't think people understand how important education really is for young people. I mean, what kind of a future can you have without a good education these days?

Girl 6 : A lot of people have good lives without doing well at school. I'm completely against this idea that education is the only way to do well.

Post-listening question:
- Do you think a good education can help in finding a good job? Give a reason.

Workbook Reading Text

Introduction

People say that it is impossible to succeed[1] without failure[2] and even the most successful people make mistakes. As well as this, many people believe[3] in the importance of learning from your mistakes.

Advantages

Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. As a consequence[4], they appreciate[5] success more because it hasn't been easy for them. For instance, when football players lose a match, they are sad but they learn how to improve[6] and do better next time.

Disadvantages

On the other hand, success can make you feel positively[7] about what you are doing and it can give you a reason to keep trying. In addition, many people prefer to forget their mistakes so they can have good memories about the past.

Conclusion

In conclusion, although it is possible to have success without failure, from my point of view[8], it is better to fail[9] sometimes in order to appreciate success more.

(1) ينجح
(2) فشل
(3) يعتقد
(4) كنتيجة لذلك
(5) يقدِّر
(6) يحسن
(7) بصورة إيجابية
(8) من وجهة نظرى
(9) يفشل

Workbook Listening Text

Speaker 1 : I mean, it can't be good for your confidence[1], can it? It's got to get you down.

Speaker 2 : It was the best thing that ever happened to me. Everything had been a bit too easy for me before, so I wasn't ready for it. But then I had to make some real effort[2].

Speaker 3 : I hated it but, after feeling sorry for myself for a while[3], I could see my mistakes[4] and I knew what I had to do.

Speaker 4 : My friends were lovely, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible. In fact, I haven't tried it again because it upsets me too much.

Speaker 5 : When you've made as many mistakes as me, you learn to pick yourself up and carry on[5].

(1) ثقة
(2) جهد حقيقى
(3) فترة من الوقت
(4) أخطاء
(5) يستمر

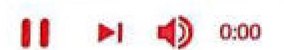
Video Script

Most young people go to school every day and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home instead(1) and their teachers are usually their parents.

We call this way of learning "home-schooling(2)". Home-schooling is useful for young people who live a long way from a school, and it's becoming more popular(3) today because students can easily use computers to learn wherever they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick(4) and cannot go to a school every day.

A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, rather than following a school timetable(5). But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't right for everyone. Home-schooled children might feel lonely(6) because it can be harder for them to make friends. They may not be able to do sports(7) with other young people either.

(1) بدلًا من
(2) التعليم بالبيت
(3) معروف
(4) مريض
(5) جدول
(6) يشعر بالوحدة
(7) يمارس الرياضة







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government .... that taxes must be increased to pay for public services.
   a) argued
   b) guessed
   c) told
   d) imagined

2. Ahmed Ezz .... that his last film had been very difficult to make.
   a) chose
   b) explained
   c) bullied
   d) lost

3. "Studying at home" means ....
   a) learn housing
   b) teach schooling
   c) educate schooling
   d) homeschooling

4. The young actor's last film was absolutely ....
   a) keen b) interested c) brilliant d) proud

5. My teacher is very .... as he doesn't like jokes.
   a) serious b) trivial c) easy d) difficult

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
change	يغير/يتغير	alter	remain	يظل
completely	تمامًا	totally	partially	جزئيًا
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly/ absolutely	indefinitely	بشكل غير محدد
especially	خصوصًا	particularly	generally	عمومًا
exactly	بالضبط	accurately	inexactly	بصورة غير دقيقة
exciting	مثير	thrilling	boring/ dull	ممل
explain	يشرح/يفسر	clarify	distract/ complicate	يشتت/يعقد
realise	يدرك	grasp	misunderstand	يسيء فهم
terrible	فظيع	horrible	beautiful	جميل

Notes on Vocabulary



success   successful

(be) a success = (be) successful   ناجح/موفق

- His first novel was a success.
- His first novel was successful.

argue for   argue against   argue with

argue for   يناضل من أجل/يؤيد

- My daughter always argues for women's rights.

argue against   يناضل ضد/يعارض

- He argued powerfully against animal experiments.

argue with   يجادل مع شخص فى الرأى

- Don't argue with me. Just do what I tell you.

miss lose

miss يفوته (شيء)/يفتقد (شخصًا/شيئًا)

- She missed her family badly when she travelled to London.
- I overslept and missed the train.

lose يفقد/يخسر

- I've lost the tickets for tonight's show.
- They played so badly they deserved to lose.

the more ... the more ...

the more .... the more .... كلما ... كلما ...

- The more qualities you have, the more jobs you will find.

bookshop library

bookshop مكتبة لبيع الكتب

- I'm going to the bookshop to buy books.

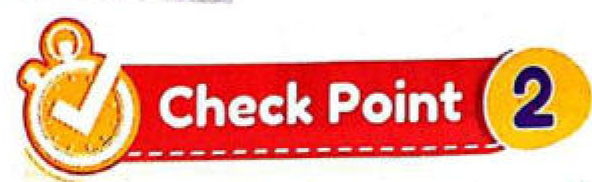
library مكتبة لغرض القراءة أو الاستعارة

- You can borrow this book from the library for only 2 days.

Language Notes

1. A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them.
   - لا تستخدم the قبل صفات التفضيل بعد 's الملكية.
2. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick and cannot go to a school every day.
   - كلمة schooling اسم لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
3. Not all schools have the equipment to do experiments.
   - كلمة equipment اسم لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
4. In addition, many people prefer to forget their mistakes so they can have good memories about the past.
   - لاحظ استخدام In addition بمعنى بالإضافة إلى ذلك، وتتبع بـ (فاعل+فعل).





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 At home, we are always arguing .... each other about which channel to watch.

a) for
b) against
c) with
d) from

2 I always argue .... the rights of teachers in Egypt.

a) at
b) with
c) for
d) from

3 If you want more information about this subject, you can borrow some books from the nearby ....

a) bookshop
b) library
c) store
d) embassy

4 I .... the start of the exam because my bus was late.

a) lost
b) missed
c) won
d) wasted

5 I .... my brother a lot. He works in Saudi Arabia.

a) lost
b) missed
c) knew
d) heard

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She always .... for a more positive role for women in the society.
a) bullies b) argues
c) encourages d) beats

2 I made up my mind. Nothing will make me .... my decision.
a) take b) explain
c) reach d) change

3 You don't need any special .... for this sport, just a pair of running shoes.
a) equipment b) information
c) knowledge d) description

4 Could you .... your reasons for choosing this job?
a) extract b) explain
c) inquire d) decline

5 My daughter is .... at writing exciting stories.
a) keen b) interested
c) brilliant d) proud

6 I told the police officer the .... of the thief who broke into my house.
a) prescription b) description
c) formation d) dimension

7 Although hockey is a fast and .... sport to watch, it seems violent.
a) clear b) famous
c) exciting d) known

8 Overpopulation is a/an .... problem that we face nowadays.
a) serious b) hard
c) easy d) agreement

9 After a long .... with her father, she was convinced not to take the job.
a) struggle b) fight
c) discussion d) agreement

10 I went to see the playwright's .... masterpiece but I was very disappointed by it.
a) so cold b) miscalled
c) manacled d) so-called

11 This training programme is seen as a/an .... between school and work.
a) bridge b) agreement c) argument d) match

12 I have complete .... in my students. They are brilliant.
a) confidence b) explanation c) bullying d) doubt

13 Reda thinks that money will .... all his problems.
a) bring b) solve c) give d) lose

14 If you can't attend the wedding, I could go ....
a) install b) instill c) instead d) instead of

15 Their son had been injured in a .... accident.
a) terrible b) terrific c) pleasant d) bright

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

16 We're all very .... on sports especially football as we support Al-Ahly team.
a) lucky b) keen c) critical d) confident

17 Old English was in many ways similar to Modern German. For ...., the nouns, adjectives, and verbs were highly inflected.
a) instant b) instead c) instance d) instable

18 What's the best way .... learn a language?
a) of b) at c) on d) to

19 Our book should be ready .... publication soon.
a) at b) in c) by d) for

20 Mariam felt very .... when she first arrived in New York. She had no friends.
a) alone b) loneliness c) lone d) lonely

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

21 Can you explain what the poem means? The antonym of the word "**explain**" is ....
a) grasp b) distract
c) remain d) change
e) complicate

22 According to the data, we can definitely say that pollution is increasing. The synonym of the word "**definitely**" is ....
a) certainly b) particularly
c) generally d) absolutely
e) accurately

23 I've got some very exciting news for you. The antonym of the word "**exciting**" is ....
a) boring b) dull
c) thrilling d) horrible
e) accurate



Past Simple زمن الماضى البسيط

مراجعة سريعة على الماضى البسيط.

Form	يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل. • He played football yesterday. • They took many photographs last week.
Usage	يستخدم للتعبير عن: ١- حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى. • We went to the cinema two days ago. ٢- عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث الآن. • She always visited her aunt when she was ill. = She used to visit her aunt when she was ill. ٣- ترتيب الأحداث وتتابعها فى الماضى. • I went to the club and met my friends.
Negation	**didn't + inf.** • They didn't take many photos last week.
Interrogative	• **(Wh- word) + did + subj. + inf.?** = What did he play yesterday? • **Did + subj. + inf.? (Yes, or no question)** = Did you finish your homework last night?
Key words	yesterday – last – ago – once – one day – in the past – in ancient times – in + year in the past

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Two days ago, I .... on a picnic with my family.
   a) go b) had been c) went d) was going
2. He usually .... his grandfather when he was on holiday.
   a) visits b) visit c) was visiting d) visited
3. My football team won the match and I .... a goal.
   a) scored b) score c) have scored d) was scoring
4. Our brave soldiers .... the 1973 war against Israel.
   a) win b) won c) have won d) were wining
5. How long .... he stay in Luxor last month?
   a) did b) do c) does d) done

Past Perfect زمن الماضى التام

Form	**Subject + had + P.P.** • I/He/They had attended the match before going to the party.
Negation	**Subject + hadn't + P.P.** • I/He/They hadn't studied the lessons well so the teacher was very angry.
Interrogative	**(Wh- word) + had + subject + P.P.?** • What had you done before sleeping? **Had + subject + P.P.?** • Had they watched the film by last night?
Passive	**Object + (had) + been + P.P.** • The police had arrested the criminal. (Active) • The criminal had been arrested. (Passive)

Usage
الاستخدام

1. **We use the past perfect to say that an action was completed by an exact past time reference.**
١- نستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل بحلول وقت محدد فى الماضى.

▸ By last Monday, the painter had painted my whole flat.

2. **We use the past perfect to say that an action was completed before another action.**
٢- نستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل قبل فعل آخر.

▸ I found the wallet and the money after I had looked for them for a long time.

3. ٣- إذا وقع حدثان فى الماضى فإن الحدث الذى تم أولًا يكون زمنه ماضيًا تامًا والحدث الذى تم ثانيًا يكون زمنه ماضيًا بسيطًا.

▸ I sold the house which I had bought last year.



Key Words الكلمات الدالة



- After he had finished his homework, he slept.

- عند عدم وجود فارق زمنى بين الحدثين يأتى بعد after ماضٍ بسيط.

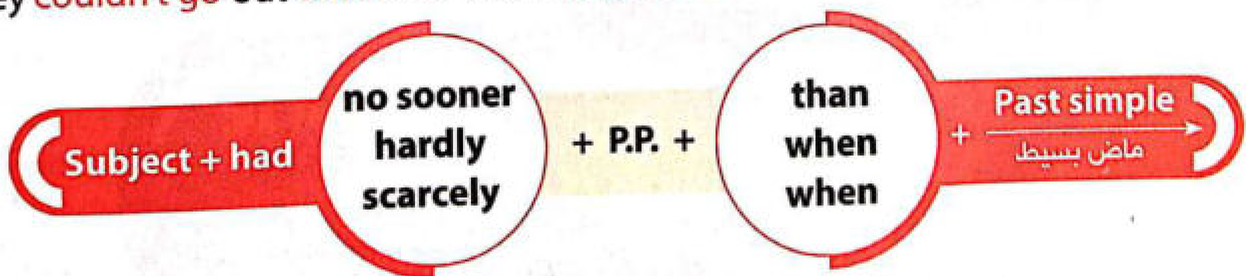
- After they finished their talk, they immediately went their homes.
  = As soon as my father called me, I answered him at once.



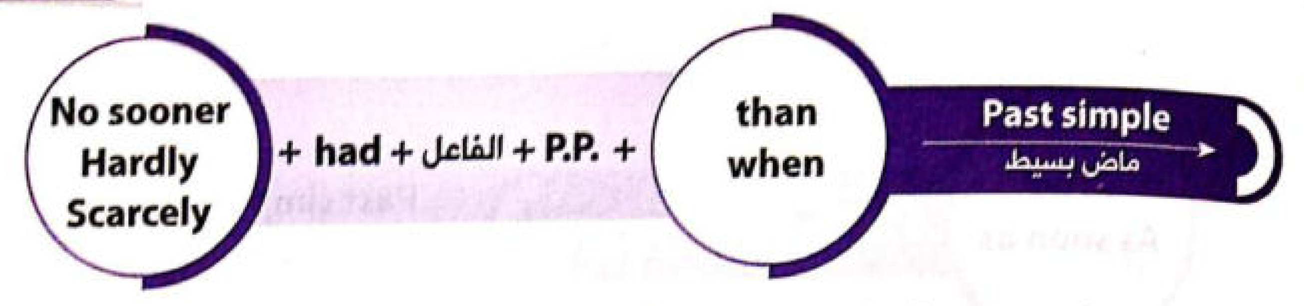
- Before we watched TV, we had done our homework.
- He had finished his work by the time he helped his brother.



- We didn't watch TV until we had done our homework.
- The house wasn't cleaned until I had done it myself.
- Hany refused to come until I had phoned him.
- They couldn't go out until their father had arrived.



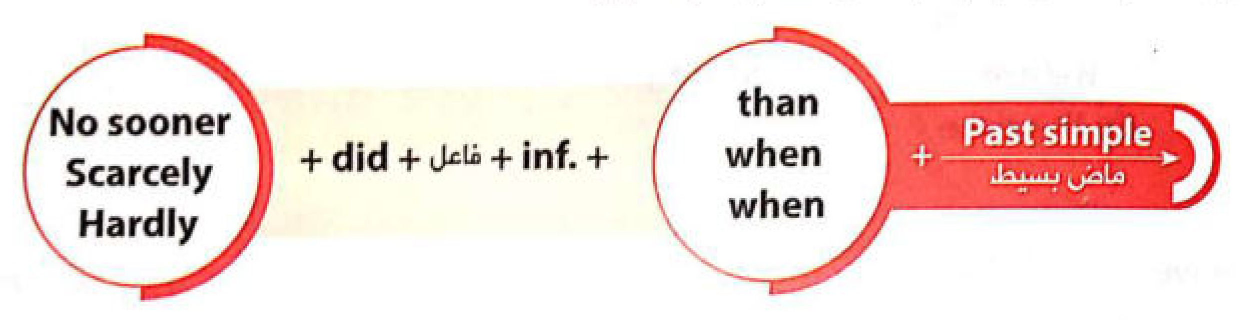
- He had no sooner completed his studies than he travelled abroad.
- I had hardly/scarcely bought my needs when I went home.



- No sooner had Mido come home than he began to do his homework.
- Hardly/Scarcely had he watched TV when he went to bed.



من الممكن استخدام الماضى البسيط بدلًا من الماضى التام كما يلى:



- No sooner did I see the accident than I called the police.

It was only when + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

It was not until + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

- After he had played the game, he went home.
  - It was only when he had played the game that he went home.
  - It was not until he had played the game that he went home.

Note the following



past perfect , past simple
past simple , past simple
past simple , past perfect

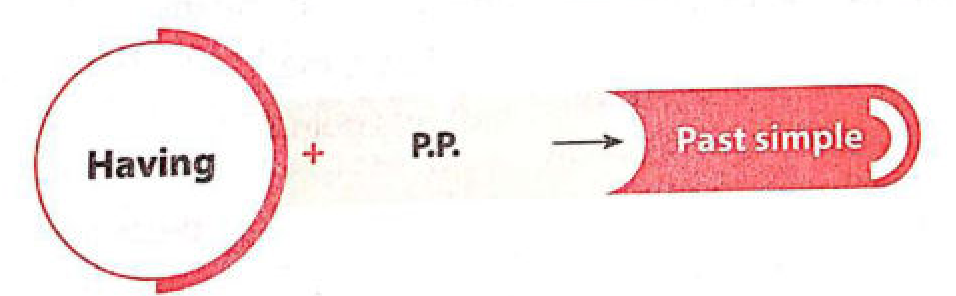
❶ يستخدم الماضى التام قبل أو بعد when وذلك حسب ترتيب الأحداث.

- When he arrived, we had finished our dinner.
  = We had finished our dinner before he arrived.
- When we had finished our dinner, he arrived.
  = He arrived after we had finished our dinner.
- When I had reached the station, the train left. I caught it
- When I reached the station, the train had left. I missed it.

❷ نستخدم (V-ing) بعد (After) أو (Before) إذا لم يأتِ بعدهما فاعل.

- After doing the housework, Menna watched TV.
- Yasser completed his studies before joining the army.

❸ نستخدم (Having) بدون فاعل بدلًا من (After) لكن يأتى بعدها التصريف الثالث.



- Having done my homework, I watched TV.

❹ يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط فقط مع أدوات الربط الزمنية خاصة إذا كان ترتيب الحدثين منطقيًا أو الفارق الزمنى بينهما بسيطًا.

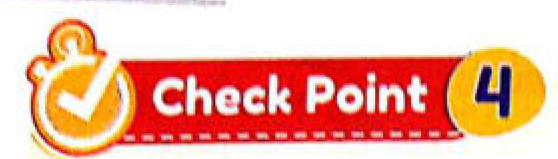
- After it got dark, we came back inside.
- He arrived before we sat down to eat.

❺ إذا جاء فى الجملة ثلاثة أحداث (أفعال)، فلا بد أن يوضع الحدث الأقدم فى زمن الماضى التام.

- When I returned home, I found out that someone had stolen my money.

❻ كلمة on من الممكن استخدامها بدلًا من when كالتالى:

- When + past simple = On + (v-ing)
- When I met my friend, I knew what had happened.
  = On meeting my friend, I knew what had happened.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Before .... the High Dam, some temples had been moved to safer places.
   a) had built
   b) building
   c) built
   d) build
2. I .... the exam until I had read it carefully.
   a) don't answer
   b) didn't answer
   c) hadn't answered
   d) won't answer
3. The bus .... when I arrived at the station. I didn't catch it.
   a) left
   b) was left
   c) had left
   d) has left
4. As soon as we .... the Nile Police, we started our journey.
   a) was telling
   b) tell
   c) had told
   d) were telling
5. After Ali had left school, he .... to work in a company.
   a) goes
   b) had gone
   c) went
   d) was going

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Long time ago, it .... difficult to use social networking sites.
a) is b) has been c) was d) had been

2 They didn't come to the cinema with us because they .... already seen the film.
a) have b) were c) had d) are

3 .... finished my work, I began to watch TV.
a) After b) Before c) During d) Having

4 When he went to the party, his friend ...., so he didn't meet him.
a) has left b) had left c) was leaving d) leaves

5 I didn't watch the movie .... I had already read the story of the film.
a) before b) because c) by the time d) unless

6 By the age of ten, Yomna .... how to use the internet.
a) was learning b) had learnt c) had been learnt d) has learnt

7 .... had he left home than he heard an explosion.
a) Hardly b) No sooner c) Before d) After

8 As soon as I met him, I knew I .... him somewhere before.
a) has seen b) have seen c) had seen d) was seeing

9 They said that the driver's speed .... the accident.
a) had been caused b) was caused
c) had caused d) has caused

10 .... meeting my brother, I asked him to come with me to the dentist's.
a) On b) When c) As soon as d) During

11 When I lived in London, I .... through the park every day.
a) was walking b) had walked c) walked d) was walked

12 Amany was really hungry because she .... all day.
a) hasn't eaten b) hadn't eaten c) doesn't eat d) wasn't eating

13 When she saw the fire coming out of the factory, she ....
a) was screaming b) had screamed c) screamed d) will scream

14 My daily shopping .... till I had finished the housework.
a) didn't do b) doesn't do c) hadn't done d) wasn't done

15 As soon as she .... the book, she wanted to see the film.
a) was finishing b) had finished c) has finished d) finishes

16 Having .... the shopping, mother started to prepare lunch.
a) do b) she did c) done d) she had done

17 By the time Nada arrived, we .... lunch, so there was nothing for her to eat.
a) had had b) were having c) have had d) had

18 She was late because she .... to set her alarm clock.
a) had forgotten b) has forgotten c) was forgetting d) forget

19 The football season .... a month ago.
a) began b) was beginning c) had begun d) was begun

20 They .... many hours before we arrived.
a) had left b) have left c) are leaving d) were leaving

21 He admitted that he .... his brother's watch.
a) was breaking b) would break c) has d) had broken

22 The children collected the fruit that .... from the tree.
a) had fallen b) will fall c) falls d) have fallen

23 The house was dirty. We .... it for weeks.
a) haven't cleaned b) hadn't cleaned
c) weren't cleaning d) don't clean

24 The house was quiet when I got home. Everyone .... to bed.
a) had gone b) has gone c) had been d) was going

25 I had scarcely seen my daughter .... I asked her to tell me all about the exam.
a) than b) that c) when d) where

26 It was only .... I had found my book that I felt relaxed.
a) while b) until c) before d) when

27 When I visited my mother, she .... me to have lunch with her.
a) had invited b) invited c) was inviting d) has invited

28 Hardly .... home, I took off my clothes and slept.
a) I had arrived b) have I arrived c) I arrived d) did I arrive

29 Magda denied taking the remote control .... I threatened her.
a) until b) after c) by the time d) when

30 .... washing my car, I took my family out for a drive.
a) While b) By the time c) As d) After

2 Fill in the space:

1 Sir Magdi Yacoub is a world-famous surgeon. He ....(a).............. born in November 1935. His father was a general surgeon. He ....(b).............. spend his childhood in one place because his father had to work in different places. ....(c).............. his aunt died of a heart problem, he decided to be a heart surgeon. He studied medicine at Cairo University and then he ....(d).............. to Europe and America to get more medical experience.

2 Routine is usually seen as a negative term nowadays. Now, we live in what is fast becoming a 24-hour society ....(a).............. everything is open all hours. You can buy your groceries at midnight, book your holiday ....(b).............. the internet at 3 a.m., and do business online at the dawn. But you must know that a round-the-clock lifestyle is not ....(c).............. nature intended. You ....(d).............. to know the right time to eat, sleep, work and play.

3 I'd like to tell you something happened to me. Yesterday, while we were ....(a).............. driven to the airport, the road was so dangerous because it was raining heavily. As a result, we ....(b).............. a serious accident when our car turned over. All of us ....(c).............. injured but luckily no one died. We were taken to hospital ....(d).............. the ambulance which came immediately and now we all are well.

4 In the early times all the ancient people used to write on pieces of clay or stones. So, writings couldn't ....(a).............. carried from place to another. The ancient Egyptians were the first ....(b).............. write on papyrus, a plant which was widely cultivated in Lower Egypt. The Romans also wrote on the papyrus which ....(c).............. imported from Egypt. The first people who manufactured paper were the Chinese who were attacked ....(d).............. the Arabs who copied that industry from them.

5 We all must believe that a good family is the one that has a wise father and mother. Parents are those ....(a).............. bring up their children on good morals to be good citizens in the future. Parents ....(b).............. considered the cornerstone of the family as they are the role model for their children. So, they must ....(c).............. aware and careful before doing anything as ....(d).............. children always imitate them.

Life Skills

Agreeing to opinions	Disagreeing to opinions
• I agree with you. • I couldn't agree more. • That is what I think. • You are completely right.	- I don't agree with you because .... - I disagree with you. I think .... - I don't think you are right. In my opinion, ...



STEM Subjects

We know that science, technology, engineering and mathematics are the subjects of what we call "STEM". They are the foundations of the industrial and corporate world.

Through these subjects, students gain technical skills that they will need for a lifelong career. They also can develop their abilities in real-world situations. STEM is very important because it influences every part of our lives. Science is everywhere in the world around us. Technology is expanding into every aspect of our lives. Engineering is the basic designs of roads and bridges. Mathematics is in every occupation, every activity we do in our lives.

How can STEM help students? We can say that STEM teaching and learning goes beyond the mere transfer of knowledge. It engages students and equips them with critical thinking, problem solving, creative and collaborative skills. It helps them to establish a link between the school, workplace, community and the global economy.

Speaking

Agreeing and disagreeing about experiences of education:

Imagine your friend and you are discussing experiences of education.



You can visit the website https://www.smartsparrow.com/2016/03/04/what-makes-a-learning-experience-great/to get more information about this subject.

Prepare answers for the following questions:

1. Do you think that a good education always brings success in a student's later life? Why?
2. How do you think new technology has made it easier to learn at home?

Practice

- Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Arwa are talking about education.

Mona : I think education is something necessary in the life of a person.

Arwa : I agree with you. I think a good education always brings success in a student's later life.

Mona : ....

Arwa : Do you think modern technology helps education to be more effective?

Mona : ....?

Arwa : .... I think it has a great role to make it easier.



General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The king married his son to a woman who comes from a .... family. They had a lot of money.
a) cruel b) wealthy c) comfortable d) huge

2 My employer was a good man. He'd never .... anyone.
a) served b) helped c) hurt d) hoped

3 Despite all the warnings, many people .... to smoke.
a) stop b) stay c) leave d) continue

4 Vitamins can give you more .... if you're always feeling tired.
a) waste b) energy c) fire d) strength

5 A .... school is a school where students live as well as study.
a) boarding b) brooding c) breeding d) burdening

6 The statements should be arranged according to their importance. The word "**importance**" has the same meaning as ....
a) argument b) choice c) significance d) explaining

7 My first book sold 100.000 copies. This means that it is ....
a) succeed b) success c) a success d) a successful

8 My father argued a lot .... his friend about the club of century.
a) for b) about c) against d) with

9 Salma .... use to stay up late at night but now she does.
a) doesn't b) isn't c) wasn't d) didn't

10 They travelled to the USA .... 1995.
a) for b) in c) since d) by

11 Having graduated, he .... abroad.
a) travelled b) had travelled c) has travelled d) travels

12 He had no sooner bought a car .... he sold it again.
a) when b) that c) than d) then

13 When did you discover that the money ....?
a) had disappeared b) had been disappeared
c) was disappeared d) was disappearing

14 She wore the shoes she .... the previous day.
a) was buying b) 'd bought c) has bought d) 'd buy

15 They .... me at yesterday's meeting as we hadn't met for long.
a) weren't recognising b) haven't recognised
c) didn't recognise d) don't recognise

16 My sister .... in Canada for two years before she moved on to London.
a) has lived b) was living c) is living d) had lived

2 Fill in the space:

Mohammed Salah is a famous Egyptian player. He ....(a).............. well-known as a player as well as a kind man. He does a lot of good things to help the poor, so many people love him all over Egypt and also he ....(b).............. respected all over the world. ....(c).............. he played well, his team could win matches and he scored many goals. He is able ....(d).............. make people happy.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The increasing number of working mothers led to problems like that of "Latchkey" children. A latch is a type of door fastening, or lock, which used to be very common. "Latchkey" children wore keys around their necks to unlock the house when they returned from school, since neither of their parents was at home.

It still happens today, and the old word is still used to mean children whose parents both work. Obviously, this has all kinds of wages of both parents. The children, however, may feel lonely or frightened as a result, and not want to come home to an empty house.

They may get into trouble in the streets or they may get into dangerous situations at home, when playing with matches, or while preparing something to eat. But the problem goes beyond that of school children. Some mothers go back to work three months after having babies and leave them all day in the care of relations or paid child-minders. Some firms have nurseries, which will look after the children of their staff. These can be very expensive. Some mothers spend most of their wages on paying other people, so that all their work seems pointless.

When parents return home, they are too tired to play with their children. Children feel unloved parental care. Members of the family eat at different times and family entertainment depends on TV. The word "latchkey" may be an old one, but the "latchkey" child is still very much a problem today, isn't it?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 "Latchkey" children ....
a) are sometimes frightened to go home
b) always stay at school after the others have gone home
c) stay at home and don't go to school
d) never go home and stay at school

2 Even when the mother and father both work, there still seems to be no extra money because ....
a) the parents spend it on their entertainment
b) nurseries and child-minders cost a lot
c) the mother does not earn much
d) children spend a lot of money

3. Child-minders ....
   a) are mothers who do not work
   b) always work in nurseries
   c) look after children whose parents both work
   d) are employed to play with the children

4. When both parents work, parental care ....
   a) is usually bad
   b) is not affected
   c) is usually better
   d) is always the same

5. The opposite of the word "**common**" is ....
   a) known   b) famous   c) rare   d) spread

B) Answer the following questions:

6. What kinds of trouble can latchkey children get into?
7. How do you think we can solve this problem?
8. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Technology is a double-edged weapon as it's the ladder by which humanity promotes and develops but it can also be a tool for destruction.
2. Happiness and peace of mind depend on the power of controlling one's thoughts and directing them. One has to avoid what is painful.
3. Everyone's personality is as different and unique as everyone's fingerprints. We can usually see people's personality in how they behave with other people.

B) Translate into English:

١- تحتفل مصر كل عام باليوم العالمي للطفل في نوفمبر، حيث يتم إعطاء الجوائز للأطفال الذين ساهموا بنجاح في الأنشطة المختلفة.

٢- في معظم الدول عادة ما يصاب الرجال بأمراض القلب أكثر من النساء، ويقول الأطباء إن مرض القلب مرتبط بضغوط الحياة اليومية ونظام المعيشة ونوع الأكل.

٣- لقد قامت الحكومة بإعداد خطة طموحة للنهوض بالتعليم ورفع مستوى المعلم وكذلك جذب الطلاب للحضور إلى المدرسة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

double-edged weapon	سلاح ذو حدين	life pressures	ضغوط الحياة
motivate	يدفع/يحث	upgrade	ينهض بـ
fingerprints	البصمات	unique	فريد من نوعه

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. The pros and cons of home-schooling.
2. A review of a short story you read.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The war .... a great number of children who lost their families.
   a) orphaned b) organised
   c) recognised d) reformed
2. The boy tried to .... his older brother in all sorts of ways to be like him.
   a) measure b) refer
   c) copy d) avoid
3. Many parents .... in favour of expanding the arts programme.
   a) arranged b) rejected
   c) performed d) argued
4. The manager asked for .... advice to help them promote their goods.
   a) exert b) expert
   c) exist d) extract
5. Students are under a great deal of pressure near the .... of the semester.
   a) conclusion b) confusion
   c) directions d) attention
6. We .... her gentle and kind actions at first, but soon we could see that she had a cruel heart.
   a) believed b) denied
   c) suspected d) affected
7. Many people lost their life's savings due to these .... conditions.
   a) gentle b) marvel
   c) kind d) cruel
8. He hadn't grown up on the island and was still considered a .... by many people.
   a) stranger b) familiar
   c) popular d) proper
9. The .... sunshine blinded us for a moment.
   a) brilliant b) dull
   c) dark d) hidden
10. Scientists have often observed this phenomenon, but they cannot .... it.
    a) retrain b) explain
    c) refer d) prepare

11 I am going to the shops to get .... some tennis shoes.

a) yourselves
b) myself
c) herself
d) themselves

12 Everyone respects you, ...?

a) don't they
b) do they
c) does he
d) doesn't he

13 Our plane leaves from .... Cairo airport at six o'clock.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

14 It's no good .... about the new system. You will get used to it.

a) complain
b) complained
c) to complain
d) complaining

15 It's such nice weather – I'd prefer .... in the garden rather than watch TV.

a) to sitting
b) sitting
c) sit
d) to sit

16 She didn't come on time .... she was held up in a traffic jam.

a) so
b) on account of
c) because
d) although

17 Hany Hussein is a new star. He has a beautiful singing voice .... a talent for dancing and acting.

a) as long as
b) as well as
c) soon
d) so that

18 They ate all the food .... being tasteless.

a) because of
b) in spite of
c) because
d) although

19 My trousers .... very old. I must buy a new pair.

a) is
b) are
c) has been
d) was

20 Besides .... in a factory, he works as a taxi driver in the evening.

a) working
b) works
c) worked
d) he is working

Test 3 Based on Unit 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should check all your electrical .... regularly.
   a) equipment b) requirements
   c) settlements d) statements
2. He needs to have more practice to become a/an .... in medicine.
   a) trader b) user c) practical d) expert
3. This disease mostly affects women, ... women who are over 50.
   a) especially b) luckily c) accordingly d) partially
4. Football is one of the most popular .... sport in the world.
   a) team b) individual c) group d) collective
5. I think poetry is very effective at expressing .... and ideas.
   a) feelings b) conclusions c) mistakes d) failings
6. If she felt he was right, she would agree .... him.
   a) for b) at c) to d) with
7. No sooner .... the noise than we rushed to the spot.
   a) we did hear b) had we heard
   c) we had heard d) we heard
8. We weren't hungry because we ....
   a) were already eating b) have already eaten
   c) had already eaten d) already eaten
9. My aunt bought me a lovely gift after .... the summer holiday with us.
   a) have spent b) spent
   c) spending d) had spent
10. Mr Maher .... in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up.
    a) has worked b) worked
    c) can work d) works
11. A lot of crimes .... in this neighbourhood last month.
    a) are committed b) were committed
    c) were committing d) committed
12. My sister's teeth .... by the dentist at the moment.
    a) are being cleaned b) are cleaned
    c) were cleaned d) will be cleaned

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

13 He comes from a wealthy family. The antonym of the word "**wealthy**" is ....

a) conventional b) giant c) rich
d) poor e) destitute

14 Your room is huge compared to mine. The synonym of the word "**huge**" is ....

a) enormous b) tiny c) minor
d) wicked e) giant

15 **Fill in the space:**

It often appears that we have more to gain by speaking than by listening. One big advantage of speaking is that it ....(a).............. you a chance to control others' thoughts and actions. Whatever your goal ....(b).............., the key to success seems to be the ability to speak well. It is ....(c).............. that when we speak well, we can get what we want ....(d).............. much pain.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People have been writing about strange worlds and travelling to space for thousands of years. Parts of the famous Arabic story *One Thousand and One Nights* might be described as a kind of science fiction. But science reality started to influence how we all lived in the nineteenth century. This was a time when many exciting new things were invented: steam trains, the telephone, electricity, photographs and much more. The writer Jules Verne looked at nineteenth century technology and imagined how it could be improved to do amazing things. He wrote about people travelling to the centre of the earth, to the moon or deep under the sea. Many people consider Verne to be the first true science fiction writer. In 1895, the writer HG Wells saw technology differently. He wrote about the possible dangers of technology. His book includes *The Time Machine*, in which the hero travels into a dangerous and unpleasant future. Other writers also thought that technology could be bad. Aldous Huxley's Brave New World is about a future in which people are produced in factories. But not all science fiction writers saw technology as bad. Authors such as Isaac Asimov often wrote about a future in which science can solve our problems.

Science fiction has evolved with technology. In the 1960s, space was being explored for the first time. This gave science fiction writers ideas for what explorers might find in space. strange worlds and unexplained mysteries, such as in the novels of Arthur C. Clarke. More recently, many science fiction stories have been about robots. Could they become more intelligent than people? Should we use them or could they start to take over and rule the world? In science fiction, anything is possible.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 In what way was Isaac Asimov different to many science fiction writers?
- a) He was optimistic about science.
- b) He was pessimistic about science.
- c) He only wrote about space.
- d) He only wrote about robots.

17 In conclusion, the text says that in science fiction, ...
- a) technology is good
- b) technology is bad
- c) anything might happen
- d) there are never any problems

18 What does the underlined word "This" refer to?
- a) Changes in science fiction.
- b) Changes in technology.
- c) The new year.
- d) Space exploration.

19 What does the phrasal verb "take over" mean?
- a) To become people.
- b) To steal things.
- c) To get control of.
- d) To hide.

20 Through his writing, the writer Isaac Asimov imagined that science can .... our problems.
- a) put solutions to
- b) put hinders to
- c) prevent
- d) enlarge

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How did HG Wells describe technology in his book *The Time Machine*?

22 Why has science fiction changed over time?

23 Do you think that science fiction will always be popular? Why/Why not?

24 Translate into English:

- إن ارتفاع معدل ارتكاب الجرائم بين الشباب يعتبر من أخطر المشكلات التى تواجه الدولة والتى يجب علينا جميعـًا أن نتصدى لها بكل حزم حتى نستطيع أن نحيا فى مجتمع آمن.

25 Translate into Arabic:

A job should not just be a source of money. It should also be a path for self-development. A very important factor is to find a job in a field you enjoy.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Has technology improved our world and our lives?





Revision (3)
Units 7, 8 & 9





Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

alarm clock (n)	منبه
apps (n)	تطبيقات
at least (adv)	على الأقل
blog (n)	مدونة
button (n)	زر
click (v) – ed	ينقر على
correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
damage (v) – d – (n)	يدمر/ يتلف/تلف
decide (v) – d	يقرر
driverless (adj)	بدون قائد
engine (n)	محرك/موتور
expert (n)	خبير
extra (adj)	إضافي
familiar (adj)	مألوف/معتاد
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة
finally (adv)	في النهاية
forms (n)	أشكال/أنماط
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
frighten (v) – ed	يخيف
hands (n)	عقارب الساعة
immediately (adv)	في الحال/فورًا
loud (adj)	مرتفع الصوت
pollution (n)	تلوث
popular (adj)	محبوب/شعبي
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
recognise (v) – d	يتعرف على
relaxed (adj)	مسترخٍ
respond (v) – ed	يرد/يجيب
result (n)	نتيجة
special (adj)	خاص
test (v) – ed	يختبر
traffic (n)	المرور
understand (v)	يفهم
vehicle (n)	مركبة
warn (v) – ed	يحذر

Vocabulary on Listening

believe (v)	يعتقد/يؤمن	heat (v) – ed	يسخن
caller (n)	متصل	kill (v) – ed	يقتل
carefully (adv)	بعناية	pick up (v)	يلتقط
fall (v)	يسقط	research (n)	بحث
freeze (v)	يجمد	right (adv)	على صواب
guest (n)	ضيف	rule (n)	قاعدة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

be a lot easier to do	يصبح أكثر سهولة لكى	learn how to	يتعلم كيف
be able to	قادر على	make a loud noise	يحدث ضوضاء عالية
be free to text	يمكنه إرسال رسائل نصية	make it faster to	يسرع من
be fun to use	من الممتع استخدامه	pay for	يدفع ثمنًا لـ
born in	وُلد فى	put ... inside	يضع ... بداخل
bring in	يجلب	respond to	يجيب عن
cause less pollution	يحدث تلوثًا أقل	slow down	يبطئ
choose the best way	يختار أفضل طريقة	take a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
decide not to	يقرر ألا	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
do all the work for	يقوم بكل العمل من أجل	talk on phones	يتحدث فى الهاتف
find out how	يعرف كيف	take us some time to	يستغرق منا بعض الوقت لكى
forms of	أشكال لـ	travel around	يسافر حول
idea of	فكرة أن	wait for	ينتظر
in front of	أمام	worried by the idea of	قلق من فكرة أن

Reading Text (1)

dalia'sblog.hello.org

In today's lesson, my teacher brought in different forms of technology from the past. He said, "Find out how these things work, and then give me your feedback."

First, my group were given an old alarm clock. Clocks usually have two or three hands, but this one had an extra red hand. "If you use it correctly, it will make a loud noise," the teacher said. "You must move the red hand to the time that you want to wake up." It took us some time to understand how to move it, but finally the alarm worked. It was very loud. If I heard that noise in the morning, I would wake up immediately!

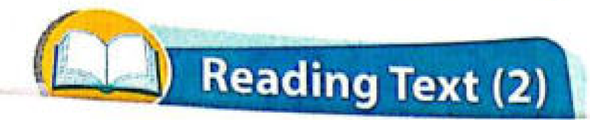
Next, we were asked to find our school on an old map of the city. "You should look for the name of our street in the list on the back of the map," the teacher said. "If you find square G5 on the map, you can see where our school is."

After that, my group were given an old camera and a film. "You must put the film inside the camera," my teacher said. That was really difficult. If we did it wrong, it would damage the film. Fortunately, Hana in my group had helped her father use an old camera and so she knew what to do. Then we clicked the button on the camera lots of times and asked the teacher if we could see the results. "If you take the camera to a special shop, they will show you the photos," said the teacher. "But you must pay for that, and you must wait for some time until you can see them." We decided not to do this!

In my opinion, some old technology is fun to use, but I'm pleased we have apps on our phones today. I think that most things are a lot easier to do these days!

Dalia





Driverless cars

People born in ten years from now will probably never learn how to drive. Why? Because our cars won't need drivers and computers will do all the work for us. There are already driverless cars in many places, but at the moment, they are only being tested. The computers they use must be able to recognise other vehicles, respond to people and things in the road, and know when the car must slow down or stop.

For some people, the idea of a car without a driver is a frightening thought. However, experts say that 90% of accidents are because of mistakes made by people. Often it is because people are talking on their phones or feeling tired. With driverless cars, people are free to text, or even sleep, without danger. The computers in driverless cars should also make it faster to travel around cities because they will choose the best way. They will also cause less pollution because there will be less traffic. But how safe are these cars? Some people say that they do not work well in bad weather. So far, there have been at least 12 accidents with driverless cars in America (although 11 of these were caused by other cars). So, it might take a long time for people to feel relaxed enough to read a book while they travel.

In the near future, driverless cars will probably become as familiar as the cars of today. In the past, people were also very worried by the idea of cars with engines. In the nineteenth century in England, when cars became popular in England, the law said that a man had to walk in front of them with a red flag to warn people. The law didn't change until 1896.



Presenter : Hello, welcome to Stay Healthy, our weekly look at health and hygiene. In today's programme, we're taking calls from students. They have questions about hygiene in the house for our guest expert. This week we're pleased to have with us Dr Amal El-Aziz from the Cairo University Hospital. So, our first caller is Lamia from Tanta. Hello, Lamia.

Lamia : Hello, doctor. Sometimes when I eat, my food falls on the ground. But my friends say there is a five second rule: "the food will be OK to eat if you pick it up before five seconds". Is that true?

Dr Amal : I'd say the opposite, Lamia. You mustn't eat any food if it has fallen on the ground. Bacteria will already be on it. So I'd advise you to put that piece of food in the bin immediately.

Presenter : OK, now our next callers are Hamid and Leila from Hurghada. They're brother and sister.

Hamid : Hi, I'm Hamid. I always tell my sister that she doesn't wash her hands very well, but she doesn't believe me.

Leila : Yes, because he says I have to wash my hands really carefully. But if I use soap, it will kill the bacteria on my hands, won't it? So soap and water should be enough.

Dr Amal : OK, so there are two points here. Firstly, it's very easy to wash your hands, but research shows that 95% of people do not wash their hands correctly. Secondly, soap doesn't kill bacteria. The reason we have soap is that it helps to take the bacteria from your hands. So your brother is right, Leila. Remember, you should always wash your hands very carefully with soap and a lot of water.

Presenter : Now we have Maya from Cairo.

Maya : Hello. My mother says I must always clean the table before we eat. But if the table looks clean, it won't have bacteria on it, so I don't understand why. Can the doctor tell me?

Dr Amal : Your mother is right, Maya. You can't see bacteria, so you should clean your table even if it looks clean.

Presenter : Finally here's Omar from Alexandria.

Omar : Hello doctor, is it true that if you freeze food, it kills the bacteria on it?

Dr Amal : I don't think so, Omar. Bacteria do not always die when you freeze things. When you cook frozen food, you must always heat it to about 75ºC or more. Then you know the bacteria have gone.

Presenter : Thank you, that's all we have time for, but I think we have all learned a lot about how to stay healthy today.

Workbook Exercises

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 Omar has a new .... on his smartphone to understand foreign languages.
a) chat b) app c) internet d) click

2 The students answered all the questions in the .... and then checked their scores.
a) feedback b) invention c) quiz d) computer

3 My dad uses .... if he doesn't know which road to take.
a) vehicle b) app c) translation d) GPS

4 In the future, we will have the .... to travel to space for our holidays.
a) technology b) invention c) internet d) robot

5 Kamal .... his homework when he went to the cinema.
a) had finished b) finished c) was finishing d) would finish

6 You .... make a loud noise in the library. We will get into trouble.
a) can b) should c) mustn't d) must

7 If Magda .... a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners.
a) do b) will do c) did d) would do

8 What would you do if your friend .... an accident?
a) have b) would have c) has d) had

9 When the alarm rings, we .... the building.
a) would leave b) left c) leaving d) leave

10 I have a bad cold, so it is difficult for me to ....
a) breathe b) research c) wash d) respond

11 We should always put our plastic rubbish in a separate ....
a) wrap b) bin c) dust d) floor

12 A new school .... in our village last year.
a) built b) was built
c) was building d) had been built

13 Fortunately, the police could .... the mystery and catch the criminal.
a) solve b) make c) find d) do

14 It's very easy to .... around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient.
a) get b) find c) be d) say

15 There was an emergency so the school was ....
a) serviced b) navigated c) evacuated d) injured

16 The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about ....
a) danger b) first aid
c) hygiene d) emergency services

2 **Complete the text with the past simple or past perfect form of the verbs in brackets:**

Yesterday, Sayed and Waleed ....(1).............. (go) to school by bus, but the bus ....(2).............. (break) down. When they finally ....(3).............. (arrive) at school, the lessons ....(4).............. (start). They ....(5).............. (be) tired because they ....(6).............. (walk) more than 5 kilometres. Sayed ....(7).............. (ask) the teacher for some extra help after the other students ....(8).............. (go) to lunch.

3 **Complete the sentences with the past simple (active or passive) form of the verbs in brackets:**

1. *Treasure Island* .... (write) by Robert Louis Stevenson.
2. Hazem and Dalida .... (teach) at home until they were 11 years old.
3. Some students .... (ask) to give a presentation about the book they had read.
4. Mariam .... (send) to the library to collect some books by the teacher.
5. I .... (tell) my little son to be careful on crossing the road.
6. Salma was sad because she .... (not choose) for the volleyball team.
7. The emergency services .... (call) when a teacher felt ill.
8. We .... (take) Ayman to hospital because he hurt his arm.

4 **A) Translate into Arabic:**

GPS, which stands for Global Positioning System, is a radio navigation system. This system helps land, sea and airline users determine their exact location.

B) Translate into English:

- يلعب التعليم دورًا فعالاً فى بناء المواطن القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر؛ لذا يعد استثمارًا بشريًا فى جميع المجالات.

5 **Read the text and answer the questions:**

Getting good quality information from the internet

How often do you use the internet for school projects and to help with your homework? Some students don't think about where information comes from online. This can be risky because there is a lot of information on the internet which is false. It is important to remember to use websites that you can trust. You should also think about when the information on the website was written. When you are researching history, the information can be old but it can still be accurate. However, if you are looking for something about science and technology or the latest news, you should check the date on the website. It is important to look for the most recent information. Paying attention to the website address is also helpful. If the site is from a government or somewhere like a university, the address finishes gov. or .edu. You can trust these sites. Finally, good websites usually include links to other sites on similar topics. This means you can check the information in more than one place. The most important thing to remember is to think critically. Don't believe everything you read, don't stop at the first website you find and always ask questions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the text, a lot of information on the internet is ....
a) always trusted
b) sometimes trusted
c) never trusted
d) totally trusted

2 It's very important to check the date of writing the information because ....
a) it tells you about the accuracy of the information
b) it tells you about the quality of the author
c) it tells you about the security of the website
d) it helps you avoid internet scams

3 Trusted websites do not ....
a) provide links to related sites
b) include the symbol of an organisation
c) ask you to provide personal information
d) provide information from different sources

4 Why are links to other sites helpful?
a) You can find more information.
b) Other sites are usually better.
c) Comparing the information is a good way to check.
d) Both a and c.

5 A lot of information on the internet can be .... So you shouldn't trust it easily.
a) legal
b) important
c) meaningful
d) fake

B) Answer the following questions:

6 Why is it important to check the information you find on the internet?
7 How do you think we can have less false information on the internet?
8 How do you think students in the future will find information for school projects?

6 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

1. The children was allowed to play basketball at lunchtime.
2. You don't look well. I think you shouldn't go to the doctor.
3. What will you do if you got a bad grade in the test?
4. You mustn't always respect the school rules.
5. *Jane Eyre* was wrote by Charlotte Brontë in 1847.
6. If my mum will give me some money, I will come to the cinema on Saturday.
7. Nawal had done CPR before the ambulance was arriving.
8. I went to university in the US if I had enough money.

7 Choose one of the topics. Write an essay of about 150 words. Include reasons for your ideas and opinions:

1. "New technology has made it easier for people to make new friends". Do you agree or disagree?
2. "The most important skill we learn at school is how to interact with other people". Do you agree or disagree?

The Novel Revision Chapters (7-9) SB Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a/an .... that stopped us from opening the gate.
   a) chain b) anchor c) mast d) flag
2. Here's my .... I'll buy the old bike from you for L.E. 100.
   a) presentation b) fare c) offer d) affair
3. The bird made a loud .... and then flew from the trees.
   a) voice b) song c) cry d) laugh
4. There was a thick .... in the morning and I could not see the road.
   a) sun b) mist c) air d) sound
5. My uncle lives near a busy road and the .... from the cars is terrible.
   a) talk b) shout c) noise d) cry
6. The children have got .... in their shoes because they were on the beach all morning.
   a) rain b) rock c) sand d) stone
7. They put a/an .... around the car and pulled it from the river.
   a) rope b) string c) mast d) anchor
8. When there is a ...., a judge decides if someone did or did not break the law.
   a) trial b) trail c) try d) tail
9. The taxi driver .... the car around some holes in the road.
   a) sailed b) steered c) walked d) flew
10. The nurse put a .... on the boy's head because he had a cut on it.
    a) sheet b) note c) bandage d) cloth
11. The police will .... the criminals soon.
    a) reward b) win c) catch d) arrive
12. The tourists came on to the .... when the ship arrived in Port Said.
    a) cabin b) deck c) sail d) mast
13. It was not easy to swim because the sea was very ....
    a) tall b) thick c) flat d) high
14. We used a .... so that we could see in the darkness.
    a) torch b) paddle c) gun d) fence
15. **A:** Please can you close that window? **B:** I can't .... it.
    a) get b) arrive c) go d) reach

16 The sea is very .... here so it is safe for small children.
a) cold b) dangerous c) shallow d) deep

17 My sister played a .... on me and everyone laughed.
a) game b) sport c) task d) trick

18 Your .... is between your neck and your arm.
a) head b) shoulder c) nose d) hand

19 Lina had a/an .... on her leg after the accident.
a) noise b) difficulty c) wound d) illness

20 People have found lots of treasure in an old .... under the sea.
a) crash b) wreck c) trash d) waste

2 Match and complete the sentences:

1. Captain Flint	a) was hurt in the battle.
2. The fort	b) left the fort with a map and a gun.
3. Captain Smollett	c) made the fort.
4. Ben Gun	d) showed that the pirates wanted a truce.
5. A white flag	e) was full of sand and smoke.
6. Dr Livesy	f) was a little crazy.

3 Answer these questions:

1 How did Ben Gun know there were good men inside the fort?
a) He knew that the pirates were on the ship.
b) He could see the flag.

2 Why does Silver get angry with Captain Smollett?
a) Smollett didn't want Silver's offer.
b) Smollett didn't give him the treasure.

3 Why did Gray kill Anderson?
a) He was going to hurt Captain Smollett.
b) He was going to hurt Jim.

4 Who died in the battle?
a) Joyce and Hunter.
b) Trelawney and Gray.

5 How did Jim get to the *Hispaniola*?

a) He swam through some big waves.

b) He sailed in Ben Gun's boat.

6 Where did Hands and Jim sail the *Hispaniola* to?

a) The north of the island.

b) The Cape of Woods.

7 How did Jim escape from Hands?

a) Jim climbed up the mast.

b) Jim fell into the sea.

4 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

a) **"If you were an honest man, you could come inside. But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after well, or Captain Silver, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand.**

1. What do you think Captain Smollett thinks of Silver at this point of the story?
2. What does Silver's reply tell us about him?

b) **"I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship."**

1. Who put the boat into the water? What boat did he talk about?
2. Why did he want to go to the *Hispaniola*?
3. Why was he surprised when he reached the *Hispaniola*?

c) **"I don't think you can sail this ship. So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you."**

1. Who said this?
2. Did Jim help him?
3. Did he really help Jim? What happened to both characters at the end of chapter 9?

5 Imagine that you are Captain Smollett. While you are resting in the fort after the attack, write a letter to your wife telling her about what has happened on the island and what you plan to do next.



Test on Revision 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The room was not clean, so the dust was making me cough and ....
   a) laugh b) sleep c) breathe d) sneeze
2. He sat on the chair to take his boots ....
   a) from b) of c) off d) up
3. You may wish to consult a food .... specialist for help in planning your diet.
   a) emergency b) industry c) allergy d) cook
4. None of us .... the danger we are in except Amira.
   a) releases b) realises
   c) improvises d) rationalises
5. I work at a multi-national corporation with 140,000 .... worldwide.
   a) employers b) owners
   c) employees d) partners
6. The concert was .... in all the national newspapers.
   a) published b) advertised
   c) sprayed d) pressed
7. If our company offered us training, I .... to be more employable.
   a) will go b) would go
   c) would have gone d) go
8. My students didn't start to answer the test .... I had told them.
   a) when b) after c) until d) before
9. You .... smoke in petrol stations. It is very dangerous.
   a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) needn't d) may not
10. Mona didn't say "Hello" when she saw me. She .... me.
    a) must have seen b) must see
    c) can't have seen d) can't see
11. The exam papers .... immediately after the exam.
    a) marked b) was marked
    c) were marked d) had marked
12. It is .... to come with me to the park. It will be a good time.
    a) forbidden b) necessity
    c) not allowed d) advisable

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

13 It was only later that I realized my mistake. The synonym of the word "**realized**" is ....

a) understood
b) misunderstood
c) complicated
d) grasped
e) generalized

14 All drivers should really know how to change a flat tire. The antonym of the word "**change**" is ....

a) alter
b) stay
c) clarify
d) grasp
e) remain

15 **Fill in the space:**

What about the future? It ....(a).............. thought that the population will be growing even faster in the next 100 years. Ten billion people may ....(b).......... living on our planet in the year 2100. However, the population of some countries is going down. There ....(c).............. probably be enough space for everybody, but your grandchildren will be living on an even busier planet ....(d).............. the one we live on today.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was believed that being overweight was healthy but nowadays few people agree to this viewpoint. While many people are fighting the battle to reduce weight, studies are being performed concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of the conclusions of these studies may give us the ability to understand how to deal with weight problems. For example, when several people were asked about their eating, habits in times of stress, 44% said they reacted to stressful situations by eating. Further investigations of both humans and animals indicated that it is not food which relieves tension, but rather the act of chewing. A test showed that extremely fat people have a high sense of taste, and love more flavoured food than thin people. When deprived of the variety of tastes, extremely fat people are not satisfied and consequently eat more to fulfil this need. Exercise has been recommended as an important part of weight-loss programmes. However, it has been found out that mild exercise is a way of losing weight because using the stairs instead of the lift is better in the long run than taking on a severe programme such as running slowly (jogging). Many people find jogging difficult to continue over long periods of time, it also increases appetite.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Compared to fat people, thin people would rather have .... food.
a) more flavoured
b) less flavoured
c) flavoured
d) flavourless

17 Mild exercise is a .... form of exercise.
a) violent
b) severe
c) extreme
d) moderate

18 One downside of jogging is that it ....
a) increases fitness
b) increases appetite
c) increases health
d) decreases appetite

19 The word "Further" in the passage means ....
a) more
b) super
c) greater
d) extreme

20 Using the stairs according to a point of view can help in .... in the long run.
a) gaining some weigh
b) losing some weight
c) being fat
d) being satisfied

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What is the main idea of the passage?

22 What do you think the best treatment for overweight?

23 How does eating relieve tension?

24 **Translate into Arabic:**

Parents have an important role to play in shaping their children's characters and modifying their manners.

25 **Translate into English:**

- إن التواصل هو من أكبر التحديات فى العلاقات بين الرجال والنساء، والباحثون يقولون إن المشكلة الرئيسية هى اختلاف أساليب التواصل للرجال والنساء.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

How good education changes our life.

Unit 10 What's your job?

Objectives

Reading : Article about jobs
Writing : An email asking for advice; a personal CV
Listening : Students at a job fair
Speaking : Talking about job opportunities
Language : Reported speech: Statement and questions
Life skills : Self-management: Planning for the world of work



Warm up

Your Dream Job

Choose one of these jobs and then write why you choose it.











Why do you choose this job? Write three reasons.

....

....

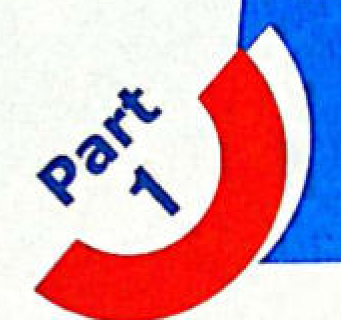
....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

apply (v) (y ied)	يقدم (طلبًا)	industry (n)	صناعة
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب فى المهنة	practical (adj)	عملى
attendant (n)	مُرافق	qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
casualty department (n)	قسم الطوارئ	rewarding (adj)	مُجْزٍ
construction (n)	البناء	skill (n)	مهارة
contract (n)	عقد	stressful (adj)	مرهق
degree (n)	درجة جامعية	training (n)	تدريب

Vocabulary on Reading

challenges (n)	تحديات	explaining (n)	شرح
chemist (n)	كيميائى	frightened (adj)	خائف
college (n)	كُليَّة	frustrating (adj)	محبط
communicator (n)	مُحاور/متواصل/لبق فى الحديث	graduate (v) – d	يتخرج
compassion (n)	تعاطف	improve (v) – d	يحسن
deadline (n)	الميعاد النهائى	incredibly (adv)	بشكل لا يصدق
despite (prep)	على الرغم من	involve (v) – d	يتضمن
develop (v) – ed	يطور	knowledge (n)	معرفة
eligible (adj)	مؤهل/جدير بـ	medical (adj)	طبى

natural (adj)	طبيعي
nursing (n)	تمريض
obviously (adv)	بوضوح
particular (adj)	خاص
products (n)	منتجات
reassure (v) – d	يطمئن
successful (adj)	ناجح
the public (n)	العامة/الجمهور
tiring (adj)	متعب
university (n)	جامعة
ward (n)	جناح (في مستشفى)

Vocabulary on Listening

airline (n)	شركة طيران
career (n)	حياة مهنية
caring (adj)	مهتم
certain (adj)	محدد
challenges (n)	تحديات
characteristics (n)	خصائص/سمات
compassionate (adj)	رحيم
construction (n)	بناء/تعمير
expect (v) – ed	يتوقع
hold (v)	يقيم
industries (n)	صناعات
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
interesting (adj)	شيق
international (adj)	دولي
non-biased (adj)	غير متحيز
option (n)	اختيار
progressing (n)	التقدم
pursue (v) – d	يواصل
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
reward (n)	مكافأة
route (n)	طريق
so far	حتى الآن
trade (n)	تجارة
vast (adj)	واسع/عريض
worry (v) – (y-ied)	يقلق

Workbook Vocabulary

around (adv) (prep)	حول
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية
cycle (v) – d	يقود دراجة
interact (v) – (ed)	يتفاعل
flight attendant	مضيفة طيران
relax (v) – ed	يستريح/يسترخى
weather (n)	الطقس

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a period of time	فترة من الوقت
at times	فى بعض الأحيان
do ... training	يؤدى تدريبًا
do a degree	يذاكر للحصول على درجة
do something well	يؤدى شيئًا جيدًا
make furniture	يصنع الأثاث
meet the deadline	تلبية الموعد النهائى
not really	ليس صحيحًا
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
break down	يتعطل
care for	يعتنى بـ
have a talk with	يتحدث مع
communicate ... to	يوصل ... إلى
drive to	يقود إلى
essential for	ضرورى لـ
good about	جيد بشأن
good at	جيد فى
interact with	يتفاعل مع
kind of	نوع من
late for	متأخر على
look for	يبحث عن
part of	جزء من
popular with	محبوب لدى
talk to	يتحدث إلى
variety of	تنوع من
work on	يعمل على

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apply	يطبق	application applicant	تطبيق متقدم للوظيفة	applicable	مناسب/قابل للتطبيق
develop	يطور	development	تطور – تنمية	developed developing	متطور نامٍ
frighten	يخيف	fright	خوف	frightened frightening	خائف مخيف
graduate	يتخرج	graduation	تخرج	graduate	متعلق بالدراسات العليا
-------------------------		obviousness	وضوح	obvious	واضح
qualify	يحصل على مؤهل/يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
reassure	يطمئن	reassurance	طمأنة	reassuring	مُطَمئن
reward	يكافئ	reward	مكافأة	rewarding	مُجْزِ
stress	يرهق	stress	ضغط عصبي	stressful	مرهق



Pre-reading question:

- What kind of jobs are popular with young people in Egypt today?

In this week's article called *What's your job?* We're talking to two young professionals about their work.



Ali works in the casualty department(1) at a busy hospital. He says that, despite(2) the long hours and hard work, the job is incredibly rewarding(3).

Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed caring(4) for people, so it seemed a natural thing to do. I decided to apply to nursing college, did my training(5) and then got a job here.

(1) قسم الطوارئ
(2) على الرغم من
(3) مجزية بشكل لا يصدق
(4) رعاية
(5) تدريب

Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very stressful[6] at times. People are sometimes frightened so part of my job is to reassure[7] them, which can be hard.

Is there anything you don't enjoy?

Not really, although I work from 7 a.m. till 6 p.m. every day, which is very tiring[8].

What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?

You need to be a good communicator[9] – a lot of nursing is about listening to people's worries[10] and explaining what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good medical knowledge too, but compassion[11] is really important.

Nadia is a scientist and works in a laboratory as a chemist[12].

Why did you choose to become a scientist?

My best subject at school was chemistry so I decided to study it at university. After I graduated[13], I got a two-year contract[14] to work here.

What do you like best about your job?

I'm a very practical[15] person and a lot of my job is looking at trying to improve products[16] or develop new ones. I enjoy the challenges[17] and the variety[18] of my work.

Are there any challenges in your job?

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on several[19] products and each one has a deadline[20] to meet.

What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?

Obviously, you need a degree[21] in science, but you also have to be good at problem solving. It's important to be able to communicate[22] your ideas to other people too and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.



(6) مجهد
(7) يطمئن
(8) متعب
(9) مُحاور
(10) مخاوف
(11) شفقة
(12) كيميائى
(13) تخرج
(14) عقد
(15) عملى
(16) منتجات
(17) تحديات
(18) تنوع
(19) عديدة
(20) الموعد النهائى
(21) درجة علمية
(22) يوصل

Post-reading question:

- Which job do you think is the most difficult?



Listening Text (1)

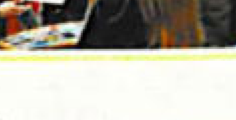
Pre-listening question:

- What are the important qualities that may help you to get a good job?

Narrator Ahmed

Man : Did you find out about any job opportunities[1] at the job fair[2], Ahmed?

Ahmed : I had a talk[3] with a man from an IT company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young people in his company.
He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a degree[4] in Information Technology and he said 'no'.





Narrator Sarah

Woman : Hello, Sarah. Was the job fair interesting?

Sarah : Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.

Woman : Oh, what's that?

Sarah : I want to be a flight attendant[5] for an international airline. I talked to a woman from an airline company[6] and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak at least two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that so far she'd been to over 40 – imagine[7] that!

Narrator Omar

Fatima : Did you get any useful information about work at the fair, Omar?

Omar : Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a trade[8]. I spoke to a man who owns a construction company[9] and I told him that I didn't really like studying and that I wanted to do something practical[10].

- (1) فرص
- (2) معرض توظيف
- (3) محادثة
- (4) مؤهل علمي
- (5) مضيفة طيران
- (6) شركة طيران
- (7) تخيل
- (8) حرفة
- (9) شركة بناء
- (10) عملي

Fatima : Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and dad agree, too.

Omar : I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any work experience[11] and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture[12] for a few years. He said that would be useful and that I should try and get an apprenticeship[13] in a local company.

(11) خبرة

(12) أثاث

(13) فترة تدريب

Post-listening question:

- How do people find suitable jobs?

Listening Text (2)

Woman: It's a really interesting job.

Ahmed: Do I need to do a degree in Information Technology?

Man 1: There are lots of jobs for young people in my company.

Omar: I'm interested in doing a practical job.

Man 2: Do you have any work experience?

Workbook Listening Text

Samir : Hello, this is Samir. The bus has broken down[1] so I'll be late for the meeting.

Hassan : Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online and I really like it.

Dalia : Hi Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't come to school today, but you don't need to worry[2] there isn't much homework to do.

Mum : Hi Laila, mum here. I'm working late this evening. There is some fish and rice in the fridge[3] so you can cook it yourself if you're hungry.

Tarek : Ahmed, it's Tarek. Have you seen the news? Turn on the TV, because it's very exciting[4].

(1) تعطل

(2) يقلق

(3) ثلاجة

(4) مثير

Video Script

The world of work is vast(1). There are routes(2) into employment(3) for everyone, with options to study at university, through apprenticeships or progressing through work experience.

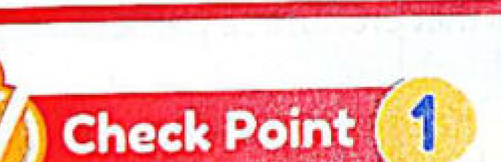
Job fairs are often held(4) to give non-biased information about many industries(5).

They can tell you about what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has its challenges(6) and rewards(7) which can affect a person's decision(8) about whether to pursue(9) a career. Equally, some characteristics(10) are essential for certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be compassionate(11), caring and have excellent communication skills.

(1) ضخم
(2) طرق
(3) توظيف
(4) تُعقد
(5) صناعات
(6) تحديات
(7) مكافآت
(8) قرار
(9) يسعى
(10) سمات
(11) رحيم/عطوف

0:00



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother will .... for a passport next week as he wants to travel abroad.
   a) apply b) supply c) look d) employ
2. He was in the second year of his .... as a carpenter.
   a) attendant b) construction c) apprenticeship d) degree
3. Teachers' salaries are not very ...., but they have a great role in the society.
   a) stressful b) rewarding c) practical d) qualified
4. My job's getting more and more .... I can't stand it.
   a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) qualified
5. The footballer twisted an ankle during .... and will miss tomorrow's match.
   a) tiring b) experiment c) learning d) training



apply يتقدم (بطلب)	to make a formal request, usually in writing
apprenticeship فترة التدريب في المهنة	a period of time working in order to learn skills needed to do
attendant مُرافق	a person whose job involves helping the public
casualty department قسم الطوارئ	emergency room in a hospital
construction البناء	the work of building something
contract عقد	a legal agreement
degree مؤهل/درجة علمية	a qualification you receive when you finish university
industry صناعة	a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services
practical عملي	relating to real activities and events more than ideas
qualifications مؤهلات	skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work
rewarding مُجْزٍ	doing something that makes you feel good
skill مهارة	the ability to do something well
stressful مرهق	something which causes worry
training تدريب	learning skills you need for a job

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
compassion	تعاطف/شفقة	sympathy/ mercy	cruelty	قسوة
construction	البناء	building	destruction	الهدم
develop	يطور/يتطور	advance/ progress	decline	يتدهور
explain	يشرح	analyze/ clarify	confuse	يربك
frightened	خائف	afraid/scared	unafraid	غير خائف
improve	يحسن	enhance	deteriorate	يتدهور
incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق	amazingly/ astonishingly	commonly	بشكل عادى أو شائع
involve	يتضمن	include	exclude	لا يتضمن
reassure	يطمئن	assure	annoy/ worry	يضايق/يقلق
rewarding	مجزِ	fruitful	unfruitful	غير مثمر



care

care for = look after — يرعى/يعتنى بـ (بشخص)

- He thanked the nurses who had cared for him.

care for/to = want — يريد

- Would you care for another drink?
- If you'd care to follow me, I'll show you his office.

care about + (something) — يهتم بشىء

- The only thing he seems to care about is money.



although but despite so and

although على الرغم من

روابط يعبر عن التناقض ويستخدم كالآتى

+ (subject) + (verb) + ...	although	(Subject) + (verb) + ...
main idea: الفكرة الأساسية	although	unexpected result: نتيجة غير متوقعة

- He refused to eat although he was hungry.

but لكن

روابط يعبر عن التناقض ويستخدم كالآتى

+ (subject) + (verb) + ...	but	(Subject) + (verb) + ...
unexpected result: نتيجة غير متوقعة	but	main idea: الفكرة الأساسية

- He was hungry, but he refused to eat.

despite على الرغم من

روابط يعبر عن التناقض ويستخدم كالآتى

+ (subject) + (verb) + ...	+ (noun) OR (v + ing),	Despite

- Despite playing well, he lost the match.

so لذلك

روابط لبيان النتيجة ... ويستخدم كالآتى:

+ (subject) + (verb) + ...	so	(Subject) + (verb) + ...
result: نتيجة	so	reason: سبب

- My sister got up late, so she missed the bus.

and و

روابط لبيان الفكرة الواحدة ... ويستخدم كالآتى:

- This woman is very clever and rich.
- My father bought a new car and travelled to Alexandria to meet his friends.

either as well & too

either أيضاً

تستخدم فى الجملة المنفية (فى حالة الاتفاق مع شخص فى شيء لا يفعله أو لا يحبه)

- **A:** I don't like cheese.
  B: I don't like it either.

as well & too أيضاً

يستخدمان فى الجملة المثبتة (فى حالة الاتفاق مع شخص فى شيء يفعله أو يحبه)

- **A:** I love ice cream.
  B: I love it too/as well.

apply (for/to/in writing)

apply for + (وظيفة) يتقدم بطلب للحصول على وظيفة
- She applied for a job as a secretary.

apply to + (شركة/شخص/مؤسسة) يتقدم بطلب لشركة أو شخص أو مؤسسة
- He applied to three universities and was accepted by all of them.

apply in writing يتقدم بطلب كتابى
- You should apply in writing to get the job.

feel/ seem/ become/ look/ sound

تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال التالية:

feel يشعر/ **seem** يبدو/ **become** يصبح/ **look** يبدو/ **sound** يبدو

- My father seems happy.
- The situation has become serious.

qualify (in/as/to)

qualify in + (تخصص معين) يحصل على مؤهل فى .....
- My brother qualified in English literature last year.

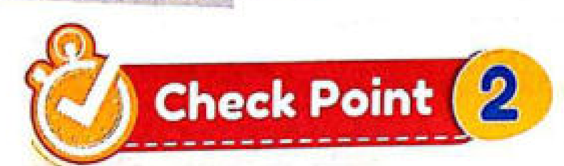
qualify as + (وظيفة) يتأهل كـ .....
- My sister qualified as a teacher five years ago.

(be) qualified to يصبح مؤهلًا لـ .....
- He is qualified to teach English.

Language Notes

1. He says that, despite the long hours and hard work, the job is incredibly rewarding.
   - الرابط despite هو رابط للتعبير عن التناقض بمعنى على الرغم من ويتبع بـ (Noun) أو (v-ing).
2. Yes, I love it, although it is very stressful at times.
   - أما although فهو أيضًا رابط للتعبير عن التناقض بنفس المعنى ولكن يتبع بـ (subject + verb).
3. I've always enjoyed caring for people, so it seemed a natural thing to do.
   - الرابط so هو رابط لبيان النتيجة بمعنى لذلك ويتبع بـ (subject + verb).
4. It's important to be able to communicate your ideas to other people too.
   - تأتى too بمعنى أيضًا فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة.
5. Part of my job is to make them feel calm, which can be hard. It seemed natural to do.
   - تأتى الصفة بعد الفعل feel أو seem مباشرة.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The car's old, ... it still runs well.

a) although
b) so
c) but
d) and

2 She felt .... when her team won the championship.

a) happy
b) happily
c) happiness
d) happiest

3 My brother decided to apply .... Alexandria University.

a) with
b) at
c) from
d) to

4 When I've finished painting the bathroom, I'm going to paint the kitchen ....

a) either
b) too
c) neither
d) so

5 She moved back home to care .... her elderly parents.

a) of
b) that
c) for
d) with

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Swimming pool .... kept a constant watch on the swimmers.
a) experts b) attendants c) engineers d) designers

2 The .... of the new road has now been completed.
a) industry b) instruction c) contract d) construction

3 Many workers do not have legal .... in this company.
a) agreements b) contracts c) arguments d) ideas

4 My father was well .... to do the job of a head teacher efficiently.
a) graduated b) specialised c) qualified d) educated

5 It's a/an .... little car. It is ideal for this very crowded city.
a) practical b) stressful c) frustrating d) obvious

6 The government tries to develop new .... in order to reduce unemployment.
a) connections b) communicators c) degrees d) industries

7 Applicants must have at least a .... in architecture.
a) reward b) degree c) prize d) medal

8 Being a good manager requires highly specialised ....
a) contracts b) constructions c) skills d) compassion

9 Looking after small children can be very ....
a) stressful b) qualified c) applied d) obvious

10 Employees should be given extra .... before promoting.
a) application b) explaining c) learning d) training

11 My friend left school with no formal ...., so it isn't easy for him to find a job.
a) attendants b) qualifications c) contracts d) industries

12 People who need urgent treatment should go to the .... department at hospitals.
a) casualty b) compassion c) medical d) reassurance

13 Many employees complain that their managers are poor .... and bad at giving clear instructions.
a) connectors b) contractors c) communicators d) developers

14 It's .... that you should worry about your children.
a) abnormal b) natural c) frustrating d) successful

15 The new airport is currently under .... We can use it after one year.
a) construction b) destruction c) connection d) contradiction

16 If you want to travel to different places by plane, you should go to a/an .... company first.
a) fly line b) air flyer c) airline d) flight line

17 She was a .... woman who wanted to save children from violence and poverty.
a) compassionate b) cruel c) vulgar d) violent

18 I'm ...., but I thought my daughter's paintings were the best.
a) biased b) non-biased c) based d) non-based

19 This is the hottest day we've had .... this summer.
a) already b) yet c) so much d) so far

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms Exercises

20 Their work can be stressful as they should .... deadlines.
a) meet b) give c) make d) do

21 Marwan should .... football training at least once a week.
a) make b) give c) do d) take

22 She drove her daughters .... school every day.
a) for b) to c) at d) from

23 Mohamed Salah is very popular .... Liverpool fans.
a) for b) to c) in d) with

24 McDonald's offers a wide .... of delicious sandwiches.
a) various b) varied c) vary d) variety

25 My brother .... a degree in chemical engineering. Now, he is a professor.
a) did b) made c) won d) earned

26 At ...., it will take you 60 minutes to reach the new factory.
a) last b) lest c) list d) least

27 The printing machines are always .... down. I need to buy a new one.
a) sitting b) breaking c) feeling d) restraining

28 Marwan is always late .... school. He should be punished.
a) at b) from c) for d) with

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

29 The noun "**compassion**" has the same meaning as ....
a) cruelty b) destruction c) worry d) sympathy e) mercy

30 The synonym of the word "**incredibly**" is ....
a) amazingly b) commonly c) fruitfully
d) appreciatively e) astonishingly

31 The antonym of the word "**reassure**" is ....
a) annoy b) assure c) enhance d) worry e) confuse

32 I was frightened of being left by myself in the house. The synonym of the word "**frightened**" is ....
a) fruitful b) amazing c) afraid d) cruel e) scared

33 I explained the situation to the bank manager and he arranged a loan. The synonym of the word "**explained**" is ....
a) analysed b) confused c) deteriorated
d) excluded e) clarified



Reported Speech

هناك نوعان من الكلام:

1 Direct Speech الكلام المباشر

- He said, "I have studied English with my friends."

- هو نص الكلام كما قاله صاحبه دون أى تعديل أو تغيير، ويوضع بين علامات اقتباس.

2 Indirect Speech الكلام غير المباشر

- He said that he had studied English with his friends.

- هو الكلام المنقول عن شخص على لسان شخص آخر.

Use reported speech to talk about what someone says without using their words.

نستخدم الكلام غير المباشر للتحدث عما قاله شخص.

- She said (that) it was a really interesting job.

Statement الجملة الخبرية

لتحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

أولًا: تحويلات خارج علامات الاقتباس وهى التى ترتبط بفعل القول:

say .... say	say to .... tell	said .... said
says .... says	says to .... tells	said to .... told

- نحذف علامات الاقتباس ونربط بكلمة that ومن الممكن حذفها.

- He said to me, "I have seen an accident in the street."
  = He told me (that) he had seen an accident in the street.



لاحظ: إن الفرق بين said وtold هو وجود المفعول بعد told.

- She said that she had left the house early.
  She told me that she had left the house early.
- He said his father would travel the next day.
  He told me his father would travel the next day.

- من الممكن استخدام كلمات أخرى بدلًا من said مثل: (informed – explained – promised – illustrated, etc.)

ثانيا: تغييرات داخل علامات الاقتباس وتشمل الآتى:

١- تحويلات الضمائر: تحول الضمائر داخل الأقواس حسب الضمائر خارج الأقواس.

ضمائر المتكلم حسب الشخص المتكلم خارج الأقواس:

me .... him/her
we .... they
our .... their
my .... his/her
mine .... his/hers
us .... them
I .... he/she

ضمائر المخاطب حسب المخاطب خارج الأقواس:

you فاعل .... I – he – she – we – they
you مفعول .... me – him – her – us – them
your .... my – his – her – our – their

أما باقى ضمائر الغائب فتبقى كما هى he – she – it – they – her – him – their – them

- Mona said, "I will travel with my family."
  = Mona said (that) she would travel with her family.

٢- الأزمنة تتحول من المضارع إلى الماضى إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا.

Direct	Indirect
play/plays	played
played	had played
am/is/are playing	was/were playing
has/have played	had played
has/have been playing	had been playing
was/were playing	had been playing
will play	would play
shall play	should play
may play	might play
can play	could play
must إلزام play	had to play/must play
must تأكيد play	must play
will have to play	had to/would have to play

٢- تحول الظروف المكانية والزمانية كالآتى:

yesterday	the day before/the previous day	today	that day
tomorrow	the next (following) day	ago/last	before/the previous
now	then	here	there
tonight	that night	these	those
next	the following	this	that

Examples:

- He said to me, "I will travel to Alexandria tomorrow."
  = He told me that he would travel to Alexandria the next day.
- She said to her mother, "I phoned you yesterday."
  = She told her mother that she had phoned her the day before.
- Mona said, "I must study my lessons today."
  = Mona said that she had to study her lessons that day.
- He said, "I didn't attend the party. I must apologise."
  = He said that he hadn't attended the party and added that he had to apologise.




فى الجملة السابقة عند وجود جملتين داخل علامات الاقتباس نربط بينهما بـ and that/and added that.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mostafa .... that he lived near Alexandria.
   a) said b) told c) asked d) wondered
2. He said that his father .... him to make bread.
   a) teach b) has taught c) had taught d) teaches
3. My son told me that he .... with his friends the next day.
   a) will travel b) would travel c) had travelled d) travels
4. He .... his mother that he was going out.
   a) told b) said c) asked d) wondered
5. Hani said that he .... a new flat yet.
   a) didn't find b) hasn't found
   c) hadn't found d) wasn't found

Important Notes

الأزمنة داخل علامات الاقتباس لا يتم تغييرها في الحالات الآتية:

١- إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا.

- Hana says, "I am watching TV now."
  = Hana says that she is watching TV now.

٢- إذا كان ما بداخل الأقواس حقيقة علمية ثابتة.

- Ali said to Hani, "The sun rises in the morning."
  = Ali told Hani that the sun rises in the morning.

٣- فعل القول (ماضٍ) مع وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل في الحال أو قبل فترة بسيطة.

- He said just now, "No one is allowed to leave."
  = He said just now that no one is allowed to leave.

٤- الحالة الصفرية والثانية والثالثة من الحالات الشرطية لـ If.

- He said to me, "If you boil water, it turns into steam."
  = He told me that if I boil water, it turns into steam.
- Eman said to me, "If you had played well, you would have won the game."
  = Eman told me that if I had played well, I would have own the game.






لاحظ: الحالة الأولى من If تتحول إلى الحالة الثانية.

- Ali said, "If I study hard, I will pass the test easily."
  = Ali said that if he studied hard, he would pass the test easily.

٥- الماضي البسيط يتحول إلى ماضٍ تام عند وجود before ...... the أو .... the previous

- و لكن يبقى الماضي البسيط كما هو عند وجود yesterday – last – ago كما هي دون تحويل.

- Nadia said that she had finished her work the week before.
  = Nadia said that she finished her work last week.



Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ali says that he .... very tired at the moment.

a) had
b) has
c) is
d) was

2 All the doctors .... there is nothing wrong with my stomach.

a) were saying
b) tell
c) told
d) say

3 He said that water .... if we heat it.

a) boiled
b) had boiled
c) would boil
d) boils

4 He said that the moon .... its light from the sun.

a) got
b) had got
c) get
d) gets

5 They told us .... we worked hard, we would reach our goals easily.

a) unless
b) if
c) that
d) so

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mona said that if we .... water, it turns into steam.
a) boil b) will boil c) boils d) had boiled

2 My mother .... me that she would like to go out for shopping.
a) told b) asked c) said d) advised

3 Marwa said that Alexandria .... bigger than Aswan.
a) has been b) had been c) is d) was being

4 Tarek tells me that he .... his new job. He doesn't think of leaving it.
a) is enjoying b) enjoy
c) had enjoyed d) was enjoying

5 Our teacher .... all of us about the results of the final exams.
a) said b) wanted to know
c) inquired d) told

6 He said that it was a busy day and that he .... visit his friends.
a) doesn't b) hadn't c) couldn't d) won't

7 The doctor told me that he .... able to treat me until the next day.
a) won't be b) wasn't c) wouldn't be d) hadn't been

8 My parents promised me that they .... me a phone if I succeeded.
a) will buy b) would buy c) bought d) had bought

9 Noha explained that they .... to Turkey the year before.
a) have been b) have gone c) went d) had been

10 My uncle has just said that he .... us at home.
a) will meet b) was meeting c) had met d) would meet

11 He said that he had done all his work ....
a) the following week b) the week after
c) the previous week d) the next week

12 Mona .... her friend Huda was ill and couldn't go to school.
a) told b) tells c) asked d) said

13 Farida .... me if she had won the competition, she would have been happy.
a) asked b) said c) told d) inquired

14 My friend told me .... a terrible accident on the way home.
a) if he saw
b) what he had seen
c) that he had seen
d) if he sees

15 My sister told me that she .... her homework then.
a) is doing b) had done c) did d) was doing

16 I informed my teacher that I wouldn't be able to attend ....
a) the last lesson
b) the following lesson
c) the previous lesson
d) the lesson before

17 He said that the first thing he .... when he got home was to have a shower.
a) does b) is doing c) has done d) did

18 Noha said that her favourite drink .... orange juice.
a) has been b) will be c) was d) would be

19 My mother .... when she visited her father, she found him very ill.
a) said
b) told
c) asked
d) wanted to know

20 He said that one of their ovens .... the day before.
a) was repairing
b) had repaired
c) is repaired
d) had been repaired

21 The tour guide explained that the Nile .... the longest river in the world.
a) was b) had been c) is d) will be

22 Ali told his father a moment ago that he .... to buy a new bay.
a) wants b) had wanted c) will want d) is wanting

23 She .... her friend had an accident, but I don't know whether she was Rania or not.
a) said b) told c) say d) tells

24 Amina said that she .... look for a mechanic when her car broke down.
a) must b) had to c) has to d) have to

25 I told Akram that I .... to the countryside the following week.
a) am travelling
b) will travel
c) was travelling
d) had travelled

26 Our teacher told us that we .... obey our parents.
a) had to
b) will
c) must have been
d) has to

27 Ahmed said that he .... his friend two days ago.
a) has met b) have met c) was meeting d) met

2 Fill in the space:

1. My thirty-year-old brother, Osama, has an excellent job at a bank. He ....(a).............. he had decided to give it up. Although I tried to make him change his mind, I failed. I ....(b).............. him that he had spent eight years in the bank and that he might become a manager soon. He answered he had no complaints about the bank. The manager told him his prospects ....(c).............. been excellent. When I .... (d).............. him why he wanted to leave, he said it was the money. He told me that he enjoyed counting money, but hated counting other people's money.

2. A friend of mine always gives me useful advice. He tells me ....(a).............. when I drive my car, I must keep in mind the mistakes of the other drivers. He .... (b).............. that if each driver puts this advice in mind, there ....(c).............. be fewer accidents on the roads. He advises me ....(d).............. use car as accurately as possible.

3. One morning, when I got up, I could not find the phone. I had put it in the pocket of my trousers the night ....(a).............., but in the morning it was not there. I searched all over the house, but I could not find it. My brother and sister asked me what I ....(b).............. looking for, but they also could not find it. I did not want to ....(c).............. my parents because the phone had been a present from them. Then, as I was leaving for school, my mother ....(d).............., "Don't forget your phone, Hassan. I found it in your trousers. If I hadn't found it, it would have gone into the washing machine!"

4. Are people still fond of reading? We wonder ....(a).............. a lot of us no longer read books or go to libraries as it was in the past. Can we ....(b).............. that television and the internet made us neglect reading? We'd ....(c).............. resume going to libraries and looking for different books so that we ....(d).............. increase our knowledge.

5. There are different uses of mobiles according to people's opinions. Many young people ....(a).............. that they want mobiles because they need them to communicate ....(b).............. their friends. Others say they need them for work. Many girls say ....(c).............. having mobiles gives them more freedom. They can go to many places without their parents ....(d).............. worried as they can check on them at any time. Some other young people say that they own mobile phones just for showing off.

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The noun of the verb "**reassure**" is ....
   a) assurance b) reassurance c) reassurancement d) reassurancy
2. Her father is always angry, so she was always .... of him.
   a) frustrating b) reassuring c) relaxed d) frightened
3. If there are injured people, they should go to the .... department at any hospital.
   a) casualty b) intensive c) fire d) reassurance
4. Her .... hair colour is black, but she dyed it brown.
   a) human b) natural c) usual d) common
5. The new hotel is currently under .... The minister will open it next month.
   a) damage b) structure c) destruction d) construction
6. After ...., doctors spend at least two years working in public hospitals.
   a) explaining b) teaching c) qualifying d) developing
7. The antonym of the word "**develop**" is ....
   a) improve b) progress c) decline d) confuse
8. My new car is fast and comfortable. It's economical, ...
   a) either b) too c) neither d) so
9. Hussein said that he .... a special cake the following day.
   a) is making b) will make c) was making d) had made
10. He said that he really .... his job.
    a) loves b) was loving c) is loving d) being love
11. My sister told me that she .... a new movie on TV then.
    a) watched b) was watching c) had watched d) watching
12. Adel said he .... working for a computer repair company.
    a) will be b) is c) was d) has been
13. Maher said he .... flown to London the week before.
    a) has b) had c) is d) was
14. He said that he .... his homework the previous week.
    a) had done b) would do c) did d) was doing
15. My teacher agreed that it .... a good idea to revise every day.
    a) was b) will be c) has been d) was being
16. I told my friends .... to my house easily.
    a) if they got b) where they got c) how to get d) that they get

2 Fill in the space:

People have different opinions about inventions. Some people ....(a).............. the most important invention of the last hundred years ....(b).............. the telephone. Other people think air travel is the..............(c).............. important. They say ....(d).............. you can get on a plane at Cairo Airport and be in London in about four hours.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people say that women always shout louder asking for equality with men because they have weaker case. They insist that it's nonsense to claim that men and women are equal and have the same abilities. Women are physically weaker and never think intellectually. It is impossible for them to be wives, mothers and successful career women. They go on to say they are unreliable and employers can't trust them. They leave jobs to get married or have children. There is a great deal of truth in the jokes about women drivers. They insist on the fact that women are less practical and less mechanically-minded.

Over and above most women are glad to let men look after important affairs. They know that bearing and rearing children are more important. That's why there are few women in politics and world affairs. They are not excluded; they exclude themselves. The best place for them is the home. Who is the real boss in the household? Certainly not father.

These claims are groundless. In the U.S.A. and Western Europe, people live in woman-dominated societies. There, men are second-class citizens and women should grant men equal status! This proves that women can stand on the same footing with men and can do the most important tasks.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In the U.S.A. and Western Europe ....
a) societies are dominated by men only
b) women are superior to men
c) women are second-class citizens
d) men should grant women status

2 According to the passage, ...
a) women are skillful drivers
b) women have proved ability in politics
c) women are less practical and less mechanically-minded
d) women are the boss in every branch

3 .... prevents them from becoming successful career women.
a) Proving ability in politics
b) Being the boss in every branch
c) Being second-class citizens
d) Being wives and mothers

4. The jokes about women drivers showed that ....
   a) women have proved their ability as drivers
   b) women are second-class citizens
   c) women are skillful drivers
   d) women are bad drivers
5. The opposite of the word "**unreliable**" is ....
   a) responsible b) irresponsible c) untrusted d) disloyal

B) Answer the following questions:

6. Why do, according to the passage, women shout louder?
7. What is considered nonsense according to narrow-minded men?
8. What is meant by "They are not excluded; they exclude themselves."?

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Sinai is a dear part of our country. It isn't a mere desert in the north east of Egypt. It is a symbol of our struggle against enemies along the history.
2. Man is sociable by nature. Because of such a fact, he should pay full attention to everything he does as it affects society around him either positively or negatively.
3. Candidates for the jobs must have knowledge of at least one foreign language and also they should have computer skills.

B) Translate into English:

١- يتم بناء السدود لتخزين كميات إضافية من المياه خلفها والتى يتم استخدامها فيما بعد، مثل السد العالى فى مصر والذى تم بناؤه لمواجهة أى نقص فى المياه.

٢- يجب علينا أن نقلل نسبة التلوث فى البيئة عن طريق التوسع فى زراعة الأشجار وكذلك الاقتصاد فى استخدام الطاقة سواء داخل البيت أو خارجه.

٣- لكل فرد فى المجتمع حلم يتمنى تحقيقه فى المستقبل ويجب عليه العمل بجد والمثابرة لكى يتمكن من تحقيقه.

Enrich your Vocabulary

mere	مجرد	symbol	رمز
struggle	صراع/كفاح	attention	انتباه/اهتمام
at least	على الأقل	positively	بشكل إيجابى

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. Do you have the skills to have your favourite job?
2. Saving energy is very useful for our country.





Lessons 3&4





Vocabulary on Reading

career (n)	مهنة
community (n)	مجتمع
confident (adj)	واثق
exciting (adj)	مثير
experience (n)	خبرة
fancy (v) (y-ied)	يتخيل
fire engines (n)	سيارة مطافئ
firefighter (n)	رجل مطافئ
flexible (adj)	مرن
hard-working (adj)	مجتهد
honest (adj)	أمين/صادق
job opportunities	فرص عمل
jobs fair	معرض الوظائف
loyal (adj)	مخلص
main (adj)	رئيسى
necessary (adj)	ضرورى
punctual (adj)	منضبط
reliable (adj)	موثوق به
require (v) – d	يتطلب
sirens (n)	صفارات الإنذار
situation (n)	موقف
teammate (n)	عضو الفريق
toy (n)	لعبة أطفال
variety (n)	تنوع

Workbook Vocabulary

aged (adj)	فى سن
availability (n)	التوافر
cuisine (n)	فن الطبخ
immediate (adj)	فورى
interests (n)	اهتمامات
office worker	عامل فى مكتب
patient (adj)	صبور
pay (n)	أجر
plumber (n)	سباك
professional (adj)	محترف
shop assistant (n)	بائع فى محل
vet (n)	طبيب بيطرى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

attention to detail	منتبه للتفاصيل	personal qualities	صفات شخصية
Bachelors Degree in English	درجة البكالوريوس فى اللغة الإنجليزية	Post Graduate Certificate in Education	شهادة الدراسات العليا فى التربية
Egyptian cuisine	المطبخ المصرى	take course at	يأخذ دورة فى
free-time activities	أنشطة وقت الفراغ	plenty of	الكثير من
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	sit at	يجلس على
find out about	يكتشف/يعرف عن	suitable for	مناسب لـ
knowledge of	معرفة عن	work in	يعمل فى
on training course	فى دورة تدريبية	work with	يعمل مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
confide	يثق	confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
experience	يجرب	experience	خبرة/تجربة حياتية	experienced	ذو خبرة
----------------------		flexible	مرن	flexibility	مرونة
----------------------		honesty	أمانة	honest	أمين
rely on	يعتمد على	reliability reliance	الموثوقية الاعتماد	reliable	موثوق
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	متنوع



Pre-reading question:
- Have you got a dream job? What is it?

My Dream Job

Name : Mohammed
Age : 23
Dream job : Firefighter
Skills : You should be:

- a team-player
- reliable[1]
- a good communicator
- flexible[2]

Workplace : Central Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter[3]. When I was a little, I played with toy fire engines[4] and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their sirens[5] sounding. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was outside, exciting and had a lot of variety.

Firefighting[6] can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates[7] and also be happy to adapt[8] to different situations when necessary.

Do you fancy[9] a career[10] as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the community come and visit me on Stand 21 at the Jobs Fair[11].

Date: 23 May
Time: 9.00 – 14.00

If you're not interested in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what career is out there for you!

(1) جدير بالثقة
(2) مرن
(3) رجل الإطفاء
(4) سيارات الإطفاء
(5) صفارات الإنذار
(6) مكافحة الحرائق
(7) أعضاء الفريق
(8) تكيف
(9) مولع بـ
(10) مهنة
(11) معرض الوظائف

Post-reading question:
- Why is the job of a firefighter dangerous?



Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I've heard from .... sources that the company is in trouble.
   a) flexible b) confident
   c) necessary d) reliable
2. Many people have left their rural .... to find work in the city.
   a) communities b) companies
   c) families d) states
3. A .... is someone who belongs to the same team as you.
   a) college b) teammate
   c) comrade d) follower
4. It was his skill as a .... which made his television programme so successful.
   a) teacher b) connector
   c) communicator d) caller
5. We can offer you .... working hours to make your work easier.
   a) flexible b) confident
   c) exciting d) fixed

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
exciting	مثير	thrilling	boring/ dull	ممل
flexible	مرن	adjustable	inflexible/ rigid	غير مرن
honest	أمين/صادق	trustful/ candid	dishonest	غير أمين
loyal	مخلص	faithful	disloyal/ unfaithful	غير مخلص
main	رئيسى	major/ leading	secondary	ثانوى
necessary	ضرورى	essential	additional	إضافى
reliable	موثوق فيه	dependable	unreliable	غير موثوق فيه

Notes on Vocabulary



aged/at the age of/ in the age of

at the age of = aged — في سن

▸ My son could read (at the age of/aged) four.

in the age of — في عصر

▸ We are living in the age of technology.

pay

pay for — يدفع مقابل

▸ Mum paid for my driving lessons.

pay somebody for something — يدفع لشخص مقابل شيء

▸ He didn't even offer to pay me for the ticket.

pay somebody something — يدفع لشخص (مبلغًا من المال)

▸ I paid him $5 to cut the grass.

pay (in) cash — يدفع (نقدًا)

▸ You'd get a discount for paying in cash.

pay by (cheque/credit card) — يدفع بشيك أو بكارت ائتمان

▸ Can I pay by credit card?

pay somebody to + inf. — يدفع شخصًا لفعل شيء

▸ Rana paid some kids to sweep the floor.

experience — experiences — experiment

experience — الخبرة: ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين (لا تُعد)

▸ Do you have any previous experience of this type of work?

experience(s) — مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات في الحياة (تُعد)

▸ I had a bad experience with fireworks once.

experiment(s) — تجربة علمية داخل المعمل (تُعد)

▸ Many people do not like the idea of experiments on animals.

work | **job** | **career** | **profession**

work
- It is difficult to find work in the present economic climate.

عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

job
- I'm thinking of applying for a new job.

وظيفة (اسم يعد)

career
- What made you decide on a career as a vet?

الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد

profession
- He left the teaching profession in 2002 to start his own business.

مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة)

Language Notes

1. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates and also be happy to adapt to different situations when necessary.

- لاحظ أن adapt to تأتى بمعنى يتأقلم على أو يتكيف مع وتتبع بـ (Noun) أو (v-ing).

2. Obviously, you need a degree in science, but you also have to be good at problem solving.

- هناك بعض الظروف مثل obviously تأتى فى أول الجملة غالبًا وتتبع بجملة كاملة (subject + verb).



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Did she pay you .... taking care of her kids?
   a) with b) in c) for d) to
2. She always pays .... cash. She never uses a credit card.
   a) in b) for c) with d) by
3. After he retired, he wrote a book about his .... as a war reporter.
   a) experience b) experimentation c) experiments d) experts
4. The job requires at least five years' secretarial ....
   a) experts b) experiments c) experiences d) experience
5. Her son still hasn't been able to find a ....
   a) job b) work c) career d) profession

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** Do you think your favourite team will win the championship tomorrow?
   B: Sure! I'm very .... of this.
   a) exciting b) loyal c) proud d) confident
2. A job .... is an event where people go to get information about different kinds of jobs.
   a) fair b) fare c) store d) festival
3. It took .... over two hours to put out the fire.
   a) fireguards b) fire alarms c) firefighters d) firearms
4. My father has always remained .... to his old employer.
   a) confident b) loyal c) trusty d) royal
5. Do you .... having a career as a pilot?
   a) get b) adapt c) know d) fancy
6. Eman has worked with me for two years and has always been ....
   a) punctual b) necessary c) various d) immediate
7. The police took .... action when they received the bomb alert.
   a) hard-working b) flexible c) immediate d) main
8. The play is very popular, so we should check the .... of the tickets before going to the theatre.
   a) availability b) value c) loyalty d) pricing
9. The air-raid غارة جوية .... sounded to warn everyone in the city that an attack was coming.
   a) bellows b) sirens c) cries d) bombs
10. My parents boosted my .... in science.
   a) loyalty b) confidence c) flexibility d) interest

11 Ali has a little bit of .... working in a hotel.
a) experiences b) expert
c) experience d) experiment

12 Attention to .... is essential in the job of a scientist.
a) detail b) confidence
c) sound d) voice

13 He asked me about the personal .... necessary to be a successful lawyer.
a) quantities b) habits
c) qualifications d) customs

14 To keep healthy, you should make sure you drink .... of water.
a) variety b) quality
c) plenty d) penalty

15 The popular desserts in Egyptian .... include baqlawa, basbousa and kunafa.
a) cook b) cooking
c) cooker d) cuisine

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

16 When I moved to a new town, the children found it hard to adapt .... the new school.
a) with b) of c) to d) on

17 This house would be suitable .... a large family.
a) to b) for c) at d) with

18 I like your new car. How much did you pay .... it?
a) for b) with c) by d) at

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

19 Give me your honest opinion. The synonym of the word "**honest**" is ....
a) trustful b) dishonest c) inspiring
d) faithful e) candid

20 They waited for something exciting to happen. The antonym of the word "**exciting**" is ....
a) inspiring b) thrilling c) bored
d) boring e) dull

21 She was described as a loyal friend of the Princess. The antonym of the word "**loyal**" is ....
a) disloyal b) faithful c) unfaithful
d) boring e) exciting



Language

Reported Questions

عند تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتى:

١) يتحـول فعـل القـول said إلى: asked – wondered – wanted to know – inquired

- Ali said, "When will you travel?"
- Ali asked (wondered – wanted to know – inquired) when I would travel.
- She said to me, "How long have you stayed in Luxor?"
- She asked me how long I had stayed in Luxor.

لاحظ أنه عند وجود مفعول لا يمكن استخدام wondered – wanted to know – inquired ونستخدم asked فقط.

٢) إذا بدأ السؤال بفعـل مسـاعـد أو ناقـص تحـذف علامات الاقتباس ونربـط بـ if أو whether.

- She said, "Have you enjoyed the journey?"
- She wanted to know if/whether I had enjoyed the journey.

٣) إذا بدأ السؤال بـأداة استفهـام نربـط بنفس الأداة.

- The teacher said to us, "Why are you making so much noise?"
- The teacher asked us why we were making so much noise.

٤) يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبـرية (تقدم الفاعل على الفعل) مع ملاحظة حـذف do – does ويصبح الفعل (ماضيًا بسيطًا) وتحـذف did ويصبـح الفعـل (ماضيًا تـامًا).

- Nour said, "How did you go out in such bad weather?"
- Nour wondered how I had gone out in such bad weather.

٥) الضمائر داخل علامات الاقتباس تتحول حسب الضمائر خارجها كما سبق ذكره.

٦) يتغير الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضى داخل علامات الاقتباس إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا.

٧) مع ملاحظة أن الأزمنة داخل علامات الاقتباس تبقى كما هى إذا كان فعل القول مضارعـًا (ask – asks) أو عند وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل منذ فترة قصيرة جدًا (just now) أو كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة.

٨) تحـول الكلمات الدالة على الزمان والمكان كما سبق ذكره.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He asked if .... help him.
   a) can he b) could I c) I can d) I could
2. She asked me .... she could help me with my homework.
   a) whether b) weather c) that d) what
3. My father .... me when I had posted the letter to my sister.
   a) wanted to know b) asked c) told d) said
4. He asked me .... I had travelled by train to Alexandria.
   a) if b) how c) where d) weather
5. He wants to know if .... her lessons now.
   a) she was studying b) was she studying
   c) she is studying d) is she studying

Important Notes

من الممكن أن يتحول فعل القول said إلى بعض الكلمات حسب معنى الجملة كما يلى:

❶ فى جملة العرض تتحول said إلى offered to + inf. كما يلى:

Subject + offered to + inf.

- He said, "Can I help you?"
  = He offered to help me.

❷ فى جملة الاقتراح تتحول said إلى suggested كما يلى:

Subject + suggest + (v-ing)

Subject + suggest + that + subject + (should) + inf.

- He said, "What about playing football today?"
  = He suggested playing football that day.
  = He suggested that we (should) play football that day.

❸ فى جملة الاتهام تتحول said إلى accused كما يلى:

Subject + accused مفعول of + (v-ing)/noun

- The police said to the criminal, "You have killed the woman on purpose."
  = The police accused the criminal of killing the woman on purpose.

❹ في جملة الإنكار تتحول said إلى denied كما يلي:

Subject + denied + (v-ing)
Subject + denied that + جملة

- The thief said, "I didn't steal the money."
  = The thief denied stealing the money.
  = The thief denied that he had stolen the money.

❺ في جملة الاعتذار تتحول said إلى apologised كما يلي:

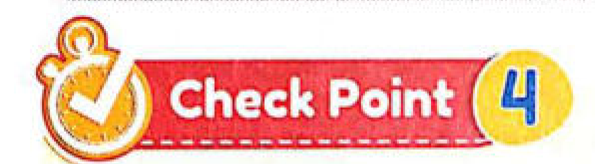
Subject + apologised for + (v-ing)
Subject + apologised to + object + for + (v-ing)
Subject + apologised that + جملة

- Amal said, "I'm sorry I didn't do my homework."
  = Amal apologised for not doing her homework.
  = Amal apologised that she hadn't done her homework.
- He said to his teacher, "I'm sorry for coming late."
  = He apologised to his teacher for coming late.

❻ في جملة النصيحة تتحول said إلى advised كما يلي:

Subject + advised (مفعول) + to + inf.

- My mother said to me, "You should study hard."
  = My mother advised me to study hard.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hend promised .... me if I needed any help.
   a) helping b) to help c) not to help d) helped
2. Ali suggested that he .... go to the theatre that night.
   a) can b) shall c) should d) must
3. Ramy denied .... the new vase.
   a) broke b) breaking c) break d) to break
4. I apologised to my teacher .... late.
   a) that come b) for coming c) to coming d) that had come
5. He tried to make me play the match, but I .... to play it.
   a) denied b) agreed c) told d) refused

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wondered if he .... many points.
   a) will score b) could score c) has scored d) scores
2. She asked me .... I scored a good goal.
   a) that b) not to c) if d) to
3. He told me just now that he .... a holiday next week.
   a) would have b) was having c) had had d) will have
4. He asked me if .... to the cinema the week before.
   a) had I gone b) I had gone c) did I go d) I will go
5. He asked if I knew that ....
   a) had she been ill b) she has been ill
   c) she had been ill d) has she been ill
6. Huda asked Hala .... she was doing anything the next day.
   a) unless b) whether c) without d) what
7. My grandfather asked me whether I .... ice cream or cola.
   a) am preferring b) have preferred
   c) preferred d) will prefer
8. Mr Ashraf .... me if my parents knew where I was.
   a) wanted to know b) wondered
   c) inquired d) asked
9. He said that he .... his grandparents yesterday.
   a) had visited b) visited c) would visit d) was visited
10. He told me that he .... the match the day before.
    a) played b) has played c) had played d) would play
11. I asked Yousra if she was enjoying the book she ....
    a) read b) was reading c) will read d) would read
12. He wonders why I .... them all about our plan.
    a) have told b) had told c) was telling d) were telling

13 I want to know if .... at school now.

a) does he b) has he c) he is d) is he

14 Nora has just asked me how long .... to finish my work.

a) will I take b) I had taken c) did I take d) I will take

15 Can you please tell me where ....?

a) is the station b) the station is
c) has the station d) was the station

16 The policeman said, ".................. park your car in this area."

a) Not to b) To c) Don't d) Mustn't

17 She .... me to have some rest to be able to continue my work.

a) said b) advised c) inquired d) denied

18 My wife suggested that our son .... foreign languages.

a) had studied b) studying
c) has studied d) should study

19 Ahmed usually asks me if I .... English or French.

a) prefers b) prefer
c) had preferred d) could prefer

20 Maha .... stealing the money. She said she didn't steal it.

a) suggested b) accused
c) refused d) denied

21 He wanted to know .... the cause of the accident was.

a) why b) what c) which d) how

22 Can you .... me why your brother left us?

a) ask b) say
c) tell d) want to know

23 When the teacher met us, he .... about our exam results.

a) wanted to know b) told
c) inquired d) wandered

24 Eman .... me about my recent salary.

a) said b) asked
c) inquired d) explained

25 Ali suggested that he .... with us to the meeting.

a) go b) goes c) going d) to go

2 Fill in the space:

1. Our teacher asked us to do research on some birds and animals. He ....(a).............. us some questions to help us. He ....(b).............. to know if all birds have feathers. Also, he asked ....(c).............. the bird has the ability to lay eggs or not. He advised us ....(d).............. read books about animals and birds in the library and on the internet.

2. I had an interview for a job last week. The interviewer ....(a).............. me that he would contact me two days after. I phoned the company and they..............(b).............. that they hadn't contacted anybody. I told them that I ....(c).............. waiting for their call for a long time. They said that the manager had travelled abroad and they ....(d).............. to contact candidates as soon as he came back.

3. When I told my teacher that my family and I were going for our holiday, he asked me some questions. He wanted to know when we ....(a).............. leave. He asked me ....(b).............. we were going to stay. He ....(c).............. if we were staying for long. At last, he asked me how we ....(d).............. travelling.

4. From time to time we should have some rest and some exercise. Many people ....(a).............. that we cannot go on working without stopping. If we did not, we ....(b).............. make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse. The person ....(c).............. works a lot may lose the ability to think clearly and won't have the energy to go on working. ....(d).............. forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed.

Life Skills

Asking about someone's dream job	*Answer*
• What would you like to be in the future?	• I would like to be ...... in the future.
• Can you tell us about your dream job?	• My dream job is ......
• Could you tell me what your dream job is?	• I dream of being ...... because ......
• Why would you like to be a/an ......?	



• Job skills on a CV:

When you write your CV to apply for a job, you should write the information that makes you acceptable for the job:

1. Your personal information; (name – place of birth – date of birth – address – marital statue .....)
2. List your skills and personal qualities.
3. Write about your experience and the things you have done.
4. Personal statement where you have to describe yourself by including your skills in sentences.
5. List your hobbies, interests and free time activities.



An essay about my dream job

Everyone of us surely has a dream to be achieved in his/her life. As for me, I always dream of becoming a doctor. This is my dream job and I am trying hard to achieve my dream. I would like to be a doctor as I want to help ill people to become healthier. Also, I can help my parents when they are sick. I would really like to be a surgeon like Dr. Magdi Yacoub who has made great achievements in the field of heart surgery.

To become a successful doctor, I think that I have to read a lot of books because doctors are required to know well about the human body. Also, I have to study English and many other languages very hard because most of the medical terms are in English. Above all,
I have to make a constant effort in my secondary study to get into the Faculty of Medicine as it is the first step to be a doctor.

I think I have the qualities to be a successful doctor. I am patient with people and I will be patient with the sick. I am working hard as I like my work and I always want to be better. I also have the ability to love and serve those who are sick or in need.

Speaking

Talking about job opportunities:

- **What job do you like to join?**

- Imagine your friend and you are discussing about the job you would like to join.

- You can visit the website https://www.kaplaninternational.com/blog/how-to-talk about-jobs-and-careers to get more advice about this subject.

- **Prepare answers for the following questions:**

1. What would you like to be? Why?

2. What qualities do you need to join the job you would like to join?

3. How important are qualifications when looking for work?

Practice

- **Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:**

Jack **:** Hi, Peter. Can you tell me a little bit about your current job?

Peter **:** Certainly. What would you like to know?

Jack **:** First of all, ...?

Peter **:** I work as a teacher of English.

Jack **:** What sort of problems do you deal with daily?

Peter **:** ....?

Jack **:** What else does your job involve?

Peter **:** ....

Jack **:** Do you ever attend meetings?

Peter **:** ....?

Jack **:** Thanks for all the information, Peter. It sounds like you have an interesting job.





General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you're looking for a job, you need to be .... in order to find one quickly.
   a) flexible b) fast c) fixed d) learner
2. A lot of patience is .... to look after a child.
   a) sounded b) explained c) required d) seemed
3. A/An .... is someone whose job is to repair water pipes, baths, toilets, etc.
   a) worker b) shop assistant c) officer d) plumber
4. My son failed the same exam twice. He can't be ....
   a) loyal b) careless c) hardworking d) annoyed
5. The synonym of the word "**main**" is ....
   a) major b) ordinary c) additional d) secondary
6. She is a new graduate. She doesn't have any .... experience.
   a) practical b) loyal c) flexible d) tiring
7. My father paid .... my new car as he promised me.
   a) for b) in c) in d) by
8. This shop has a great .... of shirts.
   a) ability b) fidelity c) variety d) hostility
9. Ali is very rich .... he has a miserable life.
   a) although b) so c) but d) and
10. They .... me whether I was ill.
    a) said b) told c) wanted to know d) asked
11. Our teacher .... that we would write all those questions.
    a) told b) said c) said to d) asked
12. She asked me if .... an apple.
    a) can she get b) she can get c) she could get d) getting
13. He didn't .... me how he would get to London.
    a) ask b) tell c) say d) inquire
14. She .... her father to get the full mark in the next exams.
    a) asked b) said c) expected d) promised
15. I didn't know .... the shop was shut or not.
    a) why b) that c) unless d) whether
16. Huda asked .... our mother had made for dinner.
    a) how b) why c) what d) when

2 Fill in the space:

Satellites are important in modern life. They have ....(a)............ it easier to forecast the weather. People can ....(b)............ warned about forest fires or floods. Farmers can plan ....(c)............ they know a storm is coming. Communication satellites transmit television and telephone signals. Up-to-date maps can be produced from satellite photographs. Our life today ....(d)............ be very different without satellites.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A small crowd had gathered round the entrance to the park. His curiosity aroused, Robert crossed the road to see what was happening. He found that the centre of attraction was an old man with a performing monkey. The monkey's tricks, he soon discovered, were in no way remarkable so, after throwing a few pennies in the dirty hat which the man had placed on the pavement. Robert began to move off, along with other members of the crowd. At this point the man suddenly let out a loud cry.

Everyone turned to see what had happened. The man was bending over his monkey, which now lay quite still on the pavement. He picked up the apparently lifeless body and, holding it close to him, began to weep. A young man stepped forward from the crowd and, taking some money from his pocket, dropped it into the hat. Robert and several other people did likewise, until the pennies in the hat were covered with silver coins. Meanwhile, the man continued to hold the dead monkey in his arms and seemed to take no notice of what was going on around him. A few months later, Robert came across the old man again in another part of the city. The man had a monkey, bought no doubt with the money which the crowd had given him. It did not, however, seem any better at its tricks than the previous one. Robert was pleased to see that the old man was still able to earn a living, though on this occasion, having partly paid for the monkey out of his own pocket, he did not feel inclined to throw any money into the hat.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The monkey's owner was ....
   a) a trickster b) honest c) sincere d) honourable
2. The writer saw the performance of the man and the monkey ....
   a) thrice b) once c) twice d) one time

3. Robert did not throw any money into the hat the second time because ....
   a) there was enough money in it already
   b) he had seen the monkey's tricks before
   c) the monkey's tricks were not very good
   d) he knew that the monkey was not really dead
4. The man used a .... to attract the people's attention.
   a) snake   b) donkey   c) monkey   d) cow
5. The phrase "**lay quite still**" meant that ....
   a) stayed without looking   b) stayed without breathing
   c) stayed without smelling   d) stayed without moving

B) Answer the following questions:

6. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.
7. Why did the crowd soon begin to move off?
8. What was the old man doing while the crowd threw money into his hat?

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. In fact, we are much luckier than our grandfathers because we enjoy lots of things which have made our life easier, more enjoyable and comfortable.
2. To solve the problem of water shortage, the world economises in using water. Another solution is re-using water; this means using water again.
3. Most people fail in life, not because they do not know their job, but because they gave up after the first failure. Failures should not discourage you.

B) Translate into English:

١- لقد أدت هذه الثورة فى استخدام أجهزة الحاسب الآلى والإنترنت إلى التوجه لتركيب أجهزة الحاسب الآلى فى كل فصل وربط كل مدرسة بشبكة الإنترنت.

٢- كلنا نحمل جوهرة ثمينة داخل الجمجمة ولا أحد يستطيع أن يصدق أنها أعظم وأكثر أهمية من أى جهاز حاسب آلى. إنه المخ والذى بدونه لا يستطيع الإنسان أن يفكر أو يتحرك.

٣- مما لا شك فيه أن المياه الملوثة غير صالحة للشرب بل وخطيرة لأنها تصيب الإنسان بالمرض وأيضًا تدمر البيئة والحيوانات والأسماك.

Enrich your Vocabulary

economise	يقتصد	shortage	نقص
failure	فشل	discourage	يمنع/لا يشجع
expansion	توسع	revolution	ثورة
gem	جوهرة	install	يركب/يثبت

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following topic:

1. A job that you think is rewarding.
2. Skills you need to be employable.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Language learners .... from using single words to short phrases and sentences.
a) graduate b) regulate
c) separate d) protect

2 They .... an agreement in which his company would pay them half the money now and half when the work was finished.
a) contracted b) distracted
c) contacted d) affected

3 The bad weather .... our plans for the weekend.
a) repaired b) reformed
c) appointed d) frustrated

4 After the accident, the .... were taken to hospital.
a) casualties b) damages
c) losses d) shortages

5 The driver had lost control and the car .... toward the cliff.
a) steeped b) jogged
c) careered d) competed

6 The meaning of this sentence depends on the .... of the words.
a) part b) construction
c) section d) reflection

7 We are going to carry out the project despite its .... risks.
a) follower b) attendant
c) correspondent d) slight

8 Wearing this stylish suit will make you feel ....
a) confident b) shameful
c) annoyed d) exhausted

9 The report was well-researched and showed a high .... of accuracy.
a) degree b) angle
c) curve d) loop

10 The hotel clerk .... the guests that their valuables would be safe.
a) insured b) reassured
c) complained d) presented

11 I didn't know where .... for the weekend.

a) went
b) going
c) to go
d) he can go

12 I wish I .... my friend last week.

a) will meet
b) to meet
c) met
d) had met

13 I don't have any idea .... had the accident.

a) what
b) who
c) where
d) why

14 .... watching the match made me happy, it wasted my time.

a) Despite
b) Because
c) Although
d) For

15 The man wasn't .... to have a very good house and a car.

a) too rich
b) rich enough
c) enough poor
d) too poor

16 I was sure that he .... to visit us in a short time.

a) would come
b) will come
c) to come
d) comes

17 They .... the truth until we had visited them.

a) didn't tell
b) couldn't tell
c) don't tell
d) weren't telling

18 They haven't .... completed the form to apply for the job.

a) never
b) already
c) just
d) yet

19 .... Mona have any problem, call me at once.

a) If
b) Unless
c) Should
d) Were

20 Ali was said .... an accident on the high way last week.

a) to have
b) to have had
c) that have
d) having

Test 4 Based on Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In Germany, car .... helps to employ a lot of people.
a) construction b) industry c) makes d) building

2 Generally, our children must be treated with ....
a) suffering b) compassion c) cruelty d) consolidation

3 Employees must be able to get along with all kinds of people in .... situations which need wisdom.
a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) qualified

4 Army officers have to do intensive .... regularly.
a) apprenticeship b) degree c) attendant d) training

5 Candidates should have training and .... experience in basic electronics.
a) practical b) clear c) qualified d) obvious

6 Students come from a variety .... different areas.
a) from b) at c) of d) with

7 He .... his father was happy to hear about his success.
a) told b) asked c) wanted to know d) said

8 He said he .... love to visit us again.
a) would b) had c) will d) could

9 I have just told my son that I .... him a car next week.
a) would buy b) was buying c) will buy d) bought

10 Leila said that she .... her clothes then.
a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) has cleaned d) would clean

11 Hany was in Tanta for one week. His brother asked him what he .... there.
a) has been doing b) does c) had been doing d) is doing

12 They .... going to the library and I thought it was a good idea.
a) suggested b) told c) said d) ordered

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

13 The main reason for living here is the weather. The synonym of the word "**main**" is ....
a) major b) secondary c) minor d) leading e) dependable

14 I bought shoes with flexible rubber soles. The antonym of the word "**flexible**" is ....
a) adjustable b) dependable c) rigid d) inflexible e) disloyal

15 Fill in the space:

When I returned home, I was surprised. There were no lights, so I ....(a).............. I must have been late for home. ....(b).............. I went in, there was no one in the living room, so I thought that they might have gone to bed. When I came near my brother's room, I heard a noise, so I said he ....(c).............. be asleep. However, when I went into his room, I found him asleep, so he might ....(d).............. slept while watching something.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you had your choice, would you rather sit in an office all day to make a living or work from the comfort of your own home? Nowadays, more and more businesses are allowing employees to work at least part of the week from home. The idea of "**telecommuting**" isn't that new and for many it's been technically possible since the Internet became widely accessible. Some employers, however, have been less willing to allow the practice for fear that employees who were not being watched would become lazy and undisciplined. Actually, recent evidence has shown that these fears are mostly unjustified and that businesses can actually save a lot of money on rent by converting more of their staff over to telecommuters. In a normal telecommuting situation, a worker will be given assignments and asked to complete them or report on them, as in any other office job.

The major difference is that most communication is done using the telephone, email and instant messaging. Some employers allow workers to choose which hours they will work, others require them to be online during a normal work day. Either way, most telecommuters have the freedom to work from home or wherever else they would like. Yet telecommuters often find that their freedom comes with a cost.

Those who work outside the office may discover that their employers are more willing to ask them to work long or strange hours. In situations where there are other family members at home, it can be difficult to keep work life and home life separate. They don't spend enough quality time with those whom they look after.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 What does the word '**telecommuting**' mean?

a) Travelling on the train.
b) Playing games on the internet.
c) Doing business online.
d) Working from the office.

17 What does the underlined words 'quality time' refer to?
a) Time spent with children at home.
b) Time spent with friends at a café.
c) Time spent with employers.
d) Time spent with your colleagues at work.

18 Which one of the following is the passage mainly about?
a) Why people can telecommute more easily today than in the past.
b) Why more companies are choosing to allow employees to telecommute.
c) The benefits companies can get from having telecommuters.
d) The way telecommuters do their jobs from home using the internet.

19 What changes a company is likely to make in response to telecommuting trends?
a) The concept of a "work week" is disappearing from many people's lives.
b) Advertising for new employees on more internet websites than in newspapers.
c) Giving out holiday bonuses for office employees.
d) Providing employees with new mobiles.

20 Some employers fear that telecommuting may make some of employees ....
a) active b) not active c) energetic d) powerful

B) Answer the following questions:

21 If you were offered a job as a telecommuter, would you accept it? Why? Why not?
22 Why are some employers not in favour of telecommuting?
23 How can telecommuters communicate with their employers?

24 Translate into English:

- إن استصلاح المزيد من الصحراء وتطوير طرق الزراعة الحديثة لإنتاج المزيد من المحاصيل هما الحل الإيجابى لمشكلة الزيادة السكانية والمجاعة.

25 Translate into Arabic:

It is the responsibility of parents, school and universities to enlighten young people on the destructive effects of drug taking and bad company.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

How we can prepare young people for their future employment.

Unit 11 Amazing people

Objectives

Reading : An article about athletes with disabilities
Writing : A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview
Listening : A radio interview about equal opportunities
Speaking : Making complaints and polite responses
Language : Relative clauses
Life Skills : Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation





Famous athletes with disabilities.

★ **Arunima Sinha**

- Volleyball Player

★ **Ron Santo**

- Baseball Player

★ **Anthony Robles**

- Wrestler

★ **Karim El-Mosallamy**

- Horse riding- table tennis – hand ball

What kind of medal did the Egyptian athlete win?

....

....

....



Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

achieve (v) – d	يحقق/ينجز	medal (n)	ميدالية
achievement (n)	إنجاز	muscle (n)	عضلة
activist (n)	ناشط	polio (n)	شلل الأطفال
campaign (v) – ed	يقوم بعمل حملة	powerlifter (n)	لاعب رفع الأثقال
compete (v) – d	يتنافس	powerlifting (n)	رفع الأثقال
disability (n)	إعاقة	ramp (n)	منحدر
fighting (n)	قتال	spina bifida	تشقق العمود الفقري
highs and lows (n)	نجاحات وإخفاقات	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
Kung Fu (n)	رياضة الكونج فو		

Vocabulary on Reading

affect (v) – ed	يؤثر على	decide (v) – d	يقرر
amazing (adj)	مذهل	describe (v) – d	يصف
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	equal (adj)	متساوٍ
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	especially (adv)	خصوصًا
benefits (n)	فوائد	event (n)	حدث هام
champion (n)	بطل رياضي	impact (n)	تأثير
complaint (n)	شكوى	involve (v) – d	يتضمن

media (n)	الإعلام
member (n)	عضو
metal disc	قرص معدنى
opportunity (n)	فرصة
organisation (n)	منظمة
Paralympic (adj)	باراليمبى
personally (adv)	شخصيًا
positive (adj)	إيجابى
practice (n)	تدريب
race (n)	سباق
retire (v) – d	يتقاعد/يعتزل

Vocabulary on Listening

actually (adv)	بالفعل
awful (adj)	فظيع
campaigner (n)	مدافع/مؤيد
campus (n)	الحرم الجامعى
chance (n)	فرصة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية
dedicate (v) – d	يكرس
determination (n)	تصميم
ensure (v) – d	يؤكد
existing (adj)	موجود
guess (v) – ed	يخمن
guest (n)	ضيف/نزيل
inspire (v) – d	يلهم
issue (n)	قضية/موضوع
notice (v) – d	يلاحظ
outstanding (adj)	مميز/بارز
paperwork (n)	عمل ورقى
Paralympian (n)	لاعب باراليمبى
physical (adj)	بدنى
podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية
preserve (v) – d	يحافظ
promote (v) – d	يرقى
require (v) – d	يتطلب
sacrifices (n)	تضحيات
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مجال
challenge (n) (v) – d	تحد/يتحدى
colleague (n)	زميل عمل
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات
flights (n)	رحلات طيران
lift (v) – ed (n)	يرفع/مصعد
main (adj)	رئيسي/أساسي
marketing (n)	تسويق
owner (n)	مالك
passenger (n)	راكب
snowboarding (n)	التزلج على الجليد
success (n)	نجاح

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

above heads	فوق الرءوس
arrange an interview	يرتب مقابلة
come fourth in the competition	يأتي في المركز الرابع في المسابقة
do/play sport	يمارس الرياضة
get around	يتجول
get from … to …	ينتقل من مكان إلى …
give a talk	يلقي خطابًا
add to	يضيف إلى
in charge of	مسئول عن
make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا
make it difficult to	يجعلها صعبة
play in a wheelchair	يلعب على كرسي متحرك
win a medal	يفوز بميدالية
wider range of	مجموعة كبيرة من
campaign for	يدافع عن
compete in	يتنافس في
battle against	يكافح ضد
benefits of	فوائد لـ
fight with	يقاتل بـ
go up	يصعد/يرتفع
impact on	تأثير على
member of	عضو في
refer to	يشير إلى
complain about	يشكو من

effect on	تأثير على	take part in	يشارك في
retire from	يتقاعد/يعتزل من	think about	يفكر في
successful in/at	ناجح في	try to	يحاول أن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف/ يفعل	action activist	سلوك/ تمثيل ناشط	active	نشيط
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
campaign	يطالب بـ/يناصر	campaign campaigner	حملة مُدافع/مؤيد	------------------------------	
compete	يتنافس	competition	منافسة	competitive	تنافسي
determine	يحدد	determination	عزم/تصميم	determined	عازم/مصمم
disable	يُعطل/يوقف	disability	إعاقة	disabled	معاق
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهم
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
retire	يتقاعد	retirement	تقاعد	retired	متقاعد



Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a champion[1] in Kung Fu and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible[2] car accident, he now has a disability[3] which means he has to use a wheelchair. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport. He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis. He has competed[4] in many international wheelchair tennis competitions and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing achievement[5], but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to stay fit, and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

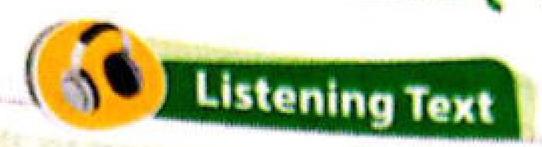
Amany Ali

Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter[6] who won a bronze medal in the 2016 Paralympic Games in Brazil in 2016. Amany had an illness called polio[7] when she was younger and this affected the muscles[8] in her feet. She did not start powerlifting until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She achieved her Paralympic success[9] in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also came fourth in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.

(1) بطل
(2) رهيب
(3) إعاقة
(4) تنافس
(5) إنجاز
(6) لاعب رفع الأثقال
(7) شلل الأطفال
(8) عضلات
(9) نجاح
(10) متسابق
(11) حالة
(12) بما فيها
(13) تقاعد

Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a British Paralympian wheelchair racer[10] who has a medical condition[11] called spina bifida. She is unable to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in Seoul in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in athletics events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including[12] 11 gold medals. Since she retired[13] from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different organisations which help people, especially disabled people and women, to enjoy the benefits of sports.



Pre-listening question:

- What do we mean when we talk about 'equal opportunities'?

Nadia : Hello everyone and welcome to the podcast[1]. Every week we talk to a different guest[2] about their job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity activist[3] from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities campaigner[4] for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.

Leila : Great to be here, Nadia.

Nadia : So tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

Leila : I'm from Alexandria, which is a city in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

Nadia : What did you study?

Leila : I studied sociology[5] which I found really interesting.

Nadia : And how did you get into working for charities[6] supporting equal opportunities? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it?

Leila : No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant[7] job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference[8] – that's why I love it so much. I started campaigning for disabled people when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a wheelchair. I noticed[9] that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and hardly any lifts[10] or ramps to help disabled people get from one floor to the next.

Nadia : Wow. That's awful[11].

Leila : Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to make changes in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were in charge[12] of the university about the issue[13] and they did.

(1)	إذاعة صوتية
(2)	ضيف/زائر
(3)	ناشط خيري
(4)	مناضل/مدافع
(5)	علم الاجتماع
(6)	مؤسسات خيرية
(7)	رائع
(8)	يحدث فرقًا
(9)	لاحظ
(10)	مصاعد
(11)	سيئ
(12)	كانوا مسئولين عن
(13)	مشكلة

Nadia **:** What happened next?

Leila **:** Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the campus [14] or change existing buildings.

Nadia **:** That's excellent.

Leila **:** When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really interesting.

Nadia **:** But, now you campaign for equal opportunities for a wider range of people – not just people with disabilities – is that right?

Leila **:** Yes, that's right. Now I work for an organisation [15] called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to ensure that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same chances [16] in life.

Nadia **:** That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job?

Leila **:** Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but, in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do paperwork [17] too, you know!

(14) حرم الجامعي
(15) منظمة
(16) فرص
(17) عمال كتابية

Post-listening question:

- What does the organisation which Leila currently works for do?

Workbook Text

Wheelchair tennis

Some amazing athletes compete in different sports even when they have a disability. For example, some play tennis in wheelchairs. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong muscles in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few achieve as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold medals between 2000 and 2012.

Olympic sports

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as cycling and swimming. Some of the most famous Olympians are runners such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, windsurfing became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and snowboarding in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, powerlifting. That means that great Egyptian powerlifter, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

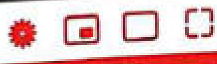
Video Script

To become an award-winning[1] Paralympian is an outstanding[2] achievement. These athletes battle[3] against physical[4] disabilities to prove[5] their strength[6], stamina[7] and determination[8].

Competing in the Paralympics often means a life dedicated[9] to training and often requires[10] a lot of sacrifices[11] to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring.

Many Paralympians inspire people to persevere[12] to achieve their dreams. They often dedicate their time to promoting[13] their sport and helping young people find opportunities to train.

- الحائز على جائزة (1)
- رائع (2)
- يكافح (3)
- جسدى (4)
- يثبت (5)
- قوة (6)
- القدرة على التحمل (7)
- عزم/إرادة (8)
- مخصصة (9)
- تتطلب (10)
- التضحيات (11)
- يثابر/يصر (12)
- تعزيز (13)



0:00



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My daughter wants to be a/an .... to be able to save the world from pollution.
a) athlete b) powerlifter c) activist d) runner

2 Alexandria Governorate started a .... to stop people throwing rubbish on the beach.
a) campaign b) course c) flight d) war

3 .... is an ancient Chinese fighting art in which you attack people with your hands and feet.
a) Handball b) Kung Fu c) Boxing d) Snorkelling

4 The engineers designed new buses equipped with a platform and a .... to help people in wheelchairs.
a) cliff b) runway c) ramp d) landslide

5 We respect Dr Magdi Yocoub because he .... his life to his country.
a) share b) brought c) participated d) dedicated

Focus on Vocabulary

achieve يحقق	to be successful in doing something good
achievement إنجاز	a something good that you have successfully done
activist ناشط	someone who tries to change things
campaign يقوم بعمل حملة	to work in an organised way to change things
compete يتنافس	to take part in a race or a competition
medal ميدالية	a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport

muscle عضلة	something inside your body that you use when you move
powerlifting رفع الأثقال	a sport where people lift weights above their heads
ramp منحدر	something that goes up from one level to the next
wheelchair كرسي متحرك	a chair with wheels used by someone who can't walk
highs and lows نجاحات وإخفاقات	refer to successful and unsuccessful times.
Kung Fu رياضة الكونج فو	a Chinese sport which involves fighting with your hands and feet
spina bifida تشقق العمود الفقري	a serious condition in which a person's spine does not develop correctly before they are born, so that their spinal cord is not protected
polio شلل الأطفال	a serious infectious disease of the nerves in the spine, that often results in someone being permanently unable to move particular muscles

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
amazing (adj)	مذهل	astonishing	believable	معقول
compete (v)	يتنافس	contest	surrender	يستسلم
difference (n)	اختلاف	distinction/ variation	similarity	تشابه
inspire (v) – d	يلهم	stimulate	discourage/ depress	يثبط
personally (adv)	شخصيًا	privately/ individually	generally	عمومًا
physical (adj)	بدني	bodily	mental	عقلي

Notes on Vocabulary

play go do

تستخدم (play) غالبًا مع الألعاب الجماعية التى تستخدم فيها الكرة:

play
(football – basketball – hockey – soccer – tennis – squash - table-tennis – rackets – ping pong - volleyball)

- I used to play basketball when I was in high school.

تستخدم (go) غالبًا مع الرياضات التى تنتهى بـ (ing):

go
(swimming, jogging جرى بطئ = slow running, sailing, dancing water-skiing, running, scuba-diving, riding, hunting, climbing)

- My grandfather and I go sailing every time I visit him.

مع ملاحظة أنه يمكن استخدام الفعل نفسه من اسم الرياضة

تستخدم do غالبًا مع الرياضات التى لا تحتاج إلى أدوات لممارستها:

do
(gymnastics/karate/athletics/sports)

وتستخدم (do/play) مع كلمة (sport) :

- Do you do any sports?

- Yes, I play hockey.

يمكن استخدام (been) بدلًا من (gone) مع الرياضات المنتهية بـ (ing):

- Have you ever gone swimming?
- Have you ever been swimming?

event incident

event — حدث (هام وشيق وغالبًا يتم فيه اجتماع الناس)

- The signing of the peace treaty was a historic event.

incident — حدث عابر (أحداث القصص والأفلام والمباريات)

- There have been several violent incidents at football matches recently.

either ... or

Either + (الفاعل الأول) + or + (الفاعل الثانى) + (فعل الجملة يتبع الفاعل الثانى) إما .... أو ....

- Either I or my cousin is going to attend the meeting.

من الممكن استخدام either فى نهاية الجملة المنفية :

- Ola isn't at school today and Marwa isn't either.

amazed amazing

amazed (adj) مندهش

- Ali was amazed by the story.

amazing (adj) مدهش

- The story was amazing.
- You have won the gold medal. You are amazing, Adel.

campaign (for/ against)

campaign for يقوم بحملة لصالح

- He is busy campaigning for re-election and did not have time to discuss the new problems.

campaign against يقوم بحملة ضد

- A group of people is campaigning against the destruction of the rainforests.

compete (for/ to/ against/ with/ in/ at)

compete for يتنافس من أجل

- The stores have to compete for customers in the Christmas season.

compete to ينافس لـ

- Several companies are competing to get the contract.

compete against يتنافس ضد

- I had to compete against 19 other people for the job.

compete with يتنافس مع

- They found themselves competing with foreign companies for a share of the market.

compete in/at يتنافس/يشارك فى

- How many runners will be competing in the marathon?
- Professional athletes may now compete at the Olympics.



Language Notes

1. Some play tennis in wheelchairs.

من الممكن استخدام some كضمير فاعل بمعنى البعض وتتبع بفعل مفرد إذا كانت تشير إلى اسم لا يعد أو تتبع بفعل جمع إذا كانت تشير إلى اسم جمع.

2. But few achieve as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands.

لاحظ استخدام the قبل أسماء الدول الجمع.

3. Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter who has won a bronze medal. She did not start powerlifting until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport.

لاحظ أن الرياضات التى تنتهى بـ ing عادة ما يبدأ اسم الرياضى منها بـ er.

4. Do you know anyone who works for a charity or another organisation that tries to help people – either personally or from the media?

لاحظ either تستخدم مع or للتخيير بين شخصين أو شيئين فى الإثبات.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Visitors to the city can .... sailing off the island.
   a) play b) go
   c) do d) make

2. My friends .... scuba diving in the Red Sea last week.
   a) played b) went
   c) gave d) made

3. It is impossible for Hazem to miss a sporting .... in his town.
   a) incident b) accident
   c) event d) happening

4. She is an .... student. She answers all questions accurately.
   a) amazed b) amazing
   c) amazingly d) amazement

5. Either Ali .... his friends like playing football as they prefer chess.
   a) or b) nor
   c) and d) than

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My daughter eventually .... her goal of becoming a flight attendant.
a) achieved
b) campaigned
c) competed
d) improved

2 Environmental .... accused the factories owners of dumping waste into the Nile.
a) competitors
b) fighters
c) communicators
d) activists

3 Because of his ...., he depended on his wife to dress and feed him.
a) achievement
b) disability
c) competition
d) organisation

4 He was one of the people who .... to change the law of old rents.
a) achieved
b) improved
c) campaigned
d) inspired

5 Karam Gaber won two Olympic .... in wrestling.
a) rewards
b) medals
c) cup
d) models

6 Regular exercise will help strengthen your ....
a) muscles
b) lungs
c) brain
d) cells

7 My friend had an accident and as a result he'll be in a .... for the rest of his life.
a) wheelhouse
b) moving chair
c) condition
d) wheelchair

8 .... are needed at exits and entrances for wheelchair users.
a) Stairs
b) Cliffs
c) Ramps
d) Swings

9 Mohamed Salah is a/an .... player to watch at football matches.
a) amazed
b) amazing
c) amazement
d) amaze

10 Manchester United F.C. was knocked out of the .... in the quarterfinal.
a) competition
b) campaign
c) race
d) event

11 The issue of "**unemployment**" has been much discussed in the ....

a) public
b) internet
c) radio
d) media

12 A lot of .... around the world sent aid to the flood victims.

a) competitors
b) campaigners
c) charities
d) campaign

13 If you can't remember the meaning of a word, try to .... it.

a) know
b) read
c) guess
d) think

14 My son wanted to .... his French in order to get a job in Paris.

a) inspire
b) improve
c) raise
d) push

15 Every team needs a leader who is able to .... its members.

a) push
b) conspire
c) inspire
d) press

16 The show was organised in order to raise money for ....

a) right
b) correction
c) true
d) charity

17 The government should exert more efforts to .... the safety of the racers.

a) ensure
b) encourage
c) require
d) inspire

18 We believe that all governments should .... for supporting scientific research.

a) help
b) collect
c) look
d) campaign

19 The company sales improved greatly after a/an .... campaign.

a) determination
b) political
c) marketing
d) sale

20 If we lost this match, we would be out of the ....

a) championship
b) practice
c) media
d) training

21 .... is a serious infectious disease of the nerves in the spine, that often results in someone being permanently unable to move particular muscles.

a) Spina bifida
b) Polio
c) Influenza
d) AIDS

22 While she was waiting for the train, she .... a handbag under a bench.

a) noticed
b) knew
c) looked
d) founded

23 .... sports is a must for young people to keep healthy.

a) Making
b) Solving
c) Doing
d) Committing

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

24 England and Germany are in .... Europe.

a) north
b) northerly
c) northern
d) northerner

25 The kids seem to fight .... each other constantly.

a) by
b) to
c) with
d) at

26 She started a campaign .... equal rights between women and men.

a) to
b) with
c) in
d) for

27 Disabled people can play tennis .... wheelchairs.

a) in
b) on
c) for
d) at

28 Abo Trika retired .... playing football few years ago.

a) of
b) from
c) in
d) with

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

29 The word "**difference**" is similar in meaning to the word ....

a) similarity
b) distinction
c) contest
d) stimulation
e) variation

30 The synonym of the word "**personally**" is ....

a) mentally
b) practically
c) generally
d) privately
e) individually

31 He inspired many young people to study their lessons hard. The antonym of the word "**inspired**" is ....

a) discouraged
b) stimulated
c) competed
d) depressed
e) surrendered



Relative clauses

هي الجمل التي تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها، وضمائر الوصل هي:

who/that	whom/that	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر في الجملة الثانية.

غالبًا ما يأتي ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

Defining relative clauses give necessary information about a person or thing.

هناك نوعان من عبارات الوصل:

١- عبارات الوصل المُحدِّدة تعطي معلومات ضرورية عن شخص أو شيء.

- Mr Nader is the person that/who teaches us maths.
- Al Ahram is the newspaper that/which I read every day.

Non-defining relative clauses (with commas) give us more information about a person or thing.

٢- عبارات الوصل غير المحدِّدة (مع الفاصلات) تعطينا معلومات إضافية عن شخص أو شيء .

- Mr Nader, who teaches us maths, will be absent tomorrow.
- Al Ahram, which is a daily newspaper, is read by millions of people.

who = that

تحل محل فاعل عاقل وتوضع بعد الفاعل الذي تصفه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها .

- Ahmed is my friend. He teaches English well.

  Ahmed, who teaches English well, is my friend.
- This is the boy. He broke the vase.

  This is the boy who (that) broke the vase.

whom = who = that

تحل محل مفعول عاقل ويأتى بعدها الفاعل، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منهما.

- Ahmed is my brother. You met him yesterday.
  Ahmed, whom (who) you met yesterday, is my brother.

يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول (يأتى بعده جملة).

- That's the man. You are talking about.
  That's the man (whom/who/that) you are talking about.
  That's the man you are talking about.



عند وجود حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل مع العاقل نستخدم whom فقط وليس who – that.

- That's the man about whom you are talking.

اسم عاقل **who - that** + فعل

اسم عاقل **whom - who - that** + فاعل + فعل

اسم عاقل + حرف جر **whom** + فاعل + فعل

which = that

تحل محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل وتوضع بعد الاسم الذى تصفه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها.

- The books are all mine. They are on the shelf.
  The books which are on the shelf are all mine. (بعدها فعل فهى تحل محل الفاعل)
- I opened the window. It overlooks the garden.
  I opened the window which (that) overlooks the garden.
- The book is useful. You read it.
  The book which (that) you read is useful. (بعدها فاعل فهى تحل محل المفعول)
  The book you read is useful.

لاحظ فى المثال السابق إذا حلت which محل المفعول (و جاءت بعدها جملة) يمكن حذفها.

- He bought a new car. He drove us to the cinema with it.
  = He bought a new car which he drove us to the cinema with.
  = He bought a new car with which he drove us to the cinema.

لاحظ فى المثال السابق يبقى حرف الجر كما هو بعد الفعل أو يستخدم قبل (which) وليس that.



Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Charles Dickens, ... was born in 1812, was a famous English writer.
   a) who b) whom c) whose d) when
2. The house, ... was built in 1889, was famous for its huge entrance.
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
3. The car for .... I paid a lot of money is very high tech.
   a) that b) who c) which d) that
4. I like the manager .... kind and co-operative.
   a) who b) who's c) whose d) that
5. The pen .... you are writing is my brother's.
   a) where b) which c) with whom d) with which

whose

تستخدم للملكية (عاقل وغير عاقل) وتحل محل ('s) أو صفة الملكية (his, her, its, their)

- The boy got high marks. His father is a teacher.
  = The boy whose father is a teacher got high marks.
- My uncle travelled abroad. We live in his house.
  = My uncle in whose house we live travelled abroad.

لاحظ: يمكن استخدام حرف الجر قبلها ولا تستخدم that بدلاً منها.

where

تستخدم مع المكان .

- This is the house. We live here now.
  = This is the house where we live now.
- Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live there.
  = Alexandria is a nice city where I like to live.

لاحظ: عند وجود حرف جر يدل على المكان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم where

- Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live in it.
  = Alexandria is a nice city in which I like to live.
  = Alexandria is a nice city which I like to live in.

لاحظ: نستخدم which مع المكان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث داخل المكان.

- This is the house. It was built last year.
  = This is the house which was built last year.

when

تستخدم مع الزمن (الوقت).

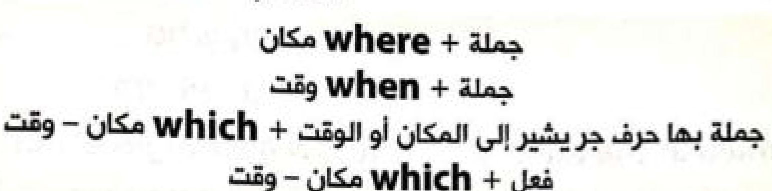
- Summer is a hot season. We usually go to Alexandria in summer.
  = Summer is a hot season when we usually go to Alexandria.

لاحظ: عند وجود حرف جر يدل على الزمان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم when

- This is the time at which I like to have my lunch.

لاحظ: نستخدم which مع الزمان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث في ذلك الوقت

- Summer is the time which is very hot.


جملة + **where** مكان
جملة + **when** وقت
جملة بها حرف جر يشير إلى المكان أو الوقت + **which** مكان – وقت
فعل + **which** مكان – وقت



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He has a beautiful son .... name is Osama.
   a) whose b) which
   c) whom d) that
2. The company .... he works in is one of the biggest companies in Egypt.
   a) whom b) that
   c) where d) which
3. I still remember the day .... I received my first prize.
   a) where b) which
   c) in which d) when
4. Can you name the place .... you were born and lived?
   a) whose b) which
   c) whom d) where
5. I made a mistake .... I apologised to my dad.
   a) at which b) on which
   c) for which d) which for

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I want you to know the name of the actor .... played the role of King Lear.
a) which
b) whose
c) whom
d) who

2 My cousin Jehan, ... lives on my street, always has a problem with her neighbours.
a) whose
b) who
c) where
d) whom

3 The dog barked at the time .... it saw a stranger entering the house.
a) where
b) when
c) which
d) whose

4 Egypt is the land .... people of different cultures can live peacefully.
a) whose
b) where
c) when
d) which

5 They have bought a machine .... prints names on badges.
a) that
b) what
c) who
d) whose

6 The man to .... I listened on the plane was talking all the time.
a) who
b) that
c) where
d) whom

7 The room .... I sleep is very nice. I really feel comfortable.
a) when
b) where
c) in where
d) which

8 The river .... runs through our city is the main source of our water.
a) where
b) whose
c) which
d) whom

9 I would like to live in a country .... there is plenty of sunshine.
a) when
b) which
c) where
d) whose

10 My uncle, ... is a famous writer, lives in Cairo.
a) where
b) which
c) who
d) whose

11 I like the cat .... hair is soft.

a) who
b) whom
c) whose
d) which

12 The room .... we decorated last year needs new decoration now.

a) where
b) that
c) in which
d) when

13 The boy, ... leg was broken, was taken to hospital.

a) who
b) that
c) whose
d) where

14 This is the writer .... won the first prize.

a) who
b) whose
c) whom
d) which

15 The nurse .... responsibility is to look after young children, has worked in the hospital for ten years.

a) who
b) which
c) whose
d) whom

16 1970 was the year .... my father was born.

a) who
b) when
c) which
d) where

17 Do you like Cairo .... is the capital of Egypt?

a) which
b) where
c) who
d) when

18 There's a library nearby .... I like to pass my time reading.

a) who
b) whom
c) where
d) whose

19 Isn't that the school .... your father works in?

a) where
b) which
c) when
d) who

20 My wife is someone .... really honest and hard-working.

a) who
b) whose
c) for whom
c) who's

21 The manager, ... secretary is seriously ill, has to type the letters by himself.

a) who
b) whose
c) where
d) that

22 The man from .... you bought this camera is waiting outside.

a) whose
b) whom
c) which
d) who

23 The big projects which .... out all over Egypt will increase the national income.
a) are carried
b) carry
c) carrying
d) carried

24 Ahmed is the manager .... I send this email.
a) to whom
b) from whom
c) who
d) what

25 The waiter, ... is wearing a white shirt, helped us a lot.
a) who
b) what
c) whom
d) which

26 I like the author .... plays are shown everywhere.
a) who
b) whose
c) who's
d) which

2 Fill in the space:

1 My son was very ill yesterday. I decided to take him to the hospital ....(a)........ he was examined. The doctor ....(b)............ examined him was so clever. He .... (c)............ me that my son was quite well. He gave him some medicines ....(d)........ I bought from a pharmacy which was full of sick children with their parents.

2 During the last hundred years, there have been enormous advances in medical treatment. For example, X-rays, ...(a)............ make it possible to see what is happening inside our bodies is great. Doctors can also treat people ....(b)........ hearts are damaged by replacing them. No other field ....(c)............ done more to improve our health and increase our happiness. So we must all be grateful ....(d)............ our great doctors and scientists.

3 I was studying at London University, and I was sharing a flat with friends with ....(a)............ I was studying. One of the windows of our flat had a view of a red telephone box in the park. If we got bored, we ....(b)............ sometimes have a good laugh by calling the phone box number and watching the reactions of people ....(c)............ walked past the public phone when it started to ring. It was the only thing ....(d)............ we did to pass the boring time.

4 I have believed for a while that mobiles are harmful to our health, due to the exposure of radiation. A lot of scientists believe that they have a bad effect .... (a)............ our health. As a result, they think that mobile phones should .... (b)............ used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. The companies ....(c)............ manufacture mobile phones will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product so they are hardly going to put you off buying their products ....(d)............ telling you they are unsafe.

General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The synonym of the verb "**achieve**" is ....
a) accomplish b) miss c) fail d) aim

2 There is a hard .... between the three leading car manufacturers.
a) competition b) campaign c) race d) achievement

3 My sons were awarded .... for their bravery.
a) presents b) medals c) gifts d) models

4 All I need is a/an .... to show the coach my talent and ability.
a) competition b) choice c) opportunity d) achievement

5 The conference was an important social .... to discuss our problems.
a) incident b) accident c) event d) happening

6 We .... diving away from the coral reef of the Red Sea last summer.
a) went b) took c) came d) played

7 My son was .... when he saw his friend jump up for 2 metres.
a) amazed b) amazing c) amazingly d) amazement

8 Our TV has broken down, but someone is coming to .... it tomorrow.
a) reform b) reclaim c) reuse d) repair

9 This is the most exciting story .... I have ever read.
a) when b) that c) who d) what

10 The man .... I met for lunch yesterday was an old friend of mine.
a) whom b) when c) whose d) which

11 Isn't that the pharmacy .... you get your medicine?
a) which b) from which c) on which d) by which

12 My teacher, ... very clever, makes me study hard.
a) who b) that is c) whose d) who's

13 There is a florist's over there .... I usually get flowers for my wife.
a) whom b) where c) which d) that

14 March is the month .... my brother was born.
a) where b) which c) in which d) while

15 This is the mobile phone for .... I paid a lot of money.
a) that b) which c) what d) whose

16 I don't know .... has done this very bad thing.
a) why b) what c) which d) who

2 Fill in the space:

Our teacher asked us to write a research about Taha Hussein. He asked us to get information about the place ....(a).............. he was born. He wanted us to know the books ....(b).............. he had written. He also wanted some information about the people ....(c).............. had helped him during his life. He was one of the persons ....(d).............. books inspired many people.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is advisable to know how to invest money in these days of inflation. Some people invest their money by keeping it in a bank. Left in a bank, it will keep its value, however high the interest rate. Some buy and sell on the Stock Market to invest their money but only rich or brave people dare to do so. It's no good putting it in a tin under the bed.

Wise investment is the art of making your money increase with the passing of time, and today it seems that one of the best ways to protect your savings and even increase your wealth is to buy beautiful objects from the past such as Persian rugs, furniture and silver and above all clocks. We are slaves of time today. The planet earth is ruled by the clock without whose permission men can do nothing.

Whether or not we are slaves of time today, it depends on our culture and personality. Many years ago, kings kept special slaves to tell the time. Certain men were clever at measuring the time of day according to the beating of their own hearts. Every hour or so, they would shout out the time. They were human time keepers.

Again, men learned to use the shadow cast by the sun and invented the sundial and later on water clocks. Large wall clocks were invented and hung in public places for all to see. They were mass - produced. Watches were probably first invented in Italy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mass production .... prices.

a) increases
b) reduces
c) keeps high
d) always keeps unchanged

2 .... to put money in a tin under the bed.

a) It is advisable
b) It is not recommended
c) It is gainful
d) It is nice but not recommended.

3 Investing in an antique clock is advisable ....

a) to be ruled by time
b) to be one of the human timekeepers
c) to make a future profit
d) to be put in public places for all to see

4. There's money in time. This means ....
   a) Time is money.
   b) Time makes your possessions increase in value.
   c) We are slaves of time today.
   d) The planet earth is ruled by the clock.
5. The antonym of the word "**slave**" is ....
   a) follower   b) fan   c) employer   d) master

B) **Answer the following questions:**

6. What does the writer advise people to do with their money?
7. What are the two things that protect us from becoming slaves of time?
8. Explain how a human timekeeper measured the time.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. There are many things to be said in favour of technological advancement. It undoubtedly makes people's lives easier.
2. Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and money for the welfare of their families. They are also ready to sacrifice themselves when their country is in danger.
3. Global warming is not only a threat to our future health; it already leads to more than 150, 000 deaths annually.

B) Translate into English:

١- يعتمد الكثير من الكتاب والروائيين فى كتاباتهم على القصص الواقعية، ويعتبرون أن التجارب الموجودة فيها تكسبنا المزيد من الخبرات فى الحياة.

٢- لقد تزايدت معدلات الجريمة فى الآونة الأخيرة بشكل ملحوظ فى مجتمعنا. والجريمة ظاهرة خطيرة تتطلب تعاون كل قطاعات الحكومة والأفراد لكى نجد حلًا جذريًا لها.

٣- علينا جميعًا أن نفتخر بلاعبينا المعاقين والذين حققوا إنجازات عظيمة فى مجال الرياضة عجز عن تحقيقها اللاعبون الأصحاء.

Enrich your Vocabulary

in favour of	فى صالح	devote	يكرس
welfare	رفاهية	annually	سنويًا
non-fiction	واقعي	life experiences	خبرات الحياة
rate	معدل	remarkably	بشكل ملحوظ
radical	عاجل/جذرى	phenomenon	ظاهرة

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. Hard work leads to success.
2. A school trip that you never forgot.



Lessons 3&4



Vocabulary on Reading

department (n)	قسم
employee (n)	موظف
sales (n)	مبيعات
staff (n)	هيئة العاملين
support (v) – ed	يدعم
train (v) – ed	يدرب
training (n)	تدريب

Vocabulary on Listening

book (v) – ed	يحجز
bother (v) – ed	يضايق
complaint (n)	شكوى
hole (n)	ثقب
loud (adj)	مرتفع (للصوت)
polite (adj)	مهذب
repair (v) – ed	يصلح
soup (n)	حساء/شوربة
undercooked (adj)	غير مطبوخ جيداً

Workbook Vocabulary

afraid (adj)	آسف/خائف
apologise (v) – d	يعتذر
colleague (n)	زميل عمل
interview (n)	مقابلة للحصول على وظيفة أو حوار صحفي
manager (n)	مدير
noisy (adj)	مزعج
perhaps (adv)	ربما
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
regards (n)	تحيات/تمنيات



Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get home	يعود للمنزل	receive training	يتلقى تدريبًا
make a complaint	يقدم شكوى	sorry about that	يأسف بشأن
make a noise	يصدر ضوضاء	take place	يحدث
make sure	يتأكد	turn the music down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	reply to	يرد على
apply for	يتقدم إلى	respond to	يستجيب لـ
hear from	يسمع من	response to	رد على
interest in	اهتمام بـ	speak to	يتحدث إلى
look for	يبحث عن	suitable for	مناسب لـ
qualified for	مؤهل لـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
employ	يوظف	employment	توظيف	employable	قابل للتوظيف
repair	يصلح	repair	إصلاح	repairable	يمكن إصلاحه
support	يدعم	support	دعم	supportive	داعم
train	يدرب	training trainer trainee	تدريب مدرب متدرب	trained	مُدَرب

Listening Text

Narrator One

Woman 1 : Excuse me; I'd like to make a complaint[1]. My soup is cold.

Woman 2 : I do apologise[2]. I'll make sure you get another soup which is hot.

Narrator Two

Old Man : I'm sorry to bother[3] you, but the music is really loud.

Man 1 : I'm sorry about that. I'll make sure my son turns the music down.

Narrator Three

Old Woman : I'd like to speak to the manager[4], please.

Woman 3 : I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Old Woman : Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late. How am I going to get home this evening?

Woman 3 : I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can book[5] a taxi for you.

(1) شكوى
(2) يعتذر
(3) يزعج
(4) مدير
(5) يحجز

Workbook Text

Narrator One

Lama : Excuse me; I'd like to make a complaint. My phone doesn't work.

Assistant : I do apologise. Perhaps we can repair[1] it.

Narrator Two

Hany : I'm sorry to bother you, but you're very tall. I can't see the play[2].

Man : I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is shorter.

Narrator Three

Heba : I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Waitress : I'm afraid he's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Heba : Yes, the problem is that my meat is undercooked[3].

Waitress : I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal[4].

(1) يصلح
(2) مسرحية
(3) غير مطبوخ جيدًا
(4) وجبة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
support	يدعم	provide/ aid	neglect	يتجاهل
bother	يضايق	annoy	please/satisfy	يسعد/يرضى
loud	مرتفع (للصوت)	noisy/blaring	calm	هادئ
polite	مهذب	mannerly/ civilised	rude	وقح
repair	يصلح	fix	break/damage	يكسر/يحطم

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The company .... have regular meetings to discuss achievements and problems.
a) stiff
b) staff
c) stuff
d) crew

2 My uncle is a supervisor in the accountancy .... in a big company.
a) service
b) department
c) office
d) apartment

3 This company's manager is very serious and strict with the .... and their work.
a) employers
b) employees
c) employment
d) employ

4 He .... a holiday for a fortnight in Paris. One week isn't enough to enjoy the city.
a) booked
b) preserved
c) kept
d) retrained

5 If listening to music .... you, I can stop it at any time you want.
a) interests
b) neglects
c) improves
d) bothers



Notes on Vocabulary

interview   appointment   conference   meeting

interview — مقابلة شخصية (للوظيفة) / مقابلة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية/صحفية)

- I've got an interview for a job as a reporter.

appointment — موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص فى وقت معين)

- I have an appointment to see the doctor next Saturday.

conference — مؤتمر

- The President arrived for a conference with local officials.

meeting — اجتماع

- They organised meetings on a number of important political issues.

crew   staff

crew — طاقم السفينة أو الطائرة

- None of the passengers or crew were/was injured.

staff — هيئة عاملين/موظفين

- We have 30 part-time members of staff.

hear (of/ from)

hear from — يتلقى رسالة من

- Have you heard from Ahmed?

hear of — يسمع أخبارًا عن

- She disappeared and was never heard of again.

colleague   classmate

colleague — زميل عمل

- Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.

classmate — زميل دراسة

- Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.



take place / take someone's place

take place
- The story takes place in nineteenth-century England. يحدث

take someone's place
- I took my father's place in our shop while he was abroad. يحل محل شخص

Language Notes

1. I do apologise. Perhaps we can repair it.


لاحظ استخدام v. to do قبل الفعل الأساسي للجملة للتأكيد واعطاء قوة للمعنى.

2. I look forward to hearing from you.


لاحظ look forward to يأتي بعدها (v-ing) OR (Noun).

3. "Where are the Paralympics going to be held in 2028?"



لاحظ كلمة Paralympics دائما تتبع بفعل جمع.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When my brother started his new job, all his .... were friendly and helpful.
   a) colleagues b) neighbours c) classmates d) children
2. I look forward to hearing .... you. This means I hope to receive news from you.
   a) of b) from c) with d) to
3. Companies need highly qualified ...., so they provide them with many training courses.
   a) stiffs b) staffs c) stuffs d) crews
4. Where were you when the accident took ....?
   a) part b) a part c) a place d) place
5. In his latest TV ...., the famous singer talked about his health problems.
   a) meeting b) conference
   c) interview d) appointment

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Everyone came to .... him in his campaign for justice.
   a) support b) let c) allow d) give
2. All companies should employ clever propagandists مسئولى دعاية to increase its ....
   a) industries b) production c) products d) sales
3. They said something very cruel for which I think they should ....
   a) think b) thank c) apologise d) organise
4. The main hospital in the city has a .... of around 150 people.
   a) stiff b) staff c) stuff d) crew
5. The new coach of the national team doesn't give .... to the press.
   a) interviews b) views c) shows d) programmes
6. My father is in charge of the marketing .... of an export company.
   a) part b) circle c) section d) department
7. There is a .... in the roof, which needs to be repaired.
   a) hole b) hall c) gap d) space
8. The room was very .... and my father found it hard to concentrate on his work.
   a) nosy b) noisy c) calm d) quiet
9. The company always .... all the new employees to use the new computer system.
   a) knows b) arranges c) trains d) manners
10. Are you coming to the football .... after school?
   a) lecture b) exercise c) training d) scene

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms Exercises

11. The soup was very cold, so he wanted to .... a complaint to the restaurant manager.
   a) do b) have c) give d) make
12. This house is very small. It is not really suitable .... a large family.
   a) for b) to c) with d) at
13. If you don't speak German, you're not qualified .... the job in our company.
   a) to b) with c) for d) at
14. We still haven't received a reply .... our offer.
   a) for b) to c) with d) from
15. I believe I have the best .... for this job.
   a) qualify b) qualified c) disqualified d) qualifications

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

16. The synonym of the word "**polite**" is ....
   a) relevant b) civilised c) different d) equivalent e) mannerly
17. The antonym of the verb "**repair**" is ....
   a) fix b) damage c) reform d) support e) break
18. The synonym of the word "**support**" is ....
   a) provide b) neglect c) avoid d) suspect e) aid





١- يمكن حذف who, which إذا جاء بعدها مبنى للمجهول ويستخدم P.P. فقط.

who/which + (be) + P.P. = P.P.

- The school which was built last year is wonderful.
  = The school built last year is wonderful.
- They boy who was punished yesterday got the worst marks.
  = The boy punished yesterday got the worst marks.

٢- يمكن حذف who – which فى حالة المبنى للمعلوم (بعدها فعل) ونستخدم V-ing.

who/which + active verb = v-ing

- The man who is wearing the black suit is my father.
  = The man wearing the black suit is my father.

٣- يمكن حذف who – which إذا جاء بعدها جملة وكانت تشير للمفعول مع بقاء الجملة كما هى.

who/which + فاعل + فعل = فاعل + فعل

- The match which/that I watched was great.
  = The match I watched was great.

٤- من الممكن استخدام that محل who – which، ولكن لا يأتى معها حرف جر ولا يأتى قبلها (,).

- Ali, ~~that~~ is my friend, plays football well. (✗)
  Ali, who is my friend, plays football well. (✓)
- This is the mobile ~~for that~~ I paid a lot of money. (✗)
  This is the mobile for which I paid a lot of money. (✓)

٥- عند وجود superlative صيغة التفضيل مع غير العاقل نستخدم that وليس which، أما مع العاقل فمن الممكن استخدام that – who.

- This is the most expensive present that I have ever got.
  Ali is the fastest student that/who/whom I have ever met.

٦- مع الكلمات التالية نستخدم that (all – the only).

I didn't get all that you asked me.

٧- نستخدم what كرابط ويأتى بعدها فعل أو جملة كما يلى:

جملة + what + فعل

What + فعل , ...

What + فعل + فاعل , ...

- I didn't try to bring what the teacher asked me.
- He couldn't remember what we told him.
- What makes us happy is to see our children happy.
- What I have said must be done.

٨- من الممكن أن تشير which إلى عبارة أو جملة كاملة قبلها.

- We got the full mark in our exams, which made us so happy.
- She went to the zoo with her brother, which was the best thing that happened to her.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Yesterday, I played a long match with my brother, ... made me very tired.

a) who b) whose c) which d) when

2 I can't achieve all .... I want now but may be in the future.

a) which b) whose c) when d) that

3 I can't remember .... you told me about Amin.

a) who b) which c) whom d) what

4 The girl .... in the street is trying to catch the bus.

a) runs b) is running
c) who running d) running

5 The big projects, ... out all over Egypt, will increase the national income.

a) are carried b) which carry
c) carrying d) carried

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I don't want to tell anyone .... has happened between us.
a) that
b) what
c) who
d) where

2 I didn't get the job .... because I didn't have the required qualifications.
a) which I applied for it
b) I applied for it
c) I applied for
d) that I applied for it

3 *Around the World in Eighty Days*, ... came out in 1837, is a very famous novel.
a) that
b) when
c) where
d) which

4 Noha is the girl .... brother came first in the exam.
a) who's
b) when
c) whose
d) which

5 Is that the doctor about .... you told me?
a) which
b) where
c) whom
d) that

6 Most of the novels .... by Nagib Mahfouz have been changed into films.
a) writing
b) were written
c) wrote
d) written

7 I can't remember .... told me Ramy would come to the party.
a) who
b) which
c) whom
d) whose

8 My uncle is the person .... I received a letter last week.
a) to who
b) from whom
c) to whom
d) from who

9 This is the street .... I lived in when I was younger.
a) in which
b) which
c) in that
d) where

10 Nour could finish the book .... the day before.
a) I'd lent her
b) that I'd lent her it
c) which I'd lent it her
d) what I lent her

11 Can you show me the road .... to the amusement park, please?
a) leading
b) which leading
c) leads
d) lead

12 The woman, ... daughter was having an exam, was very worried.
a) whose
b) whose her
c) who
d) whom

13 Maha says that the house .... Tamer has bought has a beautiful garden.
a) whose
b) which
c) whom
d) where

14 London, ... is the capital of the UK, has the best palace in the world.
a) what
b) where
c) that
d) which

15 The meetings .... we discussed a lot of our problems were long but useful.
a) with which
b) for which
c) that
d) at which

16 These are the fields .... we reclaimed to grow crops.
a) in which
b) for which
c) at which
d) that

17 I can't remember the name of the person .... I borrowed this pen.
a) from where
b) from which
c) to whom
d) from whom

18 This is the shelf .... I put my English books.
a) which
b) who
c) whom
d) where

19 The man .... he had lunch yesterday is his boss.
a) who
b) whose
c) with whom
d) whom

20 Mona's father .... goes swimming every day.
a) , that is 60,
b) who is 60
c) , who is 60,
d) that is 60

21 Yousra .... house we had our lunch is one of my best advisors.
a) whose
b) who
c) in whose
d) in which

22 I admire Yehia Haqqi .... works are really wonderful.
a) who
b) where
c) which
d) whose

2 Fill in the space:

1 I spent a very nice time last week. I went to the village ....(a).............. my parents were born. I met the members of my family to ....(b).............. I talked a lot. I saw the places ....(c).............. I hadn't been to all my life. The people ....(d).............. lived there were very friendly.

2 Travelling is the thing that can benefit you more than any university course. You can learn about the culture of the country ....(a).............. you visit. If you travel, you will not only learn ....(b).............. foreign cultures, but about your own as well. You will notice that cultural differences, and you will find out ....(c).............. makes your culture unique. During travelling you will meet people ....(d).............. culture is not the same as yours.

3 The concept of a library is very old. The first libraries were in the Middle East. These libraries contained information ....(a).............. was carved into clay tablets. One of the oldest libraries was the ancient library of Alexandria ....(b).............. had over seven hundred thousand works in it. At that time there were no books, and authors' works ....(c).............. written on large scrolls of papyrus. Unfortunately, all these scrolls burnt ....(d).............. a fire that destroyed the library.

4 Be obedient to your parents and society and you will succeed in your life. When your parents ask you to do something, you must do ....(a).............. they ask. When there is a general rule for all people, you ....(b).............. to follow it. As it is against the law, you ....(c).............. throw rubbish into the street. You can't do all things ....(d).............. yourself but you may ask others to help you.

Life Skills

Making complaints	*Responding politely*
• Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint about .... • I'm sorry to ...., but .... • I'd like to complain to the manager, please.	- I really apologise. I can .... for you now. - I am so sorry for that. We really didn't mean it. - I am sorry; the manager is out at the moment. - Don't worry, what can I do for you?



- **How to write a professional email:**

From : The email address of the applicant.

To : The email address of the company

Subject : Applying for a job

Dear sir or madam,

Introduction

I am writing and sending this email after seeing your advertisement for a vacant job in your company. I am interested in working for your company.

Subject

(Give some details about yourself – your qualifications – your qualities – if you have a disability or not – asking some questions about the company)

Ending the email

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Kind regards.

(Your name)

Model Essay

The person you admire and respect

Everyone has an example to follow in his life, someone that they admire and respect. Someone that has a great influence on them. As for me, the person I admire most is neither a world famous nor a millionaire. I admire my great brother. Hard work was and still part of his life, but still he smiles all the time. His life can be a good example of a person who has suffered a lot, but has never asked for help or complained. He always advises me not to feel helpless in life and try to live my life in a way that people can remember me with pride and respect.

My brother worked in many places and travelled to many countries to earn his living. Now he works for himself as he has his own factory in which he makes clothes. He has a wonderful family whom I love very much. He really has helped me a lot to study and have my own private life.

Finally, I can say that, my brother is a good example for me and for his family. And we all admire and respect him.

Speaking

Making complaints and polite responses:

Imagine that you bought some shoes last week and one shoe already has a hole in it. You go back to the shop to make a complaint.

Prepare answers for the following questions:

- How can I help you?
- Why do you like to meet the manager?
- What is wrong with it?

Practice

Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Ali and a sales assistant in a shoe shop.

Assistant **:** How can I help you?

Ali **:** ....

Assistant **:** Why do you want to meet him?

Ali **:** ....

Assistant **:** A complaint! About what?

Ali **:** ....

Assistant **:** Oh! I do apologies. I will replace it to you.

Ali **:** ....

General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I left the party because the .... music was giving me a headache.
   a) loud b) aloud c) loudly d) loudness
2. The astronauts .... a lot of training about how to examine and fix the equipment.
   a) send b) receive c) take d) deliver
3. .... sure you tell your doctor about any herbal medicines you are taking.
   a) Take b) Do c) Make d) Become
4. Turn the music ...., please. I have a headache.
   a) up b) on c) down d) of
5. The manager hasn't replied to the .... I have made.
   a) interview b) complaint c) agreement d) decision
6. Our survey reveals an interest .... teacher training all over the country.
   a) at b) for c) with d) in
7. He was exhausted, so he looked .... to the end of his shift.
   a) for b) forward c) at d) with
8. The public's response .... our issue was fantastic.
   a) to b) with c) for d) at
9. The school, ... last year, is one of the biggest schools in our city.
   a) which built b) was built c) built d) that was built
10. I left the company .... for a long time.
    a) which I worked b) where I worked c) I was working d) that I worked
11. We played a wonderful match with our friends, ... made us so happy and tired.
    a) which b) that c) who d) what
12. Making my family happy and relaxed is all .... I want and work for.
    a) which b) when c) where d) that
13. .... you told me can't be believed.
    a) Who b) Where c) What d) That
14. The woman .... the green blouse is my sister.
    a) wears b) wearing c) worn d) wear
15. He couldn't be persuaded to do .... I want from him.
    a) what b) where c) which d) who
16. Vegetables .... a lot of water, don't freeze well.
    a) which containing b) contain c) containing d) are containing

2 Fill in the space:

We must pay great attention to the problem of overpopulation and try to solve it. It is considered one of the greatest problems ....(a).............. faces Egypt. So, we must pay great attention to this problem and try to find means to solve it. The food .... (b).............. is produced now isn't enough and we have to import a good portion to satisfy the needs of ....(c).............. people. Also, cities have become stuffed with people who leave their villages to go there ....(d).............. they can earn their living.

3 Read the following comprehension:

Teenagers today live in a very competitive world. It is more important than ever to succeed at school if you hope to have a chance in the job market afterwards. It's no wonder that many young people worry about letting down their parents, their peers and themselves. In trying to please everyone they take on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends. The result is that young people suffer from stress. There are different ways of dealing with stress. Everyone knows that caffeine, whether it is in the form of coffee or soft drinks, keeps you awake and alert. But caffeine is a drug which can become addictive. In the end, like other drugs, caffeine only leads to more stress. A better way to deal with stress is to exercise: Research has proved that physical exercise is a good release for stress, because it increases certain chemicals in the brain which calm you down. Enough sleep is also an important way of avoiding stress and of staying healthy and full of energy. Another way to avoid stress is by managing your time effectively. It is better to do a few tasks really well, than lots of tasks badly. Know your limits and try not to take on too much. Finally, if it all gets beyond your control, don't panic or get hysterical.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The best title for this passage is ....
   - a) teen activity
   - b) teen stress
   - c) teen hobby
   - d) teen culture
2. The writer advises the teens to do things ....
   - a) within control
   - b) out of control
   - c) out of reach
   - d) beyond control

3 The writer is for the idea of the .... of work.
a) amount b) quantity c) quality d) mass

4 Having a lot of burdens results in ....
a) happiness b) success c) stability d) stress

5 One of the following DOESN'T help in relieving stress. It is ....
a) exercise b) enough sleep
c) time management d) caffeine

B) Answer the following questions:

6 What do you think the main causes of stress for the young?

7 How do you think teenagers can overcome stress?

8 **Find word(s) in the passage that mean(s):**
a) frightened b) sufficient

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Do you think that punishment stops children from making mistakes? Many experts believe punishment is a negative way to bring up children.
2. In the past women were completely deprived of practising their rights, especially the political rights.
3. Our armed forces stand against any outside or inside threat so that we can live with a feeling of security and safety.

B) Translate into English:

١- إن مؤتمر الشباب الذى يتم عقده كل عام فى مصر فرصة عظيمة للشباب من مختلف دول العالم؛ كى يتقابلوا ويتناقشوا ويتبادلوا الخبرات والثقافات.

٢- تساهم وسائل الإعلام فى توجيه الرأى العام نحو أهمية النظافة الشخصية والتباعد الاجتماعى واتخاذ التدابير الوقائية للحفاظ على صحة المواطنين من أمراض العصر ومنها فيروس كورونا المستجد.

٣- يعتبر بلدنا الحبيب مصر مضرب المثل للتسامح الدينى والوحدة الوطنية من خلال التعايش السلمى بين مختلف طوائف الشعب والذى يعود لمئات السنين.

Enrich your Vocabulary

advancement	تقدم	sacrifice	يضحى
discrimination	تمييز	radical	جذرى
sectors	قطاعات	peaceful co-existence	التعايش السلمى
national unity	الوحدة الوطنية	armed forces	القوات المسلحة
rate	معدل		

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. How can we help people with disabilities.
2. About someone you know, or someone you know about, who has achieved success despite many difficulties.



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The outside camera was .... by someone so they couldn't see the video of the robber.
   a) abled b) disabled
   c) enabled d) able
2. She had to .... through the crowd to get to the door.
   a) dive b) float
   c) muscle d) hide
3. In yoga class, we learn to .... air slowly.
   a) aspire b) inspire
   c) spear d) smell
4. We're launching a new advertising .... for this product.
   a) company b) companion
   c) campaign d) announcement
5. My professor's .... on my thinking was deep and lasting.
   a) fact b) impact
   c) cheat d) character
6. His heart was filled with .... for others. So, all people love him.
   a) charity b) cherry
   c) hatred d) anger
7. The .... among companies should bring prices down for consumers.
   a) fight b) competition
   c) completion d) superstition
8. I didn't really expect a/an .... answer, so I was surprised when she said "yes."
   a) positive b) negative
   c) passive d) active
9. **A:** How much water does this bottle ....? **B:** I think 1.5 litres.
   a) hold b) bold
   c) fold d) meld
10. The coach gathered the whole team to .... their spirits before the final match.
    a) leave b) lift
    c) remove d) lower

11 .... the age of 31, I had finished most of my post graduate studies.

a) At
b) Since
c) In
d) By

12 .... mobile phones are cheap compared to the new ones.

a) Using
b) Having used
c) Used
d) Uses

13 When I give my children rewards for good work, they look ....

a) happily
b) happiness
c) happened
d) happy

14 My father's car is .... more modern than my uncle's one.

a) many
b) more
c) much
d) so

15 Each of our neighbours .... tried to help clean our street.

a) are
b) is
c) has
d) have

16 I have .... much work that I can't find time to go out with my family.

a) such a
b) such
c) too
d) so

17 We went on holiday last summer with some friends of ....

a) ours
b) our
c) we
d) I

18 Neither my friend Hams nor her brothers .... tennis well.

a) plays
b) is playing
c) play
d) has played

19 The train station isn't .... near here. You can ask a traffic man.

a) nowhere
b) somewhere
c) many where
d) anywhere

20 I didn't get the job .... my very good qualifications.

a) in spite
b) despite
c) although
d) because of

Test 5 Based on Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Women dream of .... full equality in the workplace.
a) achieving b) campaigning
c) competing d) improving

2 The company has launched an advertising .... in the hope of attracting new customers.
a) competition b) race
c) campaign d) charity

3 Students should find a role-model to .... them.
a) hinder b) mean c) inspire d) lift

4 My uncle joined the .... of a large fishing boat many years ago.
a) stiff b) staff c) stuff d) crew

5 Taking drugs has always had a serious .... on people.
a) affection b) effect c) perfection d) conflict

6 Our team hope to improve their performance before the new ....
a) championship b) battle c) fight d) dispute

7 Edison, ... invented the light bulb, was born in London.
a) whom b) who c) whose d) when

8 They have built a new school in the village .... I had lived.
a) who b) which c) where d) when

9 I read the paper .... my brother bought for my father.
a) that b) where c) what d) in which

10 Friday is the day .... I usually take my family out for lunch.
a) where b) which c) on which d) in which

11 It is my mother .... gives us help and support.
a) which b) whose c) whom d) that

12 The teacher .... activity is appreciated by many people, has got the prize of the ideal teacher.
a) who b) which c) whose d) whom

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

13 The synonym of the word "**loud**" is ....
a) noisy b) calm c) blaring
d) rude e) high

14 The antonym of the word "**bother**" is ....
a) neglect b) break c) please
d) satisfy e) damage

15 Fill in the space:

My father went to study at the Faculty of Law to be a lawyer when he was young, but he spent a lot of his time practising football. My grandfather, ...(a).............. was also a lawyer, was very angry and so he stopped paying for studies. He ....(b).............. my father that he had to find a job. My father worked in a factory ....(c).............. he earned enough money which helped him to pay for his studies and training. Now, he is a very famous lawyer ....(d).............. hobby is playing football.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In many countries around the world, women are entering the work force in great numbers for the first time. It is true that more women are currently employed than ever before. However, "the goals of equal work opportunity for women have not been fully realised. For a number of reasons; they hold low-ranking positions, the last to be employed and the first to be fired when employment drops off. They usually get lower-paying positions than men, even if they were doing the same work. Certainly, great efforts have been made towards equality, but the problem of reaching this goal is becoming increasingly clear all the time. Although women have come a long way, they still have a long way to go for equal opportunity. Women in China now receive equal pay for equal work, therefore they are not dependent on their families as they once were. In the field of medicine they are nearly half of all the doctors there. On the other hand in many countries women now work as scientists, medical workers, welders, electrical workers, oil-well operators, vegetable growers and members of the armed forces.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 In the past, work conditions were .... for both men and women.

a) bad b) the same
c) good d) different

17 The underlined word "they" refers to ....

a) men b) positions
c) women d) countries

18 Chinese women doctors constitute about .... percent of all the doctors.

a) five b) fifteen
c) fifty d) sixty

19 The synonym of "drops off" is ....

a) develop
b) increase
c) go up
d) decrease

20 According to the passage, one reason for not reaching women equal opportunity with men is ....

a) weak power
b) low payment
c) little effort
d) bad thinking

B) Answer the following questions:

21 How far have women around the world achieved equal work opportunity with men?

22 What is the situation of women in China?

23 In the last paragraph, why did the author list different jobs?

24 Translate into English:

- للرياضة دور كبير فى محاربة وحل المشـكلات الاجتماعية مثل الجريمة والعنف والإدمان، كما يمكنها مســاعدة الأطفال والشباب على تكوين شخصية مستقلة ومؤثرة.

25 Translate into Arabic:

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognised that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

How the society can be helpful to the disabled.

Unit 12 Hard work

Objectives

Reading : A summary of Silas Marner
Writing : A book review of Silas Marner
Listening : A conversation about how people work
Language : Modal verbs of possibility can't, might, must
Speaking : Explaining mysteries
Critical thinking : Project – research and present a famous mystery



Warm up

Match the novel type to the correct picture.

Science Fiction

Fantasy

Mysteries

Westerns

Romance

Horror

Historical

Thrillers













Lessons 1&2





Key Vocabulary

disappear (v) - ed	يختفي
engaged (adj)	مرتبط/مخطوب
guilty (adj)	مذنب/مجرم
mystery (n)	لغز/غموض
solve (v) – d	يحل
weaver (n)	صانع النسيج

Vocabulary on Reading

alone (adv)	بمفرده
call (v) – ed	يسمى/ينادى
cottage (n)	كوخ/بيت ريفى
decide (v) – d	يقرر
earlier (adv)	فيما مضى
empty (adj)	فارغ
fireplace (n)	المدفأة
happen (v) – ed	يحدث
instead (adv)	عوضًا عن
local people	السكان المحليون
offer (v) – ed (n)	يعرض/عرض
prove (v) – d	يثبت
realise (v) – d	يدرك
sick (adj)	مريض
steal (v)	يسرق
surprised (adj)	مندهش
unpleasant (adj)	غير سار

Vocabulary on Listening

Artificial Intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي	look (v) – ed	يبدو
conditions (n)	ظروف	machinery (n)	الميكنة/الآلات
crazy (adj)	مجنون/غريب	manual labour (n)	عمل يدوي
customer (n)	زبون	operate (v) – d	يُشغل
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	ordinary (adj)	عادي

Workbook Vocabulary

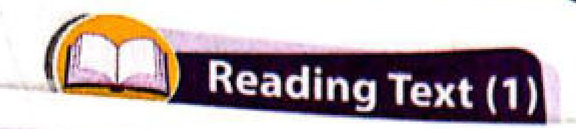
pale (adj)	شاحب/باهت	thin (adj)	نحيف
skill (n)	مهارة	the early years	السنوات الأولى
special (adj)	خاص	trust (v) – ed (n)	يثق/ثقة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

(be) engaged to	مخطوب لـ	live lonely lives	يعيش حياة وحيدة
(be) married to	متزوج من	new to the village	جديد بالنسبة للقرية
earn money	يكسب مالًا	solve the mystery	يحل لغزًا
feel sorry for	يشعر بالأسف لـ	take care of	يعتني بـ
care about	يهتم بـ	work as hard as he can	يعمل بجد قدر استطاعته
come from	يأتي من	join in	ينضم إلى
compared to	بالمقارنة بـ	part of	جزء من
disappear from	يختفي من	remember about	يتذكر بشأن
forget about	ينسى بشأن	return to	يعود إلى
friendly to	ودود لـ	sorry about	آسف بشأن
guilty of	مذنب بشأن	stay with	يبقى مع
hide from	يخفى من	steal from	يسرق من
important to	هام لـ	think about	يعتقد/يفكر بشأن

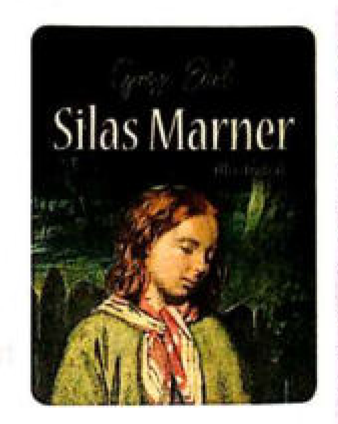
Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
disappear	يختفى	disappearance	اختفاء	---------------------------	
guilt	يتهم	guilt guiltiness	ذنب ذنب	guilty	مذنب
---------------------------		mystery	لغز/غموض	mysterious	غامض
prove	يثبت	proof	دليل/برهان	proven	مثبت
realise	يدرك	realism realist reality	واقعية شخص واقعى واقع	real realistic	حقيقى واقعى
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	قابل للحل
steal	يسرق	steal	سرقة	stolen	مسروق
surprise	يدهش	surprise	دهشة	surprised surprising	مندهش مدهش
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trusting trusted	واثق موثوق فيه
weave	ينسج/يصنع النسيج	weaving weaver	صناعة النسيج صانع النسيج	---------------------------	



Pre-reading question:
- What are the advantages of working hard?

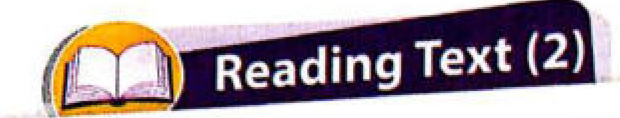
Silas Marner



Silas Marner is a weaver[1] who lives in the village of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very friendly to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone[2]. Fifteen years earlier, Silas had been engaged to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was taking care[3] of a friend who was sick, a bag of money disappeared[4] from under the friend's bed. A man called William Dane finds the empty[5] bag and Silas's friends decide that he is guilty[6] of stealing the money. Later, William marries Sarah instead, and Silas decides to move to the village of Raveloe. The only thing he cares about is his work as a weaver. All Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to earn as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they hide[7] from their father and they always want to have more money. One night, a bag of gold is stolen[8] from Silas's house and the whole village joins in[9] to look for it. The local people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the mystery.[10]

(1) صانع النسيج
(2) وحيد
(3) يرعى
(4) اختفى
(5) فارغة
(6) مذنب
(7) يخفى
(8) سرقت
(9) شاركت
(10) لغز

Post-reading question:
- Who do you think stole Silas's gold? Why?



Reading Text (2)

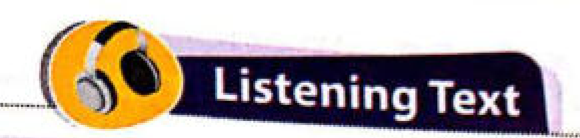
Pre-reading question: - What do you remember about Silas Marner?



One evening, Silas returns to his cottage(1) and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace(2). The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They might have had an accident. He decides to look after her. He calls(3) her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised(4), but they think that Silas can't be a bad person because he wants to look after(5) the girl. They also help him. Silas is now happier. He realises that his new daughter is more important to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him. It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with him. He and his wife offer(6) to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas. Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to prove(7) that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now forget about this unpleasant(8) part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

(1) كوخ
(2) مدفأة
(3) يسمى
(4) مندهش
(5) يعتنى بـ
(6) يعرض
(7) يثبت
(8) غير سار

Post-reading question: - What mystery was solved in the book?



Pre-listening question: - Do you think that Silas needed to work a lot?

Woman : Hello, husband[1]! Come and sit down, and I will get you some water.

Man : Look! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner is still[2] working!

Woman : He must have got another new customer[3].

Man : Yes, that must be why he's working so late. I don't understand why he always works so much.

Woman : He might have lost[4] a lot of money while he was living in the north.

Man : But all his customers are so happy with the things he makes. He can't have lost money. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to — he's got bags and bags full of gold coins[5].

Woman : Really? I just don't really like weavers[6]. I think weaving is a very strange[7] job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer or a fisherman instead of[8] working with these crazy[9] new machines?

Man : I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to do with these machines.

(1) زوج
(2) مازال
(3) زبون
(4) خسر
(5) عملات ذهبية
(6) صناع النسيج
(7) غريب
(8) بدلًا من
(9) غريب جدًا

Post-listening question:
- Are people today worried about machines taking their jobs? Why or why not?

Workbook Text

The story of Silas Marner begins in the English countryside in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside[1], and they usually looked pale[2] and thin compared to[3] the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't trust[4] anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a special skill[5] and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived lonely lives.

(1) الريف
(2) شاحب
(3) مقارنة بـ
(4) يثق
(5) مهارة

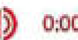
Video Script

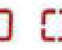
One hundred and sixty years ago, hard[1] work would have looked very different for an ordinary person[2]. Manual labour[3] could be very difficult; the machinery[4] was often heavy and dangerous to operate[5], and working conditions[6] were not good.

Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more efficiently[7] with the help of modern machinery and technology. Modern workplaces[8] are even using Artificial Intelligence[9], so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future.

The question is: are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us?

(1) شاق
(2) شخص عادى
(3) العمل اليدوى
(4) الآلات
(5) يشغل
(6) ظروف العمل
(7) بكفاءة
(8) أماكن العمل
(9) الذكاء الاصطناعى



0:00



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This medicine won't make the pain .... completely, but it will help.
   a) appear b) disappear c) develop d) advance
2. The police could .... the mystery of the crime with difficulty.
   a) solve b) pull c) call d) clean
3. Before you can drive ...., you need to have a licence.
   a) lonely b) loneliness c) leanly d) alone
4. A young woman was found .... of murder in my neighbourhood.
   a) missing b) empty c) guilty d) lonely
5. Because I live in a remote ...., my car is very important to me.
   a) solution b) village c) fireplace d) weaver

Focus on Vocabulary

disappear يختفي	to become impossible to see or find
engaged مرتبط	to become in a relationship to get married
guilty مذنب/مجرم	a person who did something bad/describes someone who has broken a rule or a law
mystery لغز/غموض	something unknown/something that is difficult to explain or understand
solve يحل	to find an answer to a problem
weaver صانع النسيج	a person who makes cloth by twisting wool together

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
disappear	يختفي	vanish	appear	يظهر
earlier	فيما مضى	former/ previous	later	فيما بعد
empty	فارغ	blank/ unfilled/ vacant	filled/ full	مملوء
guilty	مذنب/مجرم	convicted	guiltless/innocent	غير مذنب
pale	شاحب/باهت	faint	dark	غامق اللون
prove	يثبت	confirm	disprove	ينكر / ينفي
special	خاص	particular	general	عام
surprised	مندهش	astonished	unsurprised	غير مندهش
unpleasant	غير سار	nasty/ undesirable	pleasant	سار

Notes on Vocabulary



decide

decide to + inf. — يقرر أن
- He decided to sleep early before the exam.

decide on + (noun) — يقرر/يحدد
- She decided on her goal in life.

decide that — يقرر أن
- He decided that his wife will attend the party.

steal / rob

steal + (something) — يسرق (شيئًا)
- She stole my money last week.

rob + (place) — يسرق (مكانًا)
- He robbed the bank with his friends yesterday.

rob + (someone) + of + (something) — يسرق شيء من (شخص)
- The thief robbed Ali of his wallet two days ago.

alone / lonely

alone — بمفرده (شيء مادى)
- You shouldn't leave a child alone in the house.

lonely — يشعر بالوحدة (شيء معنوى)
- Tammy felt very lonely when she first arrived in New York.

only a few / only a little

only a few + (countable noun : اسم يعد) — فقط القليل من
- There are only a few students in the class today.

only a little + (uncountable noun : اسم لا يعد) — فقط القليل من
- There is only a little sugar in the kitchen.

cloth	clothes

قماش (اسم لا يعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد) cloth
- My father bought a suit made of grey cloth.

ملابس (اسم جمع دائمًا وليس له مفرد ويعامل معاملة الجمع) clothes
- Don't forget to bring some clean clothes with you.

Language Notes

1. You think it's possible that he worked hard last year but you aren't sure.
- كلمة hard هنا استخدمت كظرف وليس فعلًا، مع العلم أن كلمة hardly ليست الحال من hard بل هي تأتي بمعنى بالكاد وليس بجد
2. He wants to prove that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier.
- كلمة earlier تستخدم بمعنى منذ مدة معينة وحتى وقت معين فى الماضى، على عكس كلمة ago بمعنى منذ مدة معينة وحتى الآن
3. The other people in the village aren't very friendly to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone.
- كلمة alone تستخدم كصفة بمعنى وحيد أما كلمة lonely فستخدم كصفة بمعنى شاعر بالوحدة ولا تستخدم كحال على عكس كلمة alone التي من الممكن استخدامها كحال بمعنى بمفرده أو دون أي مساعدة
4. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with him.
- يمكن استخدام what كضمير وصل مساوية لـ (the thing that/the things that).
5. It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago.

لاحظ استخدام all بمعنى طوال إذا جاء بعدها مدة زمنية أما إذا جاء بعدها اسم فتستخدم بمعنى كل

- A bag of gold is stolen from Silas's house and the whole village joins in to look for it.
- أما كلمة the whole فتستخدم بمعنى كله أو بأكمله

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't ever let anybody .... your dreams. Keep fighting for what you want.
   a) steal b) rob c) lift d) take
2. A strange man .... my wallet yesterday.
   a) held b) brought c) stole d) robbed
3. The gang .... the bank and took all the money last week.
   a) tied b) robbed c) stole d) missed
4. Ali met only .... friends before going to school yesterday.
   a) few b) little c) a few d) a little
5. My wife has decided .... blue for the bathroom.
   a) on b) that c) to d) for

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police are looking for the two girls who .... while walking home from school.
   a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost
2. We really need an effective .... to the traffic problem in Cairo.
   a) solution b) simulation c) mystery d) relation
3. Twenty years after the event, his death remains a ....
   a) puzzle b) mystery c) quiz d) miracle
4. She decided to .... the most beautiful carpet in the world.
   a) invent b) create c) work d) weave
5. The police are investigating the .... deaths of children at the hospital.
   a) hidden b) surprised c) mysterious d) concealed
6. A .... is someone whose job is to weave cloth.
   a) weaver b) tutor c) tailor d) waver
7. The company .... you the chance to buy Naguib Mahfouz's novels at half price.
   a) offers b) proves c) improves d) realises
8. The police are investigating the .... of the two boys during the school journey.
   a) miss b) disappearance c) secret d) solution
9. They live in a small town .... Kafr El-Dawar, not far from Alexandria.
   a) termed b) worded c) filled d) called
10. It was my dream to have a little .... in the countryside to live in.
    a) factory b) hospital c) cottage d) company
11. I can't work properly on a/an .... stomach. I'm very hungry.
    a) empty b) full c) free d) filled
12. Scientists always try to find new ways to .... our problems.
    a) contain b) solve c) improve d) include
13. It was very cold, so we sat in front of the .... until late in the evening.
    a) fire engine b) fire alarm c) fireplace d) fire blanket
14. She admitted .... the money from her new employers.
    a) giving b) knowing c) robbing d) stealing
15. Checking my answers helped me .... the mistakes I made.
    a) realise b) educate c) recognize d) ignore
16. We were .... to hear such an intelligent question coming from a very small child.
    a) obvious b) surprised c) special d) amazing

17 My sister had such a/an .... experience at the park that she refused to go there again.
a) attractive b) nice c) pleasant d) unpleasant

18 Can you .... that you were at home at the time of the attack?
a) remove b) approve c) improve d) prove

19 My parents grew up in a small ...., but they now live in a city.
a) village b) neighbourhood c) area d) continent

20 We don't know what happened to our new television. It is really a ....
a) disappearance b) guilty c) mystery d) proof

21 .... Intelligence means the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do, such as think and make decisions.
a) Normal b) Natural c) Man-made d) Artificial

22 Many women do hard .... labour which means they work with their hands.
a) manual b) automatic c) machine-made d) computerised

23 Don't worry, everyone will be shown how to .... the new machines.
a) cooperate b) operate c) work d) turn

24 The market was full of .... who were buying goods from all over the country.
a) costumes b) customers c) customs d) officers

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms *Exercises*

25 If Rania can't attend the meeting, I could go ....
a) onside b) for c) instead d) outside

26 Have you decided .... a date for the wedding?
a) on b) for c) to d) that

27 Adham watched his father's car until it disappeared .... sight.
a) to b) in c) at d) from

28 He was found not guilty .... the death of his neighbour.
a) in b) from c) of d) at

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

29 Half the classroom was empty because of the bad weather. The synonym of the word "**empty**" is ....
a) blank b) faint c) pleasant d) vacant e) full

30 He was found guilty of killing his wife. The antonym of the word "**guilty**" is ....
a) convicted b) innocent c) guiltless d) nasty e) surprised

31 The word .... has the same meaning as the word "**unpleasant**".
a) pleasant b) convicted c) particular d) nasty e) undesirable



Modals of Deduction

(must – can't – might)

must + inf. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد فى المضارع والمستقبل)

- Use must + infinitive without to when you are sure about something.

- نستخدم must يليها المصدر عندما نكون متأكدين من شيء ما.

- He has an expensive car. He must be rich.

must have + p.p. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج وتأكيد فى الماضى)

- They are all wearing coats. It must have been cold when they took this photo.

can't + inf. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفى فى المضارع والمستقبل)

- Use can't + infinitive without to when you are sure something is not possible.

- نستخدم can't + inf. عندما نكون متأكدين من عدم إمكانية حدوث شيء ما.

- He has an expensive car. He can't be poor.

can't have + p.p. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفى فى الماضى)

- It can't have been winter in this photo. There are leaves on all the trees!

Examples:

- He is rich. I'm certain he is happy.
  = He is rich. He must be happy.
- She was absent yesterday. I am sure she was ill.
  = She was absent yesterday. She must have been ill.
- He can't buy this car. I am sure he isn't rich.
  = He can't buy this car. He can't be rich.
- She is tired. I think she didn't have enough sleep.
  = She is tired. She can't have had enough sleep.

might + be

تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما ممكن، ولكن لسنا متأكدين فى زمن المضارع.

- Use might (not) + infinitive without to when you are not sure about something.
  - It is possible that Ahmed is tired.
  = Ahmed might be tired.
  - They might be at home but we aren't sure.

might have + p.p.

تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما كان ممكنًا، ولكن لسنا متأكدين فى زمن الماضى.

- It is possible that Ahmed was tired.
  = Ahmed might have been tired.

- يمكن استخدام بعض الأفعال الناقصة لبيان درجة التأكد من شيء سواء في المضارع أو الماضي كالآتي:

Deduction	sure to happen (مؤكد حدوث الفعل)	not sure (محتمل حدوث الفعل)	sure not to happen (مؤكد عدم حدوث الفعل)
Present	must be must + inf.	might be might + inf.	can't be
Past	must have + p.p.	might have + p.p.	can't have + p.p.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was absent yesterday. He .... ill.
   a) might be b) may be c) can't have been d) might have been
2. A student got out of the class and then he came back again. He .... forgotten his bag.
   a) can't have b) must be c) will have d) must have
3. She came to school late. She .... caught the school bus.
   a) must have b) may have c) can't have d) might have
4. I can't remember how old I was when I first saw the Pyramids, but I .... four.
   a) must be b) might be c) can't have d) might have been
5. She lost her wallet. She .... lost it in the mall.
   a) might b) might have c) must have d) can't have

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My friend's car is not here. He .... out.
a) must go
b) must have gone
c) should have gone
d) can't have gone

2 Our neighbours are breaking one of their windows. They .... their keys.
a) must have lost
b) can't have lost
c) mightn't have lost
d) may have lost

3 Tariq has injured his leg and his bicycle is lying on the road near him. He .... the hole.
a) must have seen
b) can't have seen
c) might have seen
d) can't see

4 **A:** Who's knocking on the door? **B:** It .... my friend Ali. I asked him to come.
a) must be
b) can't be
c) must have been
d) might have been

5 You .... have seen Dr Ahmed here yesterday. He is still abroad.
a) may
b) must
c) can't
d) mustn't

6 My friend is a doctor. He .... clever at school.
a) must have been
b) can't have been
c) might have been
d) may have been

7 She looks happy. She .... her exams.
a) must pass
b) may pass
c) can't pass
d) must have passed

8 They have been playing all day. They .... be very tired.
a) must
b) needn't
c) shouldn't
d) should

9 When I knocked on the door, there was no answer, they .... out.
a) must be
b) must have been
c) can't be
d) can't have been

10 The thief .... away after he had robbed the bank. We can't find him now.
a) must run
b) must have run
c) mustn't have run
d) can't run

11 Hend couldn't answer the questions, they .... have been difficult for her.
a) can't
b) must
c) should
d) mustn't

12 It is Ali's house, not Ahmed's as you say. You .... mistaken.
a) must be
b) might be
c) can't be
d) mustn't be

13 My neighbour was at the doctor's yesterday. She .... ill.
a) must be
b) can't be
c) must have been
d) can't have been

14 It .... expensive travelling round London. Bus and underground tickets cost a lot of money.
a) may be
b) can't be
c) must be
d) might be

15 She always gets the full mark in her exams. She .... clever.
a) must have been
b) must be
c) can't be
d) had to be

16 The streets are all muddy. It .... heavily yesterday night.
a) can't have rained
b) must rain
c) must have rained
d) would have rained

17 I have just seen Omar at school now. He .... be at home.
a) can't
b) mustn't
c) can
d) must

18 I am sure I lost one of my school books. I .... have dropped it somewhere.
a) must
b) can't
c) shall
d) will

19 My son was given a reward at school. He .... have worked hard.
a) must
b) can't
c) should
d) mustn't

20 I can't find my new pair of shoes. They .... I have no idea.
a) might have been stolen
b) can't be stolen
c) must have been stolen
d) can't have been stolen

21 There is water all over the floor. Someone .... the taps on.
a) must forget
b) can't forget
c) must have forgotten
d) can't have forgotten

22 My father .... take us on a picnic next week. He hasn't decided yet.
a) must
b) might
c) need
d) can't

23 The door of the cell was broken. So, the prisoners .... through it.
a) must escape
b) must have escaped
c) can't escape
d) can't have escaped

24 Noha .... a surprise. We arrived suddenly and she didn't expect that.
a) must have got
b) must get
c) can't have got
d) mustn't have got

25 It .... our train. It is on time exactly.
a) can't be
b) must be
c) can't have been
d) might be

26 Nada didn't phone me as I asked her. She .... busy.
a) can't be
b) must be
c) can't have been
d) must have been

27 It .... be a bird. It doesn't lay eggs.

a) may b) might c) can't d) must

28 **A:** Do you think he is annoyed? **B:** I am not sure, he .... be.

a) must b) can't c) should d) might

29 Mona .... have telephoned me as I was in all day.

a) must b) may c) might d) can't

2 Fill in the space:

1 When I went to school yesterday, I was surprised. There were no teachers or students, so, I said I might ....(a).......... been too early. When I went in, there was also no one in my class, so I thought they might have ....(b).......... to the playground for a physical education lesson. When I came near the playground, I didn't hear any voice and I didn't meet anyone. I was sure that they ....(c).......... have been in the playground. I was so worried and ran to know what was happening. I finally woke up and discovered that it ....(d).......... a dream.

2 My daughter loved dolls until she was about 8 years old. That's why, her fear of dolls ....(a).......... have been a phobia she was born with. It ....(b).......... have happened slowly, like an illness. To try helping her, her mother brought her an old doll, then took off its hair in front of my daughter to show her that it ....(c).......... a real person. Here my daughter's fear turned ....(d).......... a real phobia. Now if she sees any doll, she feels ill.

3 Nada always gets high marks in her exams, so we thought that she may be clever. But in her last exam, she didn't get good marks; she ....(a).......... have studied hard as usual. In fact, we know that her father was ill in the hospital and she ....(b).......... study well as she was busy with him. We think she ....(c).......... be sad for her result. But now we are sure that she must ....(d).......... happy as her father is getting better.

4 I am going to retire next week and I am looking forward to it. For the first time in my life I will be free to do the things I like. I have always wanted that. I ....(a).......... get up early to travel to work anymore. I don't ....(b).......... to earn a living. My wife and I ....(c).......... be able to spend more time together travelling around the country and the world. I think it ....(d).......... be wonderful to be free.

5 Everyone in the world may have something to fear. A child ....(a).......... fear being in the dark. An old man on the other hand, ...(b).......... fear losing his life. Although fears might also change throughout life, most people remain having a fear ....(c).......... something. I used to fear war, small places and even heights, but I have overcome these fears. I sometimes feel that some of my fears are irrational and so some people think that they must ....(d).......... phobias.



General Exercises (Lessons 1&2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My neighbour got .... while travelling to Alexandria.
   a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost
2. I noticed her glass was ...., and offered her some more water.
   a) full b) filled c) empty d) free
3. Salem is one of my oldest friends. I .... him completely.
   a) hate b) trust c) distrust d) dislike
4. They wanted to .... him from the soldiers. He is suspected of murder.
   a) hide b) appear c) cover d) remain
5. It was a very difficult maths problem, but I managed to .... it.
   a) prove b) solve c) improve d) include
6. We know the man is .... because we saw him take the money.
   a) innocent b) guilty c) mysterious d) respectable
7. The new carpet was made by a very skillful ....
   a) weaver b) tutor c) tailor d) sewer
8. Everyone was friendly .... us on our travels, so they were amazing.
   a) for b) from c) to d) at
9. Surely, he .... his experiment. He's only been in the laboratory for ten minutes.
   a) can't finish b) must finish
   c) can't have finished d) must have finished
10. He .... his train. He'll have to wait two hours until the next one.
    a) must have caught b) might have caught
    c) must have missed d) can't have missed
11. She .... understood the question because she got it wrong.
    a) shouldn't have b) can't have c) must have d) wouldn't have
12. The test .... been very easy. You got the full mark.
    a) can't have b) could have c) might have d) must have
13. Ahmed has a very good job so he .... a lot of money. I am sure.
    a) can't have b) must have c) might have d) may have
14. She .... ill. I am not sure.
    a) must have been b) must be c) can't have been d) might be
15. It .... very windy during the night. There are broken branches all over the ground.
    a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been
16. Surely, they .... have brought these heavy pieces of metal by boat. The boat would have sunk.
    a) can't b) must c) may d) ought to

2 Fill in the space:

Two weeks ago, I bought a new pair of shoes. Really it was a good pair ....(a)............ cost me much money. I went home and the next day I went out wearing .... (b)............ . My new shoes ....(c)............ have been made of the best leather and so they were so comfortable. I was and I am still so happy ....(d)............ them that I recommend the shoe shop to all my friends.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In 1945, the first bomb was dropped on Hiroshima in Japan. It produced an explosion equal to 20,000 tons of T.N.T. (until then the most powerful explosive that the world had known). It killed about 200,000 people. If this bomb had not been used then, the world wouldn't have realised to the full of destructive power. Since then, a hydrogen bomb has been perfected by certain world powers. It is believed that this terrible bomb, if it is exploded, will release energy equal to 100 megatons that is to say one hundred million tons, of T.N.T. The Hiroshima bomb killed 200,000 people which is a terrible number of deaths; but if a single hydrogen bomb is used in warfare, it will kill about a thousand million people. If five such bombs are dropped on the five inhabited continents, the entire population of the world, which is estimated at about three thousand million people, will be destroyed. This is the reason why the great mass of the people in the world do not want another war. If there were another war, and if hydrogen bombs were to be used in it, the whole world would be destroyed.

It is a pity that in this atomic age, countries compete in the field of armament and every day we hear of a new weapon which threatens to put an end to our life and increases the pains of the suffering humanity.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is a fact that ....
   - **a)** the first atomic bomb was not dropped on a Japanese city
   - **b)** the population of the world is about a thousand million people
   - **c)** an atomic bomb is far more powerful than any bomb used before
   - **d)** a new bomb will be less destructive.
2. Certain world powers are to blame because ....
   - **a)** an atomic bomb is filled with T.N.T
   - **b)** a hydrogen bomb has been perfected
   - **c)** most of the people are not afraid of another war
   - **d)** one megaton equals hundred tons
3. The passage clearly shows that ....
   - **a)** a hydrogen bomb could kill far less people than an atomic bomb
   - **b)** an atomic bomb is more powerful than a hydrogen bomb
   - **c)** a hydrogen bomb is less powerful than an atomic bomb
   - **d)** a hydrogen bomb could kill far more people than an atomic bomb.

4 If the atomic bomb had not been dropped on Hiroshima, ...
a) the hydrogen bomb would have been invented
b) the world would be destroyed
c) the world would not have known how powerful the atomic bomb was
d) it would have destroyed the whole world

5 The word in the passage which means "**whole**" is ....
a) powerful b) equal c) perfect d) entire

B) Answer the following questions:

6 Why do you think most of the people in the world are afraid of another war?
7 When do you think the world would be a safer place?
8 What fact did the world realise after the first atomic bomb had been used?

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Close friendship is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health.
2. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.
3. There are some very simple measures that may keep you healthy for longer. The first of such measures is to brush your teeth with dental paste twice daily.

B) Translate into English:

١- من المعروف أن الخوف الزائد من الامتحانات سلاح ذو حدين، فأحيانًا يساعدك على المذاكرة وأحيانًا يجعلك متوترًا، وهو ما يؤثر سلبيًا على تركيزك.

٢- يجب علينا أن نضع فى اعتبارنا أن هناك بعض الأشخاص غير القادرين على التحكم فى مخاوفهم؛ لذلك فهم فى حاجة للمساعدة للتغلب على هذه المخاوف.

٣- الأمية و الجهل و الفقر هم الأعداء الحقيقيون لإعاقة تقدم أى دولة، ومن هنا يجب أن يكون هناك طرق و حلول مناسبة وجذرية للتخلص منها.

Enrich your Vocabulary

relieve	يريح/يهدأ	stress	الضغط/التوتر
mental	عقلى	stability	الاستقرار
measures	إجراءات	dental paste	معجون أسنان
extreme fear	الخوف الزائد	put into consideration	يضع فى الاعتبار
ignorance	الجهل	hinder	يعوق
illiteracy	الأمية	poverty	الفقر

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following:

1. How to keep healthy.
2. Your role as a student in serving your country.



Lessons 3&4





Key Vocabulary

characters (n)	شخصيات
pace (n)	سرعة
page-turner (n)	كتاب شيق
plot (n)	حبكة الرواية
theme (n)	موضوع الكتاب/القصة

Vocabulary on Reading

abandoned (adj)	مهجور
adopt (v) – ed	يتبنى
check (v) – ed	يفحص/يتأكد
close (adj)	قريب
community (n)	مجتمع
crime (n)	جريمة
divide (v) – d	يُقسم
ensure (v) – d	يؤكد
equally (adv)	بشكل متساوٍ
event (n)	حدث
explain (v) – ed	يشرح/يفسر
find (v)	يجد
happiness (n)	سعادة
interesting (adj)	شيق
legend (n)	أسطورة
puzzle (n)	لغز
recommend (v) – ed	يوصي بـ
share (v) – d	يشارك
show (v)	يظهر
stones (n)	أحجار
surprise (n)	مفاجأة
warehouse (n)	مستودع

Workbook Vocabulary

archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار
around (prep)	حوالى
BCE = Before Common Era	قبل الميلاد
bear (n)	دب
believe (v) – d	يصدق/يؤمن/يعتقد
bury (v) (y) – buried	يدفن
coast (n)	ساحل
deep (adj)	عميق
describe (v) – d	يصف
distant (adj)	بعيد
funny (adj)	مضحك
lake (n)	بحيرة
laugh (v)	يضحك
lie (v)	يقع
monster (n)	وحش
pharaohs (n)	فراعنة
pirate (n)	قرصان
shape (n)	شكل
success (n)	نجاح
traditional (adj)	تقليدى
treasure (n)	كنز
unusual (adj)	غير عادى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

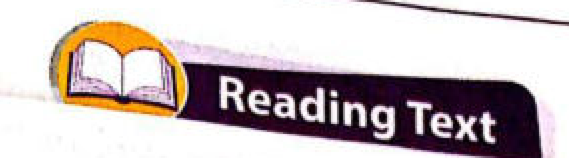
a lonely man	رجل وحيد
all the gold was gone	ضاع كل الذهب
bring them back into	يعود بهم إلى
drive across	يقود عبر
feel like	يشعر وكأنه
go back to	يعود إلى
agree to	يوافق على
belong to	ينتمى إلى
full of	مملوء بـ
good at	جيد فى
happen to	يحدث لـ
go wrong	يخطئ/يتعطل
in the north of	فى الشمال
mystery stories	قصص الغموض
take photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ
take place	يحدث
work better as	يعمل أفضل كـ
know about	يعرف عن
live on	يعيش فى
recommend ... to	يوصى/يرشح ... لـ
return to	يعود إلى
take .... to	يأخذ ... إلى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
abandon	يهجر	abandonment	هجرة	abandoned	مهجور
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
close	يقرب	closeness	قرب	close	قريب
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep	عميق
describe	يصف	description	وصف	describable	يمكن وصفه
distance	يبعد	distance	مسافة	distant	بعيد
equalise	يعادل	equality	مساواة	equal	مساوٍ
laugh	يضحك	laugh laughter	ضحك ضحك	laughable	مضحك







Reading Text

Ismail

I had to read *Silas Marner* when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much then. However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The pace[1] was quite fast and the plot[2] is full of surprises[3].

I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to these wonderful characters[4]. I would recommend[5] this book to anyone who enjoys mystery[6] stories.

Nadia

This is a very interesting story of a sad and lonely man who finds happiness when he adopts[7] a girl. It isn't a page-turner[8], but I liked the way Eliot used the theme[9] of community[10]. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can feel like they don't belong[11] to their community but events[12] can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of *Silas Marner* might have worked better as a short story rather than a novel.

What happened to the gold?

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an abandoned[13] warehouse[14]. They agreed to share[15] it equally[16]. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John checked to see if anyone else was close[17]. John and Jake took it to a house to divide[18] it. Jane went to ensure[19] they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of stones and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?

(1) سرعة/إيقاع الأحداث
(2) الحبكة
(3) مفاجآت
(4) شخصيات
(5) يوصي
(6) غموض
(7) يتبنى
(8) كتاب شيق
(9) موضوع
(10) مجتمع
(11) ينتمي
(12) أحداث
(13) مهجور
(14) مستودع
(15) يشارك
(16) بالتساوي
(17) قريب
(18) يقسم
(19) يتأكد من



Workbook Text

Boy: This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the mountains. The theme[1] is how life in a village is changing in the modern world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many traditional[2] parts of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

Girl: This book is very funny! It is about a family who drive across the country for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that go wrong! The car is stopped by a bear[3], and they meet a lot of strange[4] people. My favourite character[5] is a police officer who is not very good at his job! I laughed[6] a lot and would recommend this book.

Cleopatra VII

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 BCE. The famous writer, Plutarch, described[7] the beautiful place where she was buried[8]. However, although archaeologists[9] have found much older pharaohs[10], nobody knows where Cleopatra lies[11] today. In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra.

Oak Island

Oak Island is on the east coast[12] of Canada. People believe[13] that a pirate[14] called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure[15] and buried it on the island in the seventeenth century. He wanted to go back to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have tried to find the treasure, without success.

Loch Ness

Loch Ness is a very deep[16] lake in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, strange animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness Monster[17]. Some people have even taken photos of a distant[18] shape that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything unusual[19]. But people still believe that something lives in the lake.

موضوع الرواية (1)
تقليدى (2)
دب (3)
غريب (4)
شخصية (5)
ضحك (6)
وصف (7)
دُفِنت (8)
علماء الآثار (9)
الفراعنة (10)
تقع (11)
الساحل الشرقى (12)
يعتقد (13)
قرصان (14)
كنز (15)
عميق (16)
وحش (17)
بعيد (18)
غير عادى (19)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is difficult to keep up with the rapid .... of change in the modern age of technology.
   a) plot b) pace c) theme d) page-turner
2. The last novel of Ehsan Abdel Kodos is a real .... I couldn't stop reading.
   a) theme b) page-turner c) plot d) community
3. Adel is the most interesting .... in the play. There are more sides of his character.
   a) pace b) theme c) plot d) character
4. The .... of the book is the conflict between people and nature.
   a) pace b) character c) theme d) community
5. The .... of the story was boring, but the pace was good.
   a) plot b) character c) moral d) occasion



character شخصية	these are the people in the story
pace سرعة الأحداث فى الرواية	this is how fast the story moves/how quickly things seem to happen in a story
page-turner كتاب شيق	a book that is very exciting
plot حبكة	what happens in a story line
theme موضوع الرواية	this is the idea or moral in the story/the main subject or idea in a book

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
abandoned (adj)	مهجور	deserted	inhabited	مسكون
close (adj)	قريب	nearby/ near	distant/far/remote	بعيد
equally (adv)	بشكل متساوٍ	evenly	unequally	بشكل غير متساوٍ
happiness (n)	سعادة	delight/ pleasure	displeasure/ gloom	عدم السعادة
interesting (adj)	شيق	amusing/ entertaining	boring/ unattractive	ممل
deep (adj)	عميق	rooted/ buried	shallow/ superficial	ضحل
distant (adj)	بعيد	far	nearby	قريب
funny (adj)	مضحك	humorous/ comical	serious/ sad	جاد
traditional (adj)	تقليدى	conventional	unusual	غير تقليدى
unusual (adj)	غير عادى	extraordinary	ordinary	عادى

Notes on Vocabulary



adopt — adapt

adopt — يتبنى (طفل/فكرة)

- Sally adopted a girl after the death of her husband.

adapt (to) — يتكيف مع

- The children found it hard to adapt to the new school.

lay — lie

lay – laid – laid — تضع البيض/يجهز/يضع

- He laid his hand on my shoulder.
- The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food.
- John was laying the table for lunch.

lie – lay – lain — ينام/يرقد/يقع

- Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.

lie- lied - lied — يكذب

- She lied to her father about her exam results.

coast **shore** **beach** **bank**

coast ساحل
- Alexandria is located on the north coast of Egypt.

shore شاطئ البحر (البحيرة)
- I saw some boats on the shore of the sea.

beach البلاج (الجزء الرملى عند حافة البحر)
- We sat on the beach and ate ice cream.

bank ضفة النهر أو القناة
- Trees grow along the bank of rivers.

Language Notes

1. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books.

- لاحظ استخدام as long as هنا بمعنى فى نفس طول.

- You can go as long as you're home for dinner.

، كما يمكن استخدامها بمعنى طالما مثل السياق السابق.

2. The pirates looked very angrily.

- اذا جاء بعد كلمة look ظرف فهى تستخدم بمعنى ينظر.

- The pirates looked very angry.

- أما اذا جاء بعد كلمة look صفة فهى تستخدم بمعنى يبدو.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By nine o'clock the .... was already crowded with people.
a) coast b) sea c) limit d) beach

2. We could see a boat about a mile from the .... of the sea.
a) shore b) bank c) border d) limit

3. My brother .... the idea of building a new villa in Sharm El-Sheikh.
a) adapted b) adopted c) took d) came

4. We spent our holiday in a town which .... halfway between Rome and Florence.
a) lies b) lays c) localises d) places

5. It took me a while to .... to the new job.
a) adore b) adopt c) adapt d) adorn

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Bravery is traditionally part of the Arab ....
   a) pace b) theme
   c) plot d) character
2. The word "................." means a book that is very exciting.
   a) page-follower b) page-burner
   c) page-turner d) page-corner
3. We all admire the film because it has a very simple .... suitable for all ages.
   a) plot b) character
   c) community d) incident
4. When his ship sank, he was able to reach a/an .... island. There is no one to talk to.
   a) habited b) abandoned
   c) inhabited d) assisted
5. The officer .... our passports before we boarded the plane.
   a) looked b) researched
   c) checked d) pulled
6. If you need bread or milk, ask about a/an .... shop to buy from not to be late.
   a) attached b) far
   c) remote d) close
7. The President announced a new plan to reduce .... in the country.
   a) crimes b) goals
   c) achievements d) aims
8. The teacher .... us into three groups to solve the maths problems.
   a) divided b) parted
   c) explained d) found
9. A .... is a large building for storing large quantities of goods.
   a) workhouse b) warehouse
   c) farmhouse d) sports house
10. I tried to solve the ...., but I gave up as it was too difficult.
    a) confusion b) maze
    c) puzzle d) tale

11 The ancient Egyptian history is full of .... like Isis and Osiris.
a) crimes b) goals c) legends d) efforts

12 The abbreviation "................" is short for "Before Common Era".
a) BEC b) BCE c) CEB d) BCR

13 He killed a lot of innocents. Only a .... could kill all this number of people.
a) monster b) human c) man d) child

14 Many people now call for a return to .... values which young people neglect.
a) new b) gradual c) traditional d) regular

15 After the accident, I .... the car back into the garage to have it repaired.
a) gave b) delivered c) went d) brought

16 I turned round for my bag at the train station, but it was ....
a) gone b) given c) done d) made

17 I .... this book to anyone with an interest in chemistry.
a) advise b) insult c) invite d) recommend

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms — EXercises

18 Can you .... a photo of me and Rachel?
a) make b) take c) give d) have

19 Damietta is an important port in the north .... Egypt.
a) at b) on c) of d) from

20 This is the house which belonged .... my grandfather when I was young.
a) from b) at c) with d) to

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

21 Happiness is more important than money. The antonym of the word "**happiness**" is ....
a) delight b) displeasure c) boredom
d) deepness e) gloom

22 Do you remember any funny stories about work? The synonym of the word "**funny**" is ....
a) comical b) humorous c) far
d) shallow e) serious

23 The word .... is the opposite of the word "close".
a) far b) remote c) near
d) nearby e) amusing



Important Notes



- من الممكن استخدام can't للتعبير عن أنه ليس من الممكن القيام بالفعل It is impossible.

▶ You can't drive the car, you haven't got the the licence yet.

- من الممكن استخدام could have + p.p. للتعبير عن إمكانية حدوث فعل ولكن لم نفعله.

▶ I travelled by train, but I could have travelled by car.

- من الممكن أن يكون الزمن مضارعًا ولكن الاستنتاج في الماضي والعكس كما يلي:

▶ Hala got the full marks in the exam. She must be clever.

▶ He is a successful professor. He must have been a clever student.

- عند اللوم/العتاب نستخدم should have + p.p. أو shouldn't have + p.p.

▶ You got a very bad mark. You should have studied hard.
= It means that you didn't study hard and it was wrong.

▶ He ate bad food and he became ill. He shouldn't have eaten it.
= It means he ate it and it was wrong.

لتلخيص ما سبق من هذه القاعدة

الكلمات الدالة	Present في المضارع		Past في الماضي
▶ I'm sure ▶ I'm certain ▶ I think ▶ I believe ▶ Certainly	must + مصدر - I'm sure he is a teacher. - He must be a teacher.	للإثبات	must have + p.p. - I think he won the match. - He must have won the match.
	can't + مصدر - I'm sure, he isn't poor. - He can't be poor.	للنفي	can't have + p.p. - I think he didn't succeed. - He can't have succeeded.
▶ not very sure/unsure ▶ very uncertain ▶ It is possible ▶ I don't think ▶ I don't believe	might + مصدر - It's possible he plays well. - He might play well.	عدم تأكد مطلق	might have + p.p. - I don't think he phoned me. - He might have phoned me.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My uncle didn't come back to my birthday party. He .... busy.
a) must have been
b) can't have been
c) might be
d) should have been

2 It was wrong of you to sleep before finishing your study. You .... that.
a) shouldn't do
b) can have done
c) shouldn't have done
d) ought to have done

3 He doesn't look happy. He .... passed the exam.
a) must have
b) can't have
c) had
d) could

4 You .... get into the lion cage. It is impossible.
a) must
b) might
c) can't
d) may not

5 He rang me this morning, but I didn't answer. I .... asleep.
a) must have been
b) can't have been
c) must be
d) can't be

6 Look, it's raining! I .... an umbrella. Now, I must buy one.
a) should bring
b) must have brought
c) can't have brought
d) ought to have brought

7 She .... her mobile phone. She called me from a friend's phone.
a) can't have lost
b) should have lost
c) mustn't have lost
d) must have lost

8 The Cairo metro .... improved people's journeys to work and made it easier.
a) ought to have
b) must have
c) can't have
d) might not have

9 She is a very efficient professor. She must .... a very good university student.
a) be
b) have been
c) have
d) had been

10 The phone rang, but my mother didn't hear it. She .... in the kitchen.
a) must be
b) must have been
c) can't have been
d) should have been

11 I couldn't find my wallet, I .... it at home. But, I am not sure.
a) must leave
b) can't have left
c) may leave
d) might have left

12 They ate all the food. They .... hungry.
a) are
b) must be
c) must have been
d) can't have been

13 He left his glasses at school yesterday. I hope someone .... found them.
a) must have
b) might have
c) can't have
d) can have

14 I cannot find my handbag. Someone .... it by mistake. I am sure about this.
a) must take
b) cannot take
c) must have taken
d) can't have taken

15 Mona .... have telephoned me as I didn't go out and I was in all day.
a) must
b) may
c) might
d) can't

16 We spent the weekend in the farm but we .... it in Cairo.
a) must have spent
b) couldn't have spent
c) can't have spent
d) could have spent

17 My mother .... me about her problem with her neighbour. I am not sure.
a) must have told
b) might have told
c) might tell
d) can't have told

18 Ali .... have travelled to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed.
a) can't
b) must
c) may
d) might

19 Ola was at home all day yesterday. She .... at work.
a) shouldn't be
b) must have been
c) can't have been
d) must be

20 There .... a sand storm. The streets are covered in sand.
a) can't be
b) can't have been
c) must be
d) must have been

21 **A:** I don't know where my school bag is, Mum.
B: It's not here. You .... have left it on the train.
a) might
b) can't
c) should
d) ought to

22 Hala's keys are on the table, she .... them when she left this morning.
a) can't see
b) can't have seen
c) should have seen
d) might see

23 She passed me in the street without speaking. She .... me.
a) must have seen
b) can't have seen
c) must see
d) can't see

24 Samar .... all the food alone. She is ill now.
a) must eat
b) can't have eaten
c) should have eaten
d) shouldn't have eaten

2 Fill in the space:

1 If you fail once, you will not lose heart, but try again. Nobody succeeds in life at the first attempt. Most people fail in life, not because they do not know their job, but because they gave up ....(a)............ the first failure. Failures ....(b)............ not discourage you. There is a person, ...(c)............ fails, he tries, he fails again, but tries again. He fails a third time, but tries once more. At last he succeeds. So, if at first you don't succeed, try, try and try again. It ....(d)............ be very hard to start from the beginning, but not impossible.

2 I have a very absent-minded friend. He is always late for work because he ....(a)............ up late and forgets things and has to go home to get them. His boss told him that he ....(b)............ lose his job if he was late for work again. My friend was very worried. I ....(c)............ him to have a routine by making a list and sticking it on his bedroom wall. The list was to remind him to wind his alarm clock and to make sure he ....(d)............ everything he needed for the next morning; a clean shirt, clean socks, and so on. It also reminded him to get his wallet, key and eyeglasses.

3 If you are a free person, some people say that you will be happy. They say that you ....(a)............ do anything if you don't want. If you like something, you ....(b)............ do it. If you hate something, you needn't do it. They also say, you ....(c)............ be stressed as you don't have any work to do. But I think this is not true as any one of us has something to do during their life ....(d)............ they are free or not.

4 Last week, I had a very bad and tiring day. When I went to visit my friend, I didn't find him. I said he ....(a)............ have forgotten that I was coming. When I went to the supermarket, I didn't find my wallet, so I said I must ....(b)............ lost it in my car but it wasn't there. I think I ....(c)............ be normal and I know I should see a doctor. I think it ....(d)............ be a trouble with my mind.

5 My friend asked me about a place to spend his free time in, I told him a club ....(a)............ be the perfect place. Most clubs offer top quality services ....(b)............ you become a member in them. People ....(c)............ offer different kinds of sport. They can even play matches with each other as a sort of competition. Some other people can just sit and watch different TV films ....(d)............ the big screens of the clubs.



- **A book review:**
  - It is a form of literary criticism in which a book is analysed based on content, style and merit. It is the opinion of the writer of the review. A book review's length may vary from a single paragraph to an essay.
  - A book review can be an evaluation on the book on the basis of personal taste.

A book I have read

One of my hobbies is reading books. I have read a lot of books, most of which I bought from the nearby bookshop, but sometimes I borrow some books from my friends or library. Recently, I have read a wonderful book named *"How to win friends and influence people"* which was written by Dale Carnegie. I found the book very useful and I can recommend it to everyone.

In the book, the writer told the stories of many successful people who achieved their targets by influencing others. He really taught me how to have a conversation with partners or friends without arguing. He also showed the best way to persuade people and some tips in communication. I think this book is necessary for everyone.

Speaking

Explaining mysteries

Your friend read a story about a treasure in an island. The story has an open end and he talkes to you about it. He suggests some explanations for this mystery.

- Prepare answers for the following questions:

- Where do you think the treasure had gone?
- If someone had found it. Why didn't he tell anyone about it?
- Do you think the treasure is still on the island?
- Where do you think the pirate hid the treasure?

Practice

- Now you are ready to complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Amany and Mona about a mystery

Mona : Did you read "*The Treasure Island*" novel?

Amany : ....

Mona : Do you think the treasure is still on the island?

Amany : ....

Mona : Where do you think the treasure had gone?

Amany : ....



General Exercises (Lessons 3&4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The synonym of the word "**abandoned**" is ....
   a) inhabited b) housed c) homed d) deserted
2. The ocean is very deep. The antonym of the word "**deep**" is ....
   a) far b) remote c) rooted d) shallow
3. Many people .... that life is a journey not a race to be won.
   a) believe b) describe c) bury d) lie
4. Could you .... your reasons for choosing this job?
   a) tell b) explain c) inquire d) advise
5. Today's newspaper has a very .... report from one of their correspondents in India.
   a) close b) deep c) abandoned d) interesting
6. This film is very serious. I'd prefer to watch something that will make us ....
   a) laugh b) cry c) weep d) sad
7. The police officer asked my friends to .... the robbers who stole the money.
   a) realise b) describe c) know d) specialise
8. When the fire started, the kitchen was full .... smoke.
   a) from b) in c) at d) of
9. Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt his head. He .... more careful.
   a) must have been b) should be
   c) might have been d) should have been
10. I think that this building .... a historical one. It was built about 240 years ago.
    a) can't be b) couldn't be c) should be d) must be
11. They left 3 hours ago, so they .... arrived by now, it is not far.
    a) might have b) can't have c) may have d) must have
12. She didn't see her brother yesterday. He .... the flat very early.
    a) must have left b) must leave c) can't have left d) can't leave
13. Mona .... much time with her family. Now they are all angry with her.
    a) must have spent b) might have spent
    c) shouldn't have spent d) should have spent
14. From now on we .... our doctors to have regular check.
    a) should have seen b) must see
    c) must have seen d) can't see
15. Ramy has a broken arm, he .... off his bicycle in the race.
    a) must have fallen b) can't fall c) might fall d) can't have fallen
16. This watch .... have cost a lot of money. It is made of gold.
    a) might b) can't c) must d) should

2 Fill in the space:

Some people think that soon everybody will have a computer or a phone. The computer ....(a).............. be the best invention nowadays. They will be connected to the internet ....(b).............. They think that we will get all our information ....(c).............. the internet. They believe that we ....(d).............. need libraries and that paper books will be part of history.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Heba had worked in nursing for many years. She was in charge of four other nurses and she was respected by each member of staff at the hospital. It was difficult and sometimes very stressful work. She was responsible for the health of a lot of people. However, she always felt happy when people recovered and finally went home again. She always found this very rewarding. She worked such long hours that it was sometimes difficult to be sociable after work. She usually went home and watched a film on television with her family. She found this a good way to unwind.

It was a Tuesday morning. Heba had started work very early that day and she was doing her regular check of the patients. She gave them their medicine and made sure that they were comfortable. Then she went to check a new patient. He was in a private room, separate from the other patients. He was a man who had been sent to the hospital the night before after a bad traffic accident. Heba looked at the man, who was unconscious when he first arrived. Heba had seen him before. He was a famous actor who everybody in her family knew and liked. The doctor said that he had suffered a bad head injury from the crash. He was so ill that he would have to stay in hospital for many weeks. But something was very strange. Heba had seen him in a film the week before. In the film, he had to go to hospital after an accident, and he had later died. Heba didn't want that to happen in her hospital!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why was the man who came to hospital unconscious?
   - a) He had fallen asleep.
   - b) He was not alive.
   - c) He had had a bad accident.
   - d) The nurse did not know.
2. Why do you think that he was in a private room?
   - a) He was very poor.
   - b) He had a dangerous disease.
   - c) He didn't like other people.
   - d) He was famous.

3 What was unusual about the actor coming to hospital?
a) The same thing had happened to him in a film.
b) He had never been there before.
c) He was never usually ill.
d) He usually had private doctors.

4 What do you think the word "unwind" means?
a) Go to sleep. b) Sit down. c) Relax. d) Make money.

5 The famous actor went to hospital ....
a) on Monday b) on Tuesday c) on Wednesday d) two days before

B) Answer the following questions:

6 Why was it sometimes very stressful at Heba's work?
7 What do you think will happen to the actor? Why?
8 Heba was a good nurse, explain. Mention two reasons.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The government should work hard to improve the infrastructure of many slums or we will have many disasters.
2. It is not reasonable to criticise everything without taking any positive step towards progress. We should work more and speak less.
3. In the past, women suffered a lot from illiteracy and gender discrimination. Also, they didn't have any political rights.

B) Translate into English:

١- إن احترام المعلم وتقديره واجب على كل فرد فى المجتمع صغيرًا كان أو كبيرًا؛ حيث إن المعلم هو أساس العملية التعليمية.
٢- إن تنفيذ الحكومة تحت قيادة الرئيس لمشروع قناة السويس الجديدة خير دليل على إصرار المصريين على بناء بلادهم.
٣- بفضل وسائل الإعلام والأقمار الصناعية أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة، حيث من السهل التواصل مع أى شخص فى أى دولة فى العالم وأنت جالس فى مكانك.

Enrich your Vocabulary

undoubtedly	بلا شك	ignorance	الجهل
annually	سنوى	slums	عشوائيات
contribute to	يساهم فى	infrastructure	البنية التحتية
concentration	تركيز	disaster	كارثة

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on one of the following topics:

1. A review of a story you read.
2. The benefits of hard work.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After a short time, he .... his dream of becoming an actor.
   a) connected b) mended
   c) funded d) abandoned
2. The celebration of the new year .... the attention of mass media.
   a) tangled b) engaged
   c) managed d) ranged
3. Take three .... backwards and then stop.
   a) pieces b) paces
   c) faces d) races
4. The .... of the film contains some of adventures as well as a love story.
   a) plot b) shot
   c) scene d) view
5. The Ministry of Health .... an important idea to set up new hospitals for the homeless children.
   a) dotted b) dated
   c) adopted d) adapted
6. This necklace is very expensive because it was made of a rare ....
   a) stone b) rock
   c) gravel d) sand
7. I don't know how they can .... working under these terrible conditions.
   a) bear b) capable of
   c) enable d) carry
8. The writer .... herself in her writing.
   a) buried b) put
   c) close d) shut
9. The book's ending .... me; it just didn't seem to make sense.
   a) puzzled b) analysed
   c) tested d) encouraged
10. One of the novel's clear................ was the power of hope.
    a) themes b) paces
    c) plots d) characters

11 It was .... lovely day that we went to the mountains.

a) such
b) such a
c) so
d) too

12 The prisoner is thought .... by climbing over the wall.

a) that escaped
b) that they escaped
c) to be escaped
d) to have escaped

13 How often do you .... your car serviced?

a) have
b) got
c) allow
d) help

14 Her mother suggested that .... and see the doctor.

a) she go
b) she goes
c) her to go
d) going

15 I regret .... you that we can't hire you. We don't have vacant jobs.

a) telling
b) to tell
c) tell
d) told

16 .... it not been for him, I would have drowned.

a) Had
b) Were
c) Should
d) If

17 I can't afford .... a new flat these days.

a) buying
b) to buy
c) having bought
d) buy

18 For 3 days last holiday, I .... out with my friends to buy new clothes.

a) used to go
b) went
c) would go
d) was gone

19 If only I .... these tickets. They were really expensive.

a) had bought
b) didn't buy
c) haven't bought
d) hadn't bought

20 By this time tomorrow, we .... the new manager of the company.

a) will met
b) will have met
c) will be meeting
d) had met



Based on Unit 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My old friend was found .... after attacking his boss in his office.
a) innocent b) guilty c) mysterious d) proved

2 Our neighbour George is a very .... man. He has nobody to communicate with.
a) lonely b) alone c) insulated d) along

3 Our teacher told us that Alexandria .... in the north of Egypt.
a) lies b) lays c) locates d) places

4 All the necessary steps had been taken to .... their safety.
a) share b) ensure c) divide d) bring

5 You can recognise a tree by the .... of its leaves.
a) structure b) form c) root d) shape

6 A/An .... is someone who studies the buildings, graves, tools and other objects of people who lived in the past.
a) archaeologist b) architect c) monster d) pirate

7 My sister won't agree .... our mother going into a nursing home.
a) at b) of c) to d) from

8 My grandmother is staying .... us this week.
a) in b) with c) at d) from

9 He got the full marks. He .... hard.
a) must have worked b) can't have worked
c) might have worked d) must work

10 She is wearing a white coat. She .... a nurse.
a) can't be b) must have been
c) might be d) might have been

11 My friend didn't come to school yesterday. He .... ill.
a) must be b) must have been
c) can't be d) can't have been

12 He has just drunk a lot of water. He .... thirsty now.
a) must be b) might be
c) can't be d) can't have been

13 The toys are everywhere in the room. The children .... there.
a) must play b) must have played
c) can't have played d) might play

14 Samy .... a very good player otherwise, he wouldn't have won.

a) might be
b) can be
c) must be
d) could be

Choose TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

15 I found the book quite interesting. The synonym of the word "**interesting**" is ....

a) amusing
b) deep
c) rooted
d) entertaining
e) humorous

16 The castle is on an island surrounded by a deep lake. The antonym of the word "**deep**" is ....

a) rooted
b) shallow
c) buried
d) near
e) superficial

17 **Fill in the space:**

I don't like being in very small places. When I ....(a).............. 15, I was travelling on the underground. ....(b).............. it stopped in a tunnel. Most people stayed calm, but I began to panic. I ran up and down the train crying and shouting. It ....(c).............. be a phobia not ordinary fear. I decided ....(d).............. to travel on the underground again.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People are trying many ways to solve the problem of finding "green energy" that is clean and does not cause pollution. In some places plants are being grown which can be used as food and fuel. For example, sunflowers are grown for the oil in their seeds. However, once the seeds have been taken out, the rest of the plant can be dried and burnt. An old solution in India is to dry animal waste and form it into bricks for burning. The Chinese improve on this and keep the waste until it produces methane gas which they use for cooking and heating. Solar power could be one of the best future sources of energy. All over the world it is already being used for such jobs as heating water in houses and powering machines to water plants. But there is a way to make even better use of the sun. In space, because the sun never stops shining, it can supply solar energy for twenty-four hours a day. Space scientists have suggested building a solar power station in space. It would produce huge amounts of power which could be sent down to the earth. To build a station in space like this would be very expensive, but once the station was working, the energy from it would be almost free.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 Solar power means energy from ....

a) plants
b) atoms
c) fossil fuels
d) the sun

19 There are .... sources of energy mentioned in the passage.

a) two
b) three
c) four
d) five

20 Green energy means ....

a) energy green in colour
b) energy produced by green colour
c) energy without pollution
d) energy from oil

21 The underlined word "this" refers to ....

a) the rest of the plant can be dried and burnt
b) heating water and houses and powering machines
c) dry animal waste and form it into bricks for burning
d) building a solar power station in space

22 According to the passage, one disadvantage of building a power station in space is ....

a) bad climate
b) hot air
c) high cost
d) lack of water

B) Answer the following questions:

23 When can the sunflower plant be dried and burnt?
24 Why do scientists think of having solar station in space?
25 How can a station in the space be economical in the long run?

26 **Translate into English:**

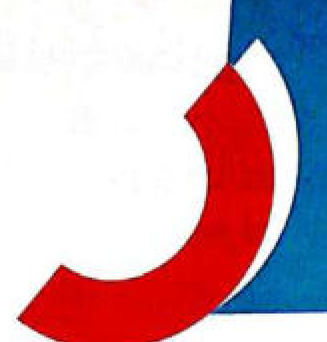
- يعتــرض الكثيــر من الناس على ما يســمى بالعولمة؛ لأنهــم يعتقدون أنها تقوم بخدمــة الدول الغنية وليســت الدول الفقيرة، ويطالبون بتعديل هذا النظام حتى يتحقق العدل بين الدول.

27 **Translate into Arabic:**

One of the first measures to solve overpopulation is to educate the masses to help them understand the need to have one or two children at the most.

28 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

Summer camps for students.



Revision (4)
Units 10, 11 & 12





Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

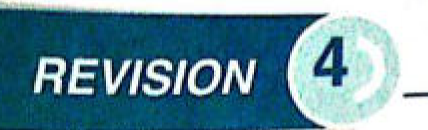
achieve (v) – d	ينجز/يحقق
achievement (n)	إنجاز
adults (n)	بالغون/راشدون
adventure (n)	مغامرة
amazing (adj)	مذهل
believe (v) – d	يؤمن/يعتقد
campaign (n)/ (v) – ed	حملة/يشارك فى حملة
caring (adj)	مراعٍ للآخرين
challenge (n)/(v) – d	تحد/يتحدى
clearly (adv)	بوضوح
communicator (n)	محاور
compete (v) – d	يتنافس
confident (adj)	واثق
developing (adj)	متطور
equal (adj)	متساوٍ
disability (n)	إعاقة
famous (adj)	مشهور
impossible (adj)	مستحيل
muscles (n)	عضلات
mystery (n)	غموض/لغز
opportunity (n)	فرصة
practical (adj)	عملى
pressure (n)	ضغط
publish (v) – ed	ينشر
reliable (adj)	يعتمد عليه
seriously (adv)	بجدية
speech (n)	خطاب
success (n)	نجاح
the United Kingdom	المملكة المتحدة
therapist (n)	معالج نفسى
writer (n)	كاتب/أديب

Vocabulary on Listening

apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر
assistant (n)	بائع
characters (n)	شخصيات
complain (v) (ed)	يشتكى
explain (v)	يشرح
fair (adj)	عادل
glasses (n)	نظارة/نظارات
helpful (adj)	معاون/مفيد
pace (n)	سرعة (الأحداث فى الرواية)
plot (n)	حبكة القصة
suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
surprise (n)	مفاجأة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a challenge for	تحدٍّ لـ
all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم
be the same for	نفس الشيء لـ
compete with	يتنافس مع
famous for	مشهور بـ
find it difficult to	يجد صعوبة فى أن
give herself a name	تعطى نفسها اسمًا
have a disability	لديه إعاقة
have campaigned for	يشارك فى حملة من أجل
have problems speaking	لديه مشكلة فى التحدث
impossible for	مستحيل
made it difficult for	يجعل من الصعب أن
many of	كثير من
much easier for	أكثر سهولة لـ
put pressure on	يضع ضغطًا على
sound amazing	يبدو مذهلًا
speak much more clearly	يتحدث أكثر وضوحًا





Women writers

Many of the world's best writers are women. People read Egyptian writers like Aisha Abd al-Rahman and Miral Al Tahawy in different languages all over the world. You might also know Agatha Christie, famous for her mystery novels, and Lucy Maud Montgomery, who wrote the adventure story *Anne of Green Gables*.

However, it has often been a challenge for women to have their books published. People thought that only men could write good stories. Of course, women have always written very good stories, but in the past, it was almost impossible for women to compete with men. In the past, parents would put pressure on women to get married. If they had a job, it would be something practical like a teacher.

George Eliot, who wrote *Silas Marner*, was really a woman called Mary Ann Evans. She gave herself a man's name so that people would take her books seriously.

Since that time, people have campaigned for women and men writers to have equal opportunities, and it is now much easier for women. Many women writers have achieved a lot of success. However, even today, many women writers sometimes change their names. They still believe that they will have more success as a man than as a woman. For example, English writer J.K. Rowling said she put J.K. rather than Joanna on her books so more boys would read them.



Reading Text (2)

What do they do? This week: A speech therapist

Judy is a speech therapist in a hospital in Cairo. A speech therapist is someone who helps people who have difficulty speaking publicly.

Why did you choose to become a speech therapist?

My mother is a teacher. A child at her school had problems speaking. This made it difficult for her in class, so she also had problems learning. After she saw a speech therapist, she could speak much more clearly. Now, she is one of the best students in her class. When I heard, I decided I wanted to be a speech therapist.

What skills do you need to be a speech therapist?

You need a degree and you also need to be caring, reliable and a good communicator.

Can you give us some examples of the kinds of people you see?

Sometimes children find it difficult to talk because they have a disability. I help by developing muscles around their mouth, for example. Other children have no disability, so you need to find out why they are finding it difficult to speak. They might not be very confident.

Is it the same for adults?

Most of the adults have been ill. But there are some who are not very confident too. There is a very famous example of this.

Who is that?

George VI was king of the United Kingdom from1936 to 1952. When he became king, he found it very difficult to give speeches. So, he asked to see a speech therapist. The therapist, who was an Australian called Lionel Logue, helped him to speak more clearly.

It sounds an amazing achievement. Thank you for talking to us.



Man : Good morning. I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Manager : Good morning. I'm the manager. How can I help you, sir?

Man : Well, I'd like to make a complaint.

Manager : I'm sorry to hear that. What's the problem?

Man : I came here last week. I wanted to buy a book for my brother. It was his birthday, you see.

Manager : OK.

Man : I asked your assistant if he knew an exciting book that I could buy. He explained that he knew lots of exciting books. He asked me if I liked books about the past or the present. I said I liked books about the present.

Manager : Right. Which book did he suggest?

Man : He told me to buy a book called *Run Away Fast*. So I said I would buy it for my brother's birthday the following day.

Manager : Did your brother not like the book?

Man : No, he didn't. He complained that the pace was quite slow, the story was too long and the characters were terrible.

Manager : I do apologise, but the problem is, we have hundreds of books in the shop and everyone likes different ones. Do you know the name of the person who told you to buy *Run Away Fast*?

Man : No, but it was a young man with glasses.

Manager : A young man? Well, it can't have been Tarek because he was on holiday last week. It might have been Ahmed but he doesn't usually wear glasses. I think it must have been Hassan.

Man : Well, can I speak to Hassan?

Manager : I'm afraid he's not here at the moment. But this is what we can do. I'll let you buy two books for the price of one. You can give them both to your brother. I'm sure that your brother will like one of them.

Man : OK, that sounds fair.

Manager : This book is my favourite. It's called *Look Now*. The novel is not very long, the pace is quite fast and the plot is full of surprises. And here is a book called *Summertime*. The characters are wonderful.

Man : Well, thanks, you've been very helpful. I'm sure my brother will like one of these books.

Workbook Exercises

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 Khaled loves his job because it's very ....
a) stressful b) rewarding c) qualified d) boring

2 Gamal wants to do a/an .... to learn how to be a builder.
a) attendant b) industry c) apprenticeship d) degree

3 The most important skill for a teacher is to be a good ....
a) reward b) communicator c) construction d) qualification

4 I didn't enjoy that novel because the .... was very complicated.
a) plot b) characters c) publisher d) poet

5 Becoming a world champion in your sport is an amazing ....
a) competition b) winner c) medal d) achievement

6 Fatma .... her sister that she was going to the library to study.
a) said b) asked c) requested d) told

7 Hazem asked .... he could leave the lesson early.
a) that b) whether c) weather d) to

8 Athletes play well and .... against each other to win medals.
a) complete b) compete c) complement d) compliment

9 The customer .... the shop assistant for some help.
a) told b) said c) thought d) asked

10 I'm going to start a/an .... against cutting down trees in my town.
a) camp b) campaign c) chaos d) advice

11 Look! That is the gold medal .... the athlete won at the Paralympics.
a) who b) which c) where d) when

12 He is really .... , he did many bad things against the law.
a) guilt b) guiltless c) guilty d) guiltlessness

13 Miss Amany is a nurse, so she .... be very caring.
a) must b) can't c) mustn't d) have to

14 That .... be my book. I have one in my bag.
a) must b) can c) can't d) doesn't

15 Mona was absent from school yesterday, so she .... ill.
a) must have been b) can't be c) had to be d) mustn't be

16 I'm sure the police will solve the .... and arrest the criminal.
a) riddle b) mystery c) myth d) puzzle

2 Complete the gaps with one word:

Last week, I asked Imad ....(1)............ he was going to Marwan's birthday party. He ....(2)............ me that he would see me there but I didn't see him. Yesterday, I saw his bike outside his house, so he must ....(3)............ been at home then. In the afternoon, Huda said she ....(4)............ gone to the library with him because they had to prepare for a test. Then, at 6 p.m., Magda said he was at the cinema, so he ....(5)............ have stayed at the library for very long. I think he ....(6)............ have gone straight to the cinema because he had his school bag when Magda saw him. Anyway, when I arrived, he had already ....(7)............, so I still haven't seen him!

3 Change the direct speech into reported speech:

1. "I'm going to study medicine at university." He said he ....
2. "Can I apply for the job before I finish my course?" She asked if she ....
3. "The class have just finished reading this novel." The teacher said ....
4. Where are the Paralympics going to be held in 2028?" He asked where ....
5. "There is a new ramp at the school for wheelchair users."
   Mr Hamed told the students ....
6. "I have to get up at 4.30 a.m. every morning." The farmer told us he ....
7. "My sister got a better grade than me in the maths exam." Dina said ....
8. What qualifications do you need to become a police officer?"
   Fady asked ....

4 A) Translate into English:

- People with disabilities are useful citizens although they are with special needs. They can share in making progress as they have different skills.

B) Translate into English:

- سوق العمل ملىء بالمنافسة الشديدة لنيل فرص العمل المتنوعة فى كل المجالات، حيث تتطلب كل وظيفة مهارات محددة يسعى إليها الباحث عن الوظيفة.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Careers advice for students

Human Resources staff report that although qualifications are important, skills are often what they are most interested in when they want to employ young people. These include practical skills and personal qualities.

They are interested in young people who can stay calm, work well in a team, and accept criticism. You can improve in these areas by playing in a sports team or doing group activities at school.

Other important qualities include being punctual, flexible and having good communication skills. Technology is also important in many jobs, so make sure that you can use a variety of devices and software programs.

An ability to organise things is also useful. You can develop good planning skills while you are still at school by organising a timetable for your studies. And you can also help to organise events at school or with your family.

When you go to a job interview, be prepared to talk about how you have learned your skills and remember to give some examples of situations that have helped you.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What are Human Resources staff most interested in when they recruit young people?
a) Appearance. b) Personality. c) Skills. d) Social studies.

2 Which activity helps you learn to be a good team member?
a) Being a good leader. b) Doing a project with other students.
c) Criticising other students. d) Being a good trainer.

3 You will make a good impression if you are not ....
a) late b) well prepared
c) able to use a computer d) careful

4 Preparation for a job interview should include ....
a) thinking of some new skills you want to learn
b) thinking about how you learned your skills
c) giving examples of situations which you have enjoyed
d) asking for a high salary

5 Another meaning of the word "**improve**" is ....
a) prove b) decline c) reflect d) develop

B) Answer the following questions:

6 Why do you think it is useful to be flexible?
7 Why do you think that most jobs need more than qualifications?
8 What kind of courses do you think will be most useful in the future? Why?

6 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

1. A baker is a person which bakes bread.
2. Excuse me, I'd like to do a complaint.
3. Malak looks very happy. She can't have passed her exam.
4. Cairo is a city who attracts millions of tourists every year.
5. Salem told me if I would help him to prepare for the competition.
6. The girls can have gone to the sports centre because their sports bags are here.
7. We will spend the weekend in the country. We are still discussing our destination.
8. I look forward to hear from you soon.

7 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic:

1. Write an email applying for a job. Explain why you want to do the job, what skills you have for it and ask some questions about it.
2. Write an email to a restaurant manager complaining about the service in the restaurant. Explain when you went there, what the problem was and what you would like to happen now.

The Novel Revision Chapters (10-12) SB Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you are a doctor, you need to .... about people's health.
   a) care b) watch c) hope d) see
2. I asked Fady if he wanted a sweet and he .... his head to say yes.
   a) pushed b) took c) nodded d) jumped
3. Before you go climbing, it is important to .... yourself to the rope.
   a) put b) attach c) make d) take
4. There are no buildings in this area because the .... is too soft to build on.
   a) deck b) top c) ground d) carpet
5. The police .... the men after they took some phones from a shop.
   a) collected b) won c) earned d) arrested
6. Listen to this .... It will make you laugh!
   a) joke b) joy c) funny d) trick
7. If you don't know the English word, you can .... at the food you want.
   a) mark b) point c) sign d) suggest
8. Don't worry, I .... that I'll text you when I arrive in Giza.
   a) ask b) support c) tell d) promise
9. We thought we were in trouble until we saw the .... on her face.
   a) noise b) cry c) smile d) talk
10. This computer is .... It can't do anything.
    a) lazy b) useless c) weak d) sorry
11. We have a/an .... that we use the room in the mornings and they use it later.
    a) choice b) opinion c) idea d) agreement
12. They decided to .... until they could agree what to do.
    a) negotiate b) change c) move d) promise
13. People can get ill with .... in countries with a lot of mosquitoes.
    a) environment b) adventure c) malaria d) ecotourism

14 It can be difficult for people to stay .... in dangerous places.
a) closed b) correct c) actual d) alive

15 It's very dark outside, can I use your ....?
a) paddle b) chain c) torch d) rope

16 It was raining on the mountain, so we waited in a dry .... until it stopped.
a) cave b) river c) pool d) wave

17 One .... that they teach you in this school is don't eat in the classroom.
a) name b) food c) rule d) timetable

18 Leila's favourite thing in the museum is a .... of a huge whale.
a) skeleton b) bones c) building d) deck

19 Before you plant the tree, you need to .... a big hole.
a) put b) dig c) catch d) win

20 You need to put a .... in the machine to get a bar of chocolate.
a) request b) money c) coin d) trick

2 Arrange these events in order on the timeline:

1. Dr Livesy, Ben Gun and Gray shot some of the pirates and the others ran away.
2. The pirates saw that Silver had the map.
3. They destroyed one of the small boats so that the pirates could not use it.
4. Dr Livesy helped some of the pirates who were ill and he talked to Jim.
5. The pirates found a hole but there was nothing in it except for one coin.
6. Jim left the *Hispaniola* half on a beach on the island.
7. They took the treasure from the cave to the *Hispaniola*.
8. They sailed back to England.
9. Jim walked into the fort at night and a pirate held onto him.
10. Silver took the pirates and Jim in boats to look for the treasure.

3 Read these quotations and then answer the questions:

A) **"You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you."**

1. Who was the speaker?
2. Who does he speak to?
3. How did he help them?
4. Did this help last till the end of the story?

B) **"...when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan."**

1. What was Dr Livesy's plan?
2. Did it really work? How?

4 Work in groups and answer these questions:

1. Silver often said that he liked Jim. Do you think he really liked him or did he say this for another reason?
2. Dr Livesy told Silver that he did not care about Jim. Do you believe this, or did he say this for another reason?
3. Why do you think that Dr Livesy "came to an agreement" with Silver?
4. Why do you think Jim decided to stay with Silver, and not leave with Dr Livesy?
5. Were you surprised when Ben Gun told Dr Livesy where to find the treasure? Why/ Why not?
6. Were you surprised when Silver escapes from the boat? Why/ Why not?

5 Write a review of *Treasure Island*. Think about the following:

- **The story:** What happens?
- **The main characters:** What are they like?
- **The moral of the story:** What do we learn?
- The parts of the story you liked or did not like, and why.

Test on Revision 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Athletes from all world countries .... in the last Olympic Games.
   a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved
2. How many jobs had you .... for before you were offered this one?
   a) applied b) supplied c) implied d) employed
3. The language course has been hard work, but very ....
   a) stressful b) rewarding c) rewarded d) qualified
4. **A:** Do you think you'll win tomorrow's game?
   B: Sure, we're all feeling pretty ....
   a) exciting b) loyal c) punctual d) confident
5. The Kenyan runner .... a new Olympic Record in the 3000 metres.
   a) held b) helped c) hinted d) bent
6. My father's jacket is different .... mine. How can't you distinguish between them?
   a) with b) of c) to d) at
7. I told you the truth, but I don't have a .... to this problem.
   a) solution b) weaver c) mystery d) fact
8. He doesn't have a job, so how he pays his rent is a .... to me.
   a) disappearance b) mystery c) decision d) proof
9. Reda accused the director of .... ideas from his novel in making his movie.
   a) giving b) knowing c) robbing d) stealing
10. My son's exam results were great. We were all very pleasantly ....
    a) obvious b) surprised c) angry d) shocked

11 If I were a bird, I .... able to fly.
a) will b) would c) would have d) would be

12 He didn't do his post graduate studies .... he had married.
a) unless b) before c) until d) as long

13 You mustn't smoke in hospitals. It is ....
a) necessary b) banned c) advisable d) mustn't

14 If they .... more polite, they wouldn't have to apologise.
a) are b) had been c) will be d) were

15 They .... me whether I was ill.
a) said b) told c) wanted to know d) asked

16 I enjoy .... by the other to whenever I speak.
a) listening b) being listened c) having listen d) listened

17 **Fill in the space:**

My son Mohammed informed me about something he did yesterday. ....(a).............. he was walking down the street, he found a wallet. He took it to ....(b).............. nearest police station. When the policeman opened the wallet, he ....(c).............. surprised because it was his lost one. The policeman thanked my son and said ....(d).............. he was an honest boy.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Actions speak louder than words. To give an example to others is more effective than to teach through mere words. It is better to persuade people to live a good life by practicing yourself what you preach than by giving them good pieces of advice which you do not follow yourself.

Education must begin with the parents. They create the first and most, deep impressions on the mind of the child. What they do or say is of great importance and of great effect at one and the same time. In time of war, the greatest leaders are those who have given an example of courage to their men by leading them to victory, regardless of personal danger. Besides, the religious teachers of the world have taught people by what they said as much as by what they did.

The greatest people are those who are ready to give their lives to prove the truth of their teachings. Needless to say, pupils like to behave in the same way as their schoolmasters. Thus, teachers' most important job is to set the best example to hard work, truth and love of good. If you want to make your life a success, the thing to do now is to follow the path of those great men who went deep in history. They have given the best example to serve their countries. They excelled in patriotism, self-sacrifice and unselfishness.

To sum up, deeds are better things than words and actions are mightier than talk. «Barking dogs seldom bite.»

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18 What a person says ....

a) is more effective than what he does.
b) has as much effect as what he does.
c) is less effective than what he does.
d) has no effect at all.

19 Pupils follow in the footsteps of their schoolmasters. This means ....

a) they follow the example set by their teachers.
b) they walk causing a sound of their steps.
c) teachers give the best example to hard work.
d) pupils never behave in the same way as their teachers.

20 In war time, the great leaders ....

a) create the first impression on the mind of the child.
b) teach people by what they did as much as by what they said.
c) disregard and ignore personal danger.
d) are the religious teachers.

21 "Barking dogs seldom bite" This refers to ....

a) dogs which are nice and do not bite.
b) those who speak much and do little.
c) those who sacrifice themselves.
d) those who speak a little and do no work.

22 People who do their best to serve their countries are called ....

a) traitors b) patriots c) governors d) selfish men

B) Answer the following questions:

23 When does a person fail to affect others?
24 How did the religious teachers of the world show self-sacrifice?
25 How can you make your life a success?

26 **Translate into English:**

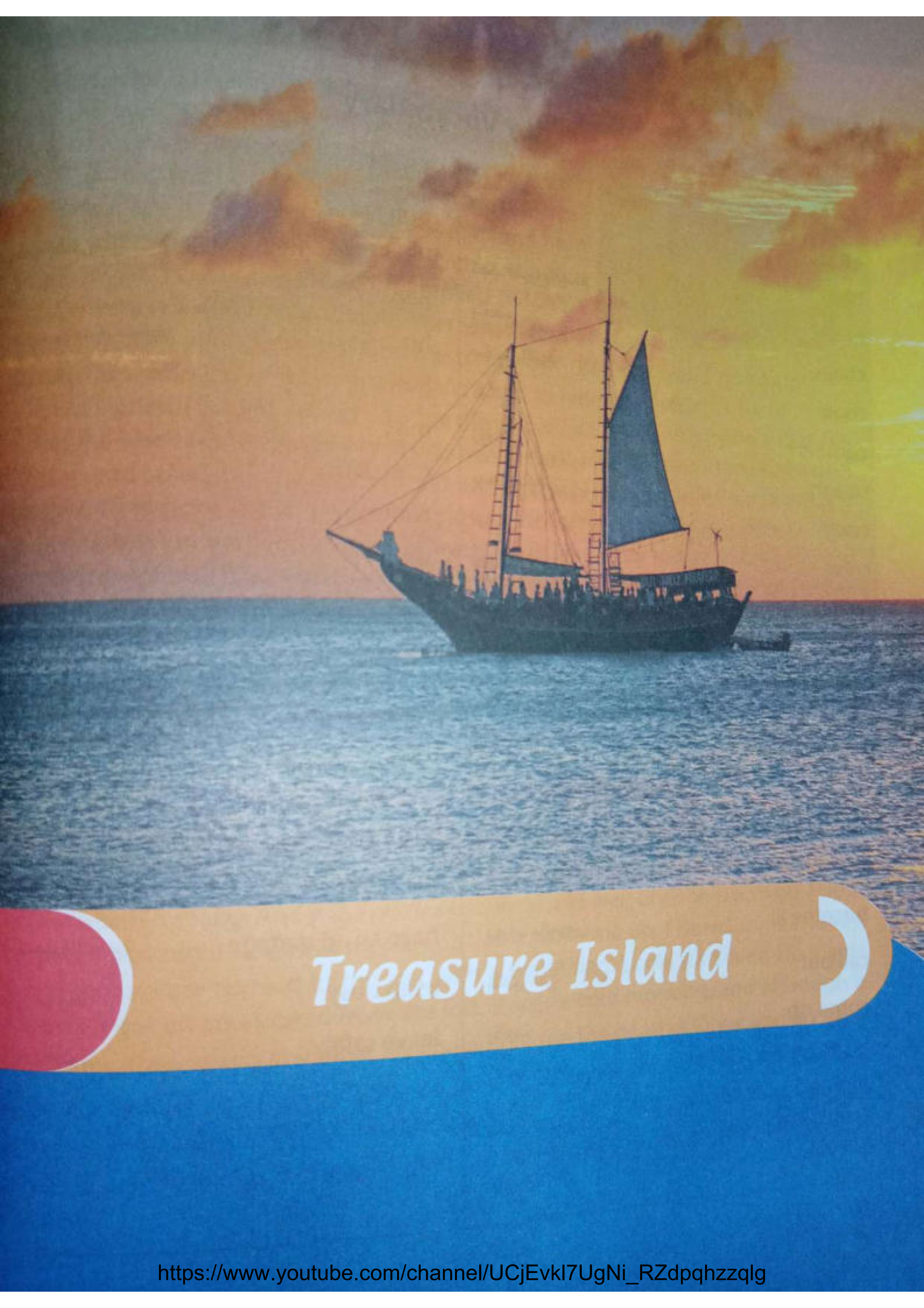
- إن العلاقة القوية والاحترام المتبادل بين الأب والأم تعتبر الأرض الخصبة التى ينمو فيها أبناؤهم كى يصبحوا أشخاصًا أسوياء نفسيًا وبدنيًا.

27 **Translate into Arabic:**

It is an undeniable fact that the youth are the base of any nation's progress. So, governments should pay attention to help them be better citizens.

28 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

The problem of unemployment and how to solve it.


Treasure Island



Chapter (7)

Key Vocabulary

advantage	أفضلية/ميزة
attack	يهجم
blow	تهب (الرياح)/ينفخ
bring	يُحضر
chains	سلاسل/قيود
cook	طباخ
corners	زوايا
cough	يسعل/يكح
crazy	مجنون
crew	طاقم (سفينة)
fence	سور/حائط
fight	يقاتل
firewood	حطب
fort	حصن
guard	حارس/يحرس
gun fire	نيران البنادق
hide	يخفى/يختفى
hill	تل
hit	يضرب بـ (عصا/ بندقية)
hurt	يؤذى/يضر
mist	ضباب
offer	عرض
pirate	قرصان
supplies	مؤن
trial	محاكمة
trick	خدعة
truce	هدنة
win	يفوز

Expressions & Prepositions

accept an offer	يقبل عرضًا
become ill	يصاب بالمرض
call out	ينادى على
come up	يقترب
end well	ينتهى على نحو جيد
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
full of	ملىء بـ
get home	يعود إلى وطنه
have an advantage	لديك ميزة/أفضلية
keep busy	يبقى مشغولًا
leave safely	يغادر بأمان
look for	يبحث عن
put chains	يقيد بالسلاسل





Chapter Text



Jim Hawkins: I walked with Ben Gun and we soon saw the fort. "Your friends will be inside, Jim," said Ben. "It might be the pirates," I replied. "No, look at the flag! They will be good men," he answered. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." "Let's go inside," I said. "I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow." Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more gunfire and I had to hide so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the *Hispaniola*. It was also flying a flag, but it was the black pirate's flag. When it was nearly dark, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and Dr Livesy let me inside. I sat down and told them my story. The wind blew sand inside the fort and we found it everywhere, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all coughed. Captain Smollett gave us all jobs: some looked for firewood, others went to cook food, and I was asked to guard the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better. "Captain Smollett is a good man," said Dr Livesy later that day. "And what about Ben Gun? Is he a good man?" "I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little crazy." "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," explained the doctor. "Did you say that he wanted some good food?" "Yes," I replied. "I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to Ben Gun!" said the doctor. That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the *Hispaniola*. The doctor said that they would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived. I slept very well that night. The next morning, a voice woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's Silver! He wants a **truce**!" I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low **mist**. We could only see the head of Silver and another pirate. "Stay in the fort," said Captain Smollett. "I'm sure that this is a **trick**." Then he called out to Silver, "Tell us what you want." "I want a truce," said Silver. Captain Smollett quietly told us to move to different corners of the fort and to watch Silver carefully.



Then he called to Silver, "What do you want us to do?" "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said Silver. "Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied Captain Smollett.

"Well, the crew chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said Silver. "If you have something to say, you can come into the fort and say it," said Captain Smollett. The other pirate tried to stop Silver, but he laughed and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill. Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort. "Can't I come inside?" asked Silver. "It's a cold morning." "If you were an **honest** man, you could come inside," said Captain Smollett. "But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after, or Captain Silver, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning." "If you have anything to say, say it now," said Captain Smollett. "Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked Silver. "Perhaps," said Captain Smollett. "I know you have it," said Silver. "We don't want to hurt you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you to somewhere safe. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some supplies and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind **offer**, and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly, so that we could all hear in the fort. "Is that all you can offer?" said Captain Smollett. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" "Now you can listen to me," replied Captain Smollett. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in **chains** and take you back to England for **trial**. If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't fight us here in the fort." Silver looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill. Captain Smollett came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to attack us. There are more of them than us, but we have the **advantage** inside the fort, and I am sure that we can win."



Chapter 7 Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words from the story.

chain - offer - mist - advantage - trial - tricks - truce - honest

1. You can trust him. He is a/an .... man.
2. A/An .... stopped the war for a short time.
3. We often see .... in the morning, and you can't see the ground.
4. My little brother likes to play .... on me.
5. Thank you for your kind ....
6. Gamal put a big .... around his bike when he went into the shop.
7. After the ...., the criminal went to prison.
8. What are the .... of travelling by train?

2 Are these sentences *true* (T) or *false* (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. There were good men on the *Hispaniola*. ☐
2. Jim waited until it was nearly dark before he went into the fort. ☐
3. The fort was full of sand and smoke. ☐
4. The men in the fort had nothing to do. ☐
5. In the morning, they could only see the head of Silver and one other pirate because they were hiding. ☐
6. Silver was not happy when he left the fort. ☐

3 Read these quotations and answer the questions.

(a) "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy."

1. What man does Dr Livesy talk about?
2. Why would that man be crazy?

(b) "He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver."

1. Who does Ben mean by 'He'?
2. Why do you think this person was frightened of Silver?
3. What does this statement tell you about Silver?

(c) "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains and take you back to England for trial."

1. Why would Captain Smollett take them all to trial?
2. If you were in his place, would you do the same? Why?
3. What does this tell you about Captain Smollett's character?



4 Work in pairs. Discuss and answer these questions.

1. Why did Silver arrive at the fort with a white flag?
....
2. Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Silver to enter the fort?
....
3. What did Silver want the men in the fort to do?
....
4. Why did Captain Smollett refuse Silver's offer to leave them with some supplies?
....
5. What did Silver do next?
....

5 Write two sentences to describe each of these characters:

a) Ben Gun: ....

b) Silver: ....

c) Captain Smollett: ....

6 Write a summary of what happens in the chapter in about 100 words.

....
....
....
....
....
....



Chapter 7 Exercises (WB)

1 Answer the questions with full sentences.

1. Is *mist* like snow or a low cloud?
2. Do you usually find a *chain* on a bike or in a tree?
3. Do you make someone an *offer* when you want to buy or get something or when you make something?
4. Do you usually find sand under a tree or on a beach?
5. Do people go on *trial* to find out if they did something well or if they did something wrong?
6. If someone *tricks* you, are they trying to help you or do something to surprise you?
7. If you have a *truce* with someone, do you agree to stop fighting or start fighting?
8. If you *win* a match, are you usually sad or happy?

2 Read Chapter 7 again quickly. Who has or had the following?

1. a flag above the fort ....
2. a black flag ....
3. some cheese ....
4. a white flag ....
5. a map ....

3 Match the people with what they do or what happens to them.

1. ☐ Ben Gun	a) made the fort.
2. ☐ Captain Smollett	b) will wait for Jim to find him.
3. ☐ Flint	c) gives everyone a job to do.
4. ☐ Silver	d) wants to give something to Ben Gun.
5. ☐ Dr Livesy	e) leaves the fort angrily.

4 Put the events from Chapter 7 in the correct order.

a ☐ Silver arrives at the fort with a white flag.
b ☐ Captain Smollett tells his men that Silver will return to attack them.
c ☐ Jim talks to Dr Livesy about Ben Gun.
d ☐ Jim returns to the fort and leaves Ben Gun.
e ☐ Captain Smollett asks Jim to guard the door to the fort.
f ☐ Captain Smollett does not agree to Silver's offer.



5 Complete the sentences with these adjectives.

busy - clever - crazy - honest - frightened - safe

1. Ben Gun thought that Flint was a .... man.
2. Flint was not .... of anyone except for Silver.
3. Captain Smollett kept all the men .... inside the fort.
4. Jim thought that Ben Gun was a little ....
5. Captain Smollett does not think that Silver is an .... man.
6. Silver offers to take Captain Smollett and his men to somewhere ....

6 Match to make phrases:

1. ☐ become	a) the door to a building
2. ☐ guard	b) someone feel better
3. ☐ have	c) someone a story
4. ☐ make	d) ill
5. ☐ tell	e) an advantage

7 Answer the following questions.

1. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort?
2. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to go inside the fort?
3. Why did Jim and the men wish that the pirates would leave with the ship? Do you agree with them? Why?
4. Silver's truce had two offers and one threat. What were they?
5. Do you think Silver really wanted a truce?
6. Captain Smollett killed two birds with one stone when he gave everyone in the fort a job to do. Explain.

8 What do you think Silver will say to his men after he leaves the fort? Write about 50 words.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Chapter (8)



Key Vocabulary

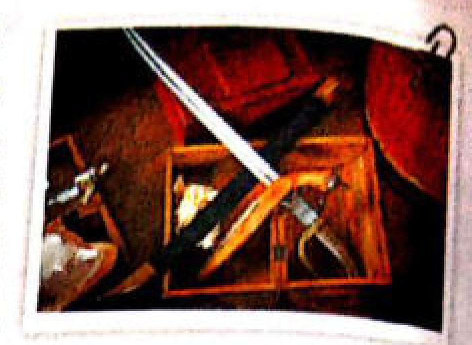
anchor	مرساة السفينة
badly	بشكل سيئ
cape	خليج/لسان داخل البحر
cliff	منحدر
climb	يتسلق
completely	تماما
cry	صرخة/يصرخ
dead	ميت
distant	بعيد
fire	يطلق النار
mist	ضباب
nearly	تقريبًا
noise	ضجيج
paddle	مجداف
parrot	ببغاء
pirate flag	علم القراصنة
prepare	يعد/يجهز
quietly	بهدوء
return	يعود
rope	حبل
shoot	يطلق النار
steer	يوجه/يقود
sword	سيف
the west	الغرب
thick	سميك/كثيف
wave	موجة
weakly	بضعف
weapon	سلاح

Expressions & Prepositions

at the east	باتجاه الشرق
be in trouble	يقع فى ورطة
get better	يتحسن
get inside	يتجه إلى الداخل
go quiet	يهدأ
go down	ينزل
lay down	يستلقى
look into	يتفحص/يلقى نظرة
made from	مصنوع من
pick up	يلتقط
stay by	يبقى بقرب
take time	يأخذ وقتا



Chapter Text



Jim Hawkins: We prepared our weapons and the captain told us what to do. "Doctor, you stay by the door. Hunter, stay at the east of the fort. Joyce can stand in the west. Gray and Trelawney will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're in trouble." After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce fired his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all sides of the fort. There was a lot of **noise** and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again. "Did you hit anyone?" the captain asked Joyce. "I don't think so," he replied. "How many people fired on your side, Doctor?" asked Captain Smollett. "There were three," he replied. "How many on your side, Trelawney?" Trelawney and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine. There was only one shot fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack mostly from the north. But Captain Smollett told us to stay where we were. We didn't have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again. Some of the pirates tried to climb the fence, but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more continued to fire at us from the trees. Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took Hunter's gun. Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him. Captain Smollett then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, Anderson, in front of me. He was going to attack me with his sword, but Gray saw him and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns. I was safe, but others were not. Poor Joyce and Hunter were dead and Captain Smollett was hurt. "Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly. "Some of them have gone," said Doctor Livesy, "but five of them will never walk again." "That's good," said Captain Smollett. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight. I know that we can win." The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor Livesy said that Captain Smollett would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to. In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his pocket and left the fort. "What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?" "The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit Ben Gun." That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where Ben Gun said there was a boat.

When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort. I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then I walked down the beach, feeling happy.

At the end of the beach I climbed a hill. I could see the *Hispaniola*, with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see Silver in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the **cry** of the parrot, Captain Flint. The sun was going down and soon there was a mist. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where Ben Gun said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a tent made of animal skins. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought that it would be very fast on water. Now I had my own plan.



I thought that I could go to the *Hispaniola* in the night and cut the **rope** to the **anchor**. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark. When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the darkness, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another distant light from the *Hispaniola*. I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship. I found that the boat was very difficult to **steer**, but the wind helped me to get to the *Hispaniola*. Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the **thick** anchor rope. I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called Hands, but I did not know the other man. They both seemed angry. The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship. As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that Hands and the other pirate were fighting each other. I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea. Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the *Hispaniola*, too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the *Admiral Benbow*. The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high cliffs on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be impossible for me to take the boat to the shore. I remembered that on the map, there was a place called Cape of Woods. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I realised, however, that if I lay down in the boat, it found its way through the waves on its own. I used a **paddle** to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the Cape of Woods.

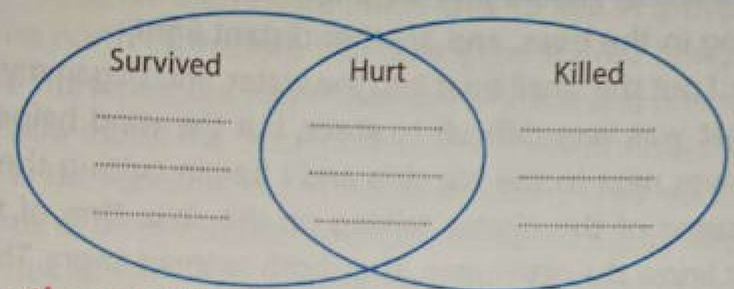
Chapter 8 Exercises (SB)

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. anchor	a) a short pole used to move a small boat along
2. cry	b) very big, strong string
3. paddle	c) a loud sound made by an animal or bird
4. rope	d) wide (for an object)
5. steer	e) control the direction of a car, boat, etc.
6. thick	f) a heavy object used to stop a boat moving

2 What happened to the people in the fight? Complete the diagram with the names in the box.

Anderson - Captain Smollett - Joyce - Doctor Livesy - Gray - Hunter - Jim



3 Read and answer the questions:

1. Why did Dr Livesy leave the fort? Do you agree that he is crazy as Gray said?
2. Why did Jim leave the fort?
3. Where did Jim find the boat?
4. Describe the boat that Ben Gun made.
5. What did Jim see on the ship?
6. Where was Jim when he opened his eyes?

4 Complete the summary using the words in the box.

anchor - Ben Gun - die - Jim - morning - pirates - steers - waves

Most of the (1) .... attack the north of the fort but five of them (2) .... and the others run away. Dr Livesy has a plan and decides to find (3) .... The fort is very hot, so (4) .... decides to leave the fort too. That evening, he finds Ben Gun's boat. He (5) .... the boat to the *Hispaniola* and cuts the rope to the (6) .... Both boats move out to sea and hit big (7) .... Jim wakes up the next (8) .... and sails the boat to the Cape of Woods.

5 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

1. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why/ Why not?
....
2. Why did Captain Smollett say, "I know that we can win" after the fight"?
....
3. What was Jim's plan when he saw the little boat? Was his plan successful till the end?
....
4. Why did Jim expect a "terrible end"?
....

6 Work in groups to answer these questions.

1. Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun?
....
2. Was Jim right to cut the rope on the *Hispaniola*? Why/ Why not?
....

Chapter 8 Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words:

anchor - cry - noise - paddle - rope - steer - thick

1. The city is never quiet; there is always the .... of cars and people.
2. When we got near the beach, we could hear the .... of sea birds.
3. That is a very .... book. It will take a long time to read it!
4. Be careful when you .... around the corner because the road is very wet.
5. There was no wind to sail the boat, so we used a small .... to move us along.
6. The children used a .... to climb up and over the wall.
7. I knew that the ship was stopping when I heard them drop the .... into the water.

2 Match the characters to their positions on the fort during the fight.

1. ☐ Dr Livesy	a) the east of the fort
2. ☐ Hunter	b) near the door
3. ☐ Joyce	c) the west of the fort
4. ☐ Gray and Trelawney	d) the north of the fort
5. ☐ The pirates	e) outside the fort

3 Are these sentences *true* (T) or *false* (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. Captain Smollett did not want the pirates to get into the north side of the fort.
2. None of Captain Smollett's men were hurt when the pirates attacked the fort.
3. Dr Livesy told Captain Smollett that he would never walk again.
4. Dr Livesy left the fort with Jim.
5. Ben Gun's boat was made of animal skins.
6. Jim cut the rope to the *Hispaniola's* anchor.
7. When Jim woke up, his boat on the beach in the Cape of Woods.
8. Jim uses a paddle to steer the boat.

4 Complete the sentences with these adverbs.

badly - completely - nearly - quickly - quietly - suddenly - weakly

1. Joyce .... fired his gun when the pirates first attached.
2. When Captain Smollett told him to go, Jim ran to the other side of the fort ....
3. After he was hurt, Captain Smollett spoke ....
4. Jim later left the fort ....
5. It was .... dark when Jim found Ben Gun's boat.
6. Ben Gun's boat was .... made.
7. Jim was soon .... wet.

5 Match to make phrases.

1. ☐ climb	a) a boat
2. ☐ fire	b) a fence
3. ☐ put	c) through the door
4. ☐ run	d) something in your pocket
5. ☐ steer	e) a gun

6 Who says each of the following quotations? Who is the speaker talking to?

1. "If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're in trouble."
2. "Did you hit anyone?"
3. "Have the pirates gone?"
4. "What is he doing? Is he crazy?"

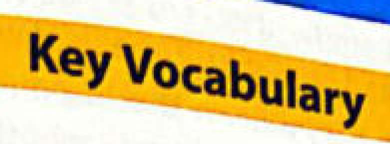
7 Read the quotation and answer the question:

"The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the Admiral Benbow. The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island."

What do you think happened to Jim and the boat in the night?

8 What do you think will happen to Hands and the *Hispaniola*? Write 50–100 words.

Chapter (9)



bandage	ضمادة	paddle	يجدف
call	يطلق لقبًا على شخص	painfully	بشكل مؤلم
close	قريب	rocky	صخري
deck	ظهر السفينة	sail	شراع /يبحر
empty	فارغ	thirsty	متعطش
fight	يقاتل	wound	جرح
knife	سكين	wreck	حطام السفينة
mud	طين		

Expressions & Prepositions

climb up	يتسلق للأعلى	hold onto	يتمسك
get closer	يقترب	look better	يبدو أفضل
go east	يذهب شرقًا	take down	ينزل
go downstairs	يذهب إلى الطابق السفلى	take off	يخلع ملابس
go under	يذهب أسفل		





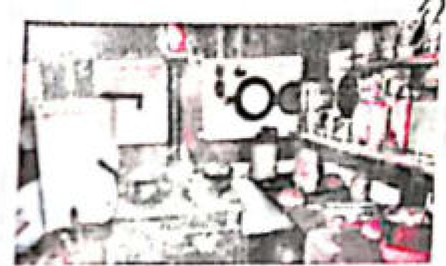
Jim Hawkins: It was very hot and I was thirsty. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the *Hispaniola* sailing around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me. I watched the *Hispaniola* and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. Nobody was sailing it! But where were the men? I thought if I could get onto the ship, I could return it to Captain Smollett. I started to **paddle** the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly getting closer to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw nobody on the ship. It was so close that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the *Hispaniola*, with no other boat to save me. I climbed up onto the **deck**, which seemed empty. The wind blew and the sails moved to the right, and then I saw them: Hands and the man he was fighting. I thought they were both dead, but then Hands said weakly: "Water!" I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to Hands. He drank all of it, very quickly. "Are you hurt?" I asked him. "With a doctor, I'll be fine," he said. "And where have you been?" "Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain," I said. He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill.

"Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag. Hands looked at me, and then said, "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." "That's a good idea," I agreed. "I don't think you can sail this ship," Hands said. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my **wound**, I'll help you." "OK," I said, "But I'm not going back to where the ship was before. We're going to the north of the island." "The north?" he asked. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!" So, I agreed to help him. I found a **bandage** to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better. He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the rocky north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was Hands. He looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something. We arrived near the north of the island, and Hands told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat. "Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?" he asked. I did not think for a minute that Hands was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason, but I did not know what this was. However, I also knew that



Hands was not a clever man, so I agreed to go. I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and painfully across the deck, where he picked up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was. Now I knew that he could move, that he had a weapon, and that he planned to hurt me. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the island. I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, "Look, the wind has changed. If we move the ship now, we'll be safe."

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but Hands told me what to do. This part of the island was full of trees and we could see the **wreck** of an old ship lying on a **flat** beach. "We can stop there, on the beach," said Hands. I steered the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise. I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch Hands. I suddenly turned round and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand. I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck. Before he could stand up again, I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself. I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran towards me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in Black Hill Cove when one of us would try to **catch** the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run away from this older pirate with a bad leg. At that moment, a wave hit the *Hispaniola*. When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto Hands. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the **mast** of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again. Hands looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready. "If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!" He stopped and I could see he was thinking about what he could do. "You're clever, Jim Hawkins," he said. "You've won." I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the **shoulder**. I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again. The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It hurt badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out. I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could **reach** and then jumped down into the **shallow** water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the *Hispaniola* half on the beach and half in the water.



Chapter 9 Exercises (SB)

1 Choose the correct word.

1. Baher has grown so tall that he can **catch / reach** the top window now.
2. All the tourists stood on the **deck / mast** of the ship when they sailed into Alexandria.
3. This table isn't **flat / shallow**, so I can't do my homework on it.
4. Injy can't play basketball today because she hurt her **shoulder / wreck**.
5. After the accident, we put a **bandage / wound** on Hatem's arm.
6. I tried to **paddle / dive** the small boat alone.

2 Choose the correct answer.

1. What happened to Ben Gun's boat?
   a) The *Hispaniola* hit it and it went into the sea.
   b) Jim sailed it to the north of the island.
   c) Hands took it.
   d) The wind blew it away.
2. Who did Jim find on the *Hispaniola*?
   a) Hands. b) Silver.
   c) Joyce. d) Ben Gun.
3. What did Jim give to the pirate?
   a) A bandage. b) Some water.
   c) Food. d) All of the above.
4. How did Jim escape from the pirate?
   a) He ran onto the island.
   b) He climbed up the mast.
   c) He went down to the bottom of the ship.
   d) He went to the deck again.
5. What happened after Hands threw a knife at Jim?
   a) Jim shot Hands.
   b) The mast fell.
   c) The knife hit on the shoulder.
   d) A and C.

3 Which is the best description of Hands?

1. He is a clever, strong and dangerous man. He persuades Jim to take the *Hispaniola* to the island and nearly succeeds in hurting Jim. ☐
2. He is not very clever and he is not very honest, because he tries to hurt Jim with a knife. He is also strong because he runs after Jim although he has many wounds. ☐
3. He is very weak because of his wounds, and he needs a lot of help. However, he is a very good sailor and can take the *Hispaniola* around the island on his own. He is friendly and tries to help Jim. ☐

4 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1. Which of the following adjectives can you use to describe Jim in this chapter? Why?
   - brave
   - kind
   - clever
   - strong
2. **"Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!"**
   - Who was talking?
   - What direction did Jim want him to take the ship to?
   - Did he really help Jim? How?
3. **"I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship."**
   - Why does Jim do this?
   - What does this tell you about Jim?

5 A wave helped Jim on the *Hispaniola* but he was clever enough to help himself. Write 100 words showing how Jim saved himself on the ship.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Chapter 9 Exercises (WB)

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. ☐ bandage	a) the tall pole which carries the sails on a ship
2. ☐ catch	b) move your hand or arm forward to hold or take something
3. ☐ deck	c) not deep
4. ☐ flat	d) a long piece of cloth that you can put around an injury
5. ☐ mast	e) a ship that is badly damaged and cannot be used again
6. ☐ reach	f) the part of your body between your arms and your neck
7. ☐ shallow	g) stop someone from escaping
8. ☐ shoulder	h) an injury, especially a deep cut from a knife
9. ☐ wound	i) the top part of a ship where you can walk
10. ☐ wreck	j) having a level surface

2 Are these sentences *true* (T) or *false* (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1. Jim saw someone sailing the *Hispaniola* around the island. ☐
2. On the *Hispaniola*, Jim realised that Hands was hurt. ☐
3. Jim did not want to help the pirate. ☐
4. Hands taught Jim to sail the ship. ☐
5. Jim knew that he could trust Hands. ☐
6. They took the *Hispaniola* onto a beach. ☐
7. Hands took out a knife, but he was very slow. ☐
8. Jim was able to repair his gun and he shot Hands. ☐

3 Put the events from Chapter 9 in the correct order.

a ☐ Hands found a knife when he thought Jim was not looking at him.
b ☐ Jim paddled his boat back the *Hispaniola* because he thought nobody was on it.
c ☐ Jim helped Hands to feel better.
d ☐ Jim was hit by a knife but shot Hands at the same time.
e ☐ Jim and Hands sailed back to the island.
f ☐ Jim held onto a rope before the *Hispaniola* sank his boat.
g ☐ Jim climbed into the sails to escape from Hands.

4 Complete the sentences with these adjectives.

correct - dead - dirty - empty - honest - rocky - wet - worried

1. When Jim returned to the *Hispaniola*, the deck seemed ....
2. Jim thought that Hands and the other pirate were ....
3. The floor of the ship was .... with sand and mud from the island.
4. Soon Jim and Hands saw the .... north of the island.
5. Jim was .... because he knew Hands was planning something.
6. Jim knew that Hands was not an .... man.
7. It was difficult to take the ship to the .... part of the island.
8. Jim's gun did not work at first because it was ....

5 Match to make collocations.

1. ☐ go	a) the air
2. ☐ fly through	b) a flag
3. ☐ make	c) a ship to the island
4. ☐ take down	d) downstairs
5. ☐ sail	e) a lot of noise

6 Answer these questions.

1. How did the *Hispaniola* look when Jim came nearer to it?
2. How was Jim saved after the *Hispaniola* hit his boat?
3. What did Hands plan to do with Jim?

7 Read the quotation and answer the questions:

(a) "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk."

1. Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'?
2. In what way can he help Jim?

(b) "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship,"

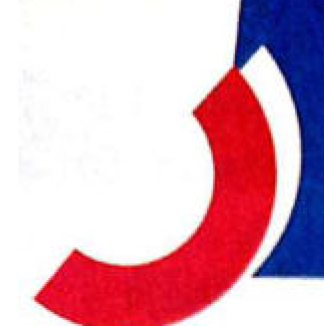
1. What flag did Jim mean?
2. Why did he want to take it down from the ship?
3. What does a flag mean to a ship?

8 There are only two people in this chapter. Do you think this makes it more or less exciting? Write 50 words to say why.

....

....

....



Chapter (10)



Key Vocabulary

adventure	مغامرة	mean	يعني
alive	على قيد الحياة	realise	يدرك
anchor rope	حبل المرساة	remain	يبقى
care	يهتم	rule	قاعدة
frighten	يخيف	save	ينقذ
gang	عصابة	surprised	مندهش
guard	حارس	torch	كشاف
join	ينضم	trap	فخ
kill	يقتل	trial	محاكمة
latest	أحدث/آخر	unusual	غير عادى
leader	زعيم	waste	يسرف/يبذر
lose	يخسر		

Expressions & Prepositions

at last	أخيراً/في النهاية	look round	ينظر حول
be back	يعود	ready for	جاهز لـ
be more of a man than any of you	أكثر رجولة من أى واحد منكم	run away	يهرب
be trapped	يقع فى فخ	run into	يصطدم بـ
come down	ينزل	stay on your own	يبقى وحيداً
hold on	يتمسك بـ/يتشبث بـ	take back	يسترجع
look out	ينظر خارجًا	talk together	يتحدث مع بعضهم

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to go back to sea. I looked forward to telling my friends about my latest adventure and started to walk back across the island. I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met Ben Gun for the first time. As I continued, it was very dark. It was difficult for me to find my way, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the fort, I went more slowly.



I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was unusual, as Captain Smollett was always very careful not to waste wood for the fire. I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good guards because nobody saw me return. I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, "Who is it? Who is it?" I realised that it was Captain Flint, Silver's parrot! Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's there?" It was Long John Silver! I turned to run away but I ran into a man, who held on to me. I was **trapped**. "Bring a **torch**, Dick," said Silver. When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realised that the fort was now full of pirates. Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead? There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked badly hurt. Silver looked tired. His parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty. "So, Jim Hawkins!" said Silver. "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for Jim!" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again. "I knew you were clever," Silver said to me. "I always wanted you to be one of us, because I was like you when I was a boy. Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." I was pleased to hear that my friends were still **alive**, but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me anymore. "Now, you don't have to say yes," said Silver.



"I can't tell you what to do." "I'll answer you," I said, in a weak voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are." "Yesterday morning," explained Silver, "Dr Livesy came down with a white flag. He told me that the *Hispianola* was not there any more. We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know or **care** where you were. So here we are. I don't know where they are now." "Do I have to decide now?" I asked. "Yes, you have to decide now," said Silver. "Very well. But there are some things you need to know. First, you have lost your ship, you have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them? It was me! I heard your plans on the *Hispaniola* and told Captain Smollett. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily. "That was the boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And he was the boy who got the map from Billy Bones!" Morgan then stood up with a knife. "Stop!" called Silver. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!" Morgan and the other pirates were quiet. "I like this boy," Silver continued. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's more of a man than any of you."

The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other. "What are you saying?" said Silver. "We don't like all of your **rules**," said one of the pirates. "We're going to talk together without you. You can't stop us." Soon, all the men left the room, and only Silver and I remained. "Listen Jim," said Silver. "I don't think that they want me to be the captain any more. But I can look after you, if you look after me." "Do you mean that they want to kill you?" "They don't need me now that I don't have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you." I was surprised to hear this. He was the leader of the gang of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy. "I'll do what I can," I told him. "You're a good boy!" he said. "I know you've got the ship safe somewhere. I don't know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I'm now with Mr Trelawney and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?" He saw that I was surprised. "Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let's hope it's a good one." I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us. "They're coming!" I told Silver. "Let them come!" he said.

Chapter 10 Exercises (SB)

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. alive
2. care
3. rules
4. torch
5. trapped

a) a stick that you burn at one end for light
b) living
c) concerned about or interested in something
d) unable to leave or escape
e) instructions about what you can and can't do

2 Complete these sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. Many young people today .... a lot about the environment.
2. A runner always carries a .... to mark the start of the Olympic Games.
3. Hazem was hurt in the accident but he was still ....
4. Lamar was .... in the room and she couldn't get out.
5. The .... say that you can't talk in the library.

3 Read the chapter again and complete the sentences with these names.

Dr Livesy - Jim - The parrot - The pirates - Silver

1. .... called out inside the dark fort.
2. .... looked tired and had dirty clothes.
3. .... said that he was not frightened of Silver.
4. .... gave Silver the map.
5. .... said they didn't need Silver any more.

4 Arrange these events in the order they happened.

a) Jim knows the pirates have taken the fort. ☐
b) Jim walks across the island. ☐
c) The pirates walk towards Jim and Silver with a knife. ☐
d) Jim tells Silver that he is not frightened of him. ☐
e) Jim walks into the dark fort and gets into bed. ☐
f) Silver says that Dr Livesy gave him the map. ☐

5 Work in pairs. Discuss and answer these questions.

1. How did Jim know where things were on the island?
....

2. Why was Jim surprised to see a fire next to the fort?
....

3. Why did Jim think the guards were not good?
....

4. Why did Silver say that Jim had to join him?
....

5. How did Silver take the fort?
....

6. Why did the pirates no longer need Silver?
....

6 Would you prefer to have Silver as a friend or an enemy? Write 50 words explaining why.

....
....
....
....
....



Chapter 10 Exercises (WB)

1 Answer the questions with full sentences.

1. If something is *alive*, is it living or angry? ....
2. If you *care* for something, do you look for it or find it important? ....
3. Do you use a *torch* when it is rainy or when it is dark? ....
4. If you are *trapped*, can you go where you want to go or do you have to stay in one place?
5. Do *rules* tell you what to do or where to go? ....

2 Circle *True* or *False* and correct the false sentences.

1. Jim did not know how to find his way across the island. **(True / False)**
2. Captain Smollett always had a fire next to the fort. **(True / False)**
3. The guards did not see Jim return to the fort. **(True / False)**
4. All of the pirates in the fort looked well and happy. **(True / False)**
5. The pirates took the fort from Dr Livesy and his men. **(True / False)**
6. Silver did not know where Dr Livesy and his men were. **(True / False)**
7. Jim agreed to join Silver and his men. **(True / False)**
8. Some of the pirates do not want Silver to be their captain any more. **(True / False)**

3 Work in pairs. Who are the speakers of the quotations, and what are they talking about?

1. "It's nice of you to visit us."
2. "He said he did not know or care where you were."
3. "If you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial."
4. "We don't like all of your rules."
5. "I know you've got the ship safe somewhere."

4 Match to make collocations:

1. ☐ cut	a) on a bed
2. ☐ hold on	b) telling someone something
3. ☐ lie down	c) to someone
4. ☐ look	d) a rope
5. ☐ look forward to	e) after someone

5 Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"Was it possible that they were all dead?"

1. What did Jim mean by "all"? ....
2. Were those "all" really dead? ....
3. What happened to them? ....

"I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?"

1. Why do you think Jim was not frightened of Silver? ....
2. Do you think he was right to offer to help Silver in his trial? ....
3. Do you think he was right to say this in front of all Silver's men? ....

6 Write three sentences to explain these comments.

1. Jim was in trouble, but he could turn things upside down. ....
2. When Jim arrived at the fort, he was sad, then he was very happy but worried. **Explain.** ....
3. Silver had two offers to Jim; one at the beginning of the chapter and one at the end; and both were surprising. ....

7 Imagine you are one of the pirates. Write the note that you will give to Silver at the end of the chapter.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Chapter (11)

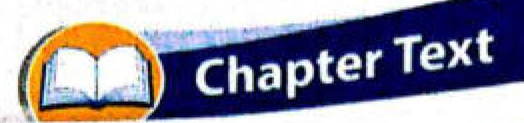


Key Vocabulary

agreement	اتفاقية/اتفاق	nod	إيماءة/إشارة
arrest	يقبض على	patient	مريض
follow	يتبع	promise	وعد/يعد
good	الخير	remind	يُذكّر
jump	قفزة	trust	يثق في
malaria	ملاريا (مرض)	useful	مفيد
negotiate	يتفاوض	voice	صوت بشري

Expressions & Prepositions

come to agreement	يتوصل إلى اتفاق	stay safe	يأمن
except for	باستثناء	try a trick on	يجرب حيلة على
feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة	wake up	يستيقظ
keep close	يبقى قريبًا	walk away	يمشي بعيدًا
look after	يعتني بـ	walk forward	يمشي إلى الأمام
sound different	يبدو مختلفًا	walk in through	يمشي من خلال
stay close	يبقى قريبًا	with wonder	باندهاش



Chapter Text



Jim Hawkins: The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he nervously walked forward to give it to Silver. Silver read it. "So, I'm not the captain now, is that it?" he said. "Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?"

"Don't try your tricks on us," said one of the pirates, called George. "I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be," said Silver. "We can tell you," said George. "First, your plans haven't worked. Second, you let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn't let us follow them. And fourth, there's the boy!" "Is that all?" asked Silver. "That's enough, isn't it?" said George. "I'll answer each reason," said Silver. "First, who didn't do what I asked them to do? Anderson, Hands and you, George! If we are **arrested** when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have a doctor on the island. He's important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I came to an **agreement** so that he would help us. And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to **negotiate**. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn't follow them!" he continued, and showed them the treasure map. I was very surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder.

"That's Flint's map!" said George. "But how are we to take his treasure home if we don't have a ship?' "Listen, George," said Silver. "You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?" "Silver's right," said Morgan, and the other pirates agreed. Silver was still the captain. The pirates now seemed happy, except for George. Silver made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang. I lay down and thought about Silver. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe. The next morning, a voice woke us all up (and I mean all of us, even George, the guard). It was Dr Livesy calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with Silver's gang. What would Dr Livesy think? "Good morning, Doctor," said Silver. "Come in! George will open the door for you. We've got a surprise for you, too!" "Do you mean Jim?" asked Dr Livesy. He looked surprised as he came near us. "That's right," said Silver.

The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said, "Let me see your patients." He walked into the fort and, with a small **nod** to me, walked up to the ill pirates. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew they were all dangerous men.

"I hope you took your medicine?" he said to George. "Yes, sir, I did," he replied. "Good, because now I'm a pirate's doctor, I want to keep you all healthy so we can get you back to England for trial," he said. The pirates looked at each other but they said nothing.

"Dick doesn't feel well," said Morgan. "Let me look at you," the doctor replied. "Yes, you have **malaria**. That's what happens when you sleep outside on an island like this. I'm surprised that a clever man like Silver didn't realise." He gave Dick some medicine, then said, "Now I'd like to talk to the boy, please." "No!" said George.

"Be quiet!' shouted Silver. "Doctor, you've been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first he must **promise** not to run away." I agreed. "Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside," said Silver. When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told Silver that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. Silver reminded them they did not know where the treasure was yet. They needed my help, and perhaps the doctor's help as well, until the time was right. Silver took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he sounded different. "Tell the others that I helped you, doctor," he said. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe." "I think you're frightened!" said Dr Livesy. "I'm not frightened," said Silver, "but I know you're a good man and you'll see the good in me. Now I'll let you and Jim talk." Silver walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us. "Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me. I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me. I must stay here now." "No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One jump and you're out of the fort, and we can run." "I can't," I said. "Silver trusts me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach." "You've got the ship!" said the doctor. I quickly told him my story. "You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then turned to Silver. "It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, Silver," he said. "Don't try to find it." "But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," Silver replied. "OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort. "We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said Silver. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."

Chapter 11 Exercises (SB)

1 Match the words and the definitions:

a) agreement b) arrest c) malaria d) negotiate e) nod f) promise

1 a movement of your head that gives someone a sign
2 a serious illness that comes from mosquitos
3 say you will certainly do something
4 discuss a situation to find a good result for everyone
5 the police take someone away for doing something bad
6 a decision made by two or more people

2 Read and answer the following questions.

1 How could Silver convince the pirates to let him be the Captain again? ....
2 What did Dr Livesey do when he found out that Jim lived with the gang? ....
3 Why did Dr Livesey look after the ill pirates? ....
4 Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the pirates' questions?
....
5 The pirates were angry to see Dr Livesey talking to Jim. What reassured them?
....

3 Are these sentences *true* (T) or *false* (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1 The pirates gave Silver four reasons why he should not be their captain.
2 Silver agreed with the pirates and George became captain.
3 Jim was worried because he didn't want to go back with Dr Livesey.
4 It was easy to become ill on the island because there was malaria.
5 Jim told Dr Livesey where the treasure was.
6 Silver said that he and Jim should look after each other.

4 Match to complete the sentences.

1. Silver	a) said that he wanted the pirates to go home for trial.
2. George	b) was the only person who knew where the ship was.
3. Dr Livesey	c) told the pirates that he was the best captain.
4. Jim	d) had to guard the fort all night.

5 Work in pairs. Read the quotation. Discuss and answer the questions.

"I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe."

1. Why does Jim think that Silver is very clever?
2. Why does Jim think that Silver would do or say anything to stay safe?
3. Why do the pirates choose to keep Silver as their captain?
4. Why does Dr Livesy agree to let Silver look for the treasure?
5. Are you surprised that Dr Livesy agreed to let Jim stay with Silver? Why/ Why not?

6 Imagine you are Dr Livesy. Write your diary entry for the day, after you have returned from your visit to the pirates.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Chapter 11 Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

arrested - agreement - negotiate - nod - malaria - promise

1. The businesswoman travelled to England to .... selling Egyptian cotton to a factory. I hope she gets a good price.
2. We both wanted to go to different places for our holiday, but now we've come to a/an .... We're going to Luxor!
3. I asked my friend if he agreed with my plan for the project, and he gave a small .... of his head.
4. The scientist became ill after staying by a river for a week. He might have ....
5. The police .... the man because he was driving his car at more than 150 km/h.
6. Thank you for letting me use your phone. I .... that I'll give it back to you tomorrow.

2 Read Chapter 11 again quickly. Who has the following?

1. a piece of paper for Silver ....
2. the treasure map ....
3. some medicine for the pirates ....
4. the location of the *Hispaniola* ....

3 Complete with Silver's responses to the pirates' reasons.

Pirates' reasons	Silver's responses
1. Your plans haven't worked.	1. ....
2. You let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan.	2. ....
3. You wouldn't let us follow them.	3. ....

4 Match to make collections.

1. ☐ come	a) how to do something
2. ☐ know	b) lives
3. ☐ save	c) medicine
4. ☐ stay	d) safe
5. ☐ take	e) to an agreement

5 Complete the sentences with these adjectives:

dangerous - frightened - happy - ill - important - safe - useful

1. The doctor is .... to Silver because some of the pirates are very ....
2. Jim will be .... to Silver if they need to negotiate.
3. Apart from George, all the pirates were .... when they agreed to keep Silver as Captain.
4. Jim knew that Silver would do anything to stay ....
5. Dr Livesy thought that Silver was ...., but Silver said he wasn't.
6. Dr Livesy helped the pirates, although he knew they were .... men.

6 Read these quotations and answer the questions.

(a) "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me"

1. Who was talking?
2. Why was he sorry?
3. Why did he decide to stay with the pirates?

(b) "You've saved our lives many times on this journey"

Write 100 words on the times when Jim could save Dr Livesy and his men on the journey.

7 Imagine you are Dr Livesy. Write what you will say to Trelawney and the other men when you return to them after visiting the fort.

....

....

....

....

....



Chapter (12)

Key Vocabulary

attach	يربط	point	يشير
cave	كهف	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
crew	طاقم السفينة	smile	يبتسم
dig	يحفر	spade	جاروف/ مِجْرَفَة
drink	مشروب	supplies	مؤن
excited	فرِح/منفعل	terrible	رهيب
ground	أرض	useless	عديم الفائدة

Expressions & Prepositions

call out	ينادى	look worried	يبدو قلقًا
find out	يكتشف	play a trick	يخدع
go home	يعود إلى الوطن	pointing north	مشيرًا إلى اتجاه الشمال
get into	يدخل	slow down	يبطئ
look tired	يبدو متعبًا		



Jim Hawkins: Silver went back to the pirates and said, "I've found out that the doctor's men have the ship. I don't know where it is, but when we find the treasure, we'll find the ship. That will give us the advantage. We'll keep Jim with us before then. When we go home, we can leave him on the island." The pirates looked happy with this news, but it worried me. What was Silver really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney or these terrible pirates? I did not know. We all left the fort. The pirates were carrying supplies, spades and their weapons. We then got into the small boats and looked at the map to see where we should go. We took the boats down a river, then we left them and walked through some tall trees. The pirates **attached** me to Silver with a rope so that I could not escape, and we walked up a hill. We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. Then we heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the **skeleton** of a man lying on the **ground**. "The skeleton is **pointing** north!" said Morgan. "He is," said Silver. "I think this was one of Flint's games. He killed the man and put him there." "Flint was a terrible man," said Morgan. The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us.

"That sounds like Flint!" said George. "Flint's dead," said Silver. "It is someone playing a trick." Then the voice called out, "McGraw, bring me a drink, please!" "That was what Flint said, just before he died!" said Morgan. Now the pirates all looked very frightened.

"Listen men," said Silver. "There's a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was Flint. I think it was Ben Gun." "I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said George. The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked tired and ill. Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. Silver, too, looked different. His eyes looked crazy and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure. The pirates all ran to the bottom of the tree. George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry. "Look!" he said. We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree there was a big hole in the ground. Someone had been there before us. The treasure was gone! The pirates said nothing, but I could see that Silver was already making a plan. "Take this, and be ready for trouble," he said quietly, and he gave me a gun. Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started digging with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. Morgan found a gold coin and held it up for the others to see. "One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here, Silver!" shouted George angrily. "You knew about this, didn't you?" The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot. "Let's get them, men!" said George. Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the

pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe! Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun came out from the trees. "Thank you, doctor," said Silver. "You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" Ben Gun said hello to Silver, but I could see that he was frightened of him. As we walked back to the boats, we heard how Ben Gun had helped us. Ben Gun had dug up the treasure and put it in a **cave** in the north of the island before we arrived on the *Hispaniola*. Ben Gun told all of this to Dr Livesy, when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan. He gave the map to Silver because he knew it was **useless**. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where Ben Gun had supplies as well as the treasure. When he knew that Silver was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with Ben Gun and Gray. To slow the pirates down, Ben Gun sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole. After a few hours, we reached the coast again. Ben Gun helped Gray to destroy one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island. After three miles, I was surprised to see the *Hispaniola*! The wind had blown it from the beach and it was sailing empty on the sea. We helped Gray to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to Ben Gun's cave, where Trelawney was looking after Captain Smollett. "Silver," Trelawney said when he saw him. "You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you." Silver said nothing, but he **smiled**. Inside the big cave, Captain Smollett was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was Flint's treasure. The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was heavy work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold. We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine. It was a difficult journey back on the *Hispaniola* because the crew was so small. Captain Smollett lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the *Hispaniola* later that day, Ben Gun told us that Silver had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that. With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. Captain Smollett stopped working and Gray decided to buy his own ship. Ben Gun quickly spent all of his money. I have a comfortable life now. I often think about the island and Long John Silver, but I never saw him again.



Chapter 12 Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words from the story.

attach - cave - ground - point - skeleton - smile - useless

1. This phone is ....! It doesn't work.
2. Plants and trees grow out of the ....
3. I always try to .... and look happy in photos.
4. If you .... your keys to your bag, you won't lose them.
5. Hana couldn't speak, but she could .... to the house where she lived.
6. There were some big bones in the .... of a dinosaur at the museum.
7. The .... was dark but we went inside to get out of the rain.

2 Choose the correct answer to complete the sentences:

1. Silver told the pirates that they would find ....
   a) the map and the supplies
   b) the treasure and the ship
2. Jim walked with Silver because ....
   a) he was attached to him
   b) Silver liked him
3. The skeleton of a man was ....
   a) pointing north
   b) pointing at the sea
4. When they saw a tall tree, they knew they were ....
   a) in danger
   b) near the treasure
5. When they saw the hole, they knew that ....
   a) there was never any treasure
   b) someone else had the treasure
6. Ben Gun moved the treasure ....
   a) that morning
   b) before they arrived on the island

7 Dr Livesey had given Silver the map ....

a) so he could find the treasure

b) because it was useless

8 When they sailed back to England, ...

a) Silver disappeared

b) Captain Smollett bought a new ship

3 Work in pairs. Discuss and answer these questions.

1 Why did Morgan say, "Flint was a terrible man"?

2 Why did Ben Gun pretend to be Flint?

3 How did Silver look when they were near the treasure?

4 Why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun?

5 Why was the journey to South America difficult?

6 How did the story end for Jim?

7 Why did the group look for the remaining pirates? What did they do when they couldn't find the pirates? What do you think they will do if they find them?

4 Silver has helped the group, but he is still a pirate till the last minute. Write 100 words explaining this.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Chapter 12 Exercises (WB)

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. ☐ attach	a) a large hole in the side of a mountain
2. ☐ ground	b) the bones of a whole animal or person
3. ☐ cave	c) join one thing to another
4. ☐ point	d) not useful at all
5. ☐ smile	e) the top part of the earth
6. ☐ useless	f) have a happy expression on your face using your mouth
7. ☐ skeleton	g) move your finger in the direction of something to show it to someone

2 Complete with the things Jim and the group saw from the time they left the fort till they met Ben Gun and the group.

3 Circle *True* or *False* and correct the false sentences.

1. Silver told the pirates that he planned to leave Jim on the island. **(True / False)**

....

2. The pirates sailed around the island on the *Hispaniola*. **(True / False)**

....

3. They found the skeleton of Flint. **(True / False)**

....

4. They heard a man singing in the trees. **(True / False)**

....

5. The pirates thought that the voice from the trees was very funny. **(True / False)**

....

6. They found a hole in the ground but it was empty. **(True / False)**

....

7. Three pirates ran away and three died. **(True / False)**

....

8. Jim learned that Silver hid the treasure in a cave. **(True / False)**

....

4 Match to make phrases.

1. ☐ give	a) someone or something down
2. ☐ play	b) like a person singing
3. ☐ reach	c) a trick on someone
4. ☐ slow	d) of a plan
5. ☐ sound	e) someone an advantage
6. ☐ think	f) the coast

5 Complete the sentences with these adjectives.

beautiful - comfortable - crazy - dangerous - frightened -
hot - quieter - terrible - useless - worried

1. Jim was .... that Silver wanted to leave him on the island.
2. Jim did not know if Silver would help Dr Livesy or the .... pirates.
3. It was .... when they walked across the island, but the flowers were very ....
4. Morgan looked at the skeleton with a .... face.
5. The pirates were much .... after they saw the skeleton.
6. Silver's eyes looked .... and .... when they got near the treasure.
7. Dr Livesy gave the map to Silver because it was ....
8. Back in England, Jim lived a .... life.

6 Complete with what happened to these characters after they reached Bristol.

a) Captain Smollett: ....
b) Gray: ....
c) Ben Gun: ....
d) Jim: ....

7 Read these quotations and answer these questions.

(a) "We heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face."

1. What was the thing that frightened Morgan?
2. Did that thing help the pirates and Jim? How?

(b) "George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry."

1. What was the reason for George's cry?
2. What does it mean? What did Silver do to face it?

(c) "Thank you, doctor. You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!"

1. Why does Silver thank Dr Livesy?
2. How could Ben Gun help them?
3. When did they last see Ben Gun?

8 Imagine you are Jim. It is your first day back in England. Write a letter to your mother telling her briefly what happened to you. Write about 150 words.

Follow-up Exercises

Unit 7

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

خدمات طوارئ	غبار/ تراب ....
إسعافات أولية	خطر ....
أغطية السرير	سلة مهملات ....
يستجيب/ يرد	حساسية ....
التنفس	على الأقل ....
عملية التنفس الصناعى	النظافة العامة ....
يلف	البحث العلمى ....
بطانية	يزيل ....
حرق	قاعدة ....
يخلى (مكان)	علمى ....
يؤلم	ألواح تقطيع ....
مصاب	يكح ....
يشكو	يعطس ....
يجرح	قطعة إسفنج ....
تلف	منديل ورقى ....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يقوم بعمل التنفس الصناعى	ينتمى لـ/ يخص ....
يستنشق ويزفر الهواء	يصرخ فى ....
يخطئ	يشكو بشأن ....
يتأكد	يقرر بشأن ....
لديه جدال مع	يساعد فى ....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You .... take care of your studies. I strongly advise you.
a) may b) must c) ought d) mustn't

2 Dropping rubbish into the Nile water is ....
a) allowed b) necessary c) forbidden d) advisable

3 We .... show our identity cards before going into any governmental formal building.
a) have to b) should c) need to d) can't

4 I .... the film. It was boring and I really wasted my time.
a) didn't have to watch b) mustn't have watched
c) must have watched d) needn't have watched

5 I suggest that our children .... sleep early and get up early.
a) must b) need c) needn't d) should

6 The doctor gave her treatment for her ....
a) curiosity b) honesty c) allergy d) hospitality

7 Giving him .... at the scene of the accident probably saved his life.
a) emergency services b) first aid
c) hygiene d) danger

8 It is said that colds do not .... to antibiotics.
a) grow b) agree c) respond d) carry

9 During the war, several families were .... from their homes.
a) evacuated b) burnt c) wrapped d) damaged

10 My friend was .... a bandage around his injured wrist.
a) wrapping b) burning c) breaking d) explaining

2 Fill in the space:

Great Britain was the first country to adopt standard time. By 1852 most British clocks ....(a).............. set to the time in Greenwich, London. The United States and Canada were ....(b).............. big to use a single time for every town. In 1882, the Canadian inventor, Fleming suggested that the world ....(c).............. divided into 24 equal time zones, each zone would be one hour different ....(d).............. those on their side.

3 A) Translate into English:

يجب علينا أن نعطى للطفل الفرصة للتعبير عن نفســه، وإبداء رأيه دون خوف من العقاب، أو أى قيود، أو نقد دائم؛ حتى يصبح مواطنًا له رأى يفيد به مجتمعه.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

Our great heritage which we inherited from our great ancient Egyptians needs honest and reliable people to keep it and restore the stolen from abroad.

....

....

Unit 8

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

فائدة	اختبار قصير ....
ضغطة (على الماوس)	ترجمة ....
مألوف	تطبيق على التليفون المحمول ....
يكتشف	مزايا ....
يتجول / ينتقل من مكان لمكان	تعليق ....
يخرج	تمامًا ....
جهاز الملاحة (فى السيارة)	عيوب ....
نظام تكييف الهواء	ضغط عصبى ....
مركبة	فهم ....
مجهد	إلكترونى ....
فظيع / رهيب	وثائقى ....
موقع	يخمن ....
عجلة	يشارك ....
يشحن	مدهش ....
كهربائى	قلق ....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

مفيد لـ	يفقد الاهتمام فى ....
يتواصل مع	يتصل بالإنترنت ....
يركب على	يعطى اتجاهات ....
مألوف لدى	يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة ....
تأثير على	يتوه / يضل الطريق ....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Should Kareema study harder, she .... better marks.
a) would get b) would have got c) got d) gets

2 .... he ran as fast as he could, he wouldn't catch the bus.
a) If b) Without c) Unless d) In case

3 But for his honest advice, I .... last year's exams.
a) won't pass b) wouldn't have passed c) would have passed d) wouldn't pass

4 .... Hala seen us, she would have come and talked to us.
a) If b) Should c) Were d) Had

5 If there .... a fire, call the firemen at once.
a) is b) was c) had been d) are

6 We managed to .... our way through the forest.
a) control b) notice c) navigate d) relax

7 The signs of drug addiction are .... to most doctors.
a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) stressful

8 Have you locked your .... before leaving it?
a) vehicle b) internet c) link d) map

9 The teacher gave us a/an .... on reading every Monday.
a) app b) quiz c) chat d) feedback

10 Advances in .... have improved crop yields by over 30%.
a) technology b) invention c) internet d) robot

2 Fill in the space:

..............(a)............. you live in the countryside, you have to be very careful during nights when you leave your home. There aren't so ....(b)............. people in the countryside and they really know each other. But, life in the countryside is more peaceful, cleaner and less stressful. If you ....(c)............. have a car, there is no problem as you can reach a lot of places on foot. I, myself, prefer living in the countryside ....(d)............. living in the crowded city.

3 A) Translate into English:

من الأشـيـاء الهامة جدًّا والتى تقينا من الأمـراض وتمنحنا القدرة على أداء عملنا بشـكل جيد تناول الطعام الصحى وأداء التمارين الرياضية بشكل منتظم.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

Natural disasters like volcanoes and earthquakes occur when forces of nature do damage to the environment and affect people badly every year.

....

....

Unit 9

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

قاسٍ	....	التعليم فى المنزل	....
قسوة	....	خبير	....
تعليم	....	يشرح/ يفسر	....
مربية	....	يجادل	....
مديرة المنزل	....	جدال	....
يتيم	....	البلطجة/ التنمر	....
دار أيتام	....	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	....
خادم/ خادمة	....	بالتأكيد	....
يخدم	....	معدات	....
شخص غريب	....	استنتاج	....
يعلن	....	وصف	....
بلطجى/ متنمر	....	جاد	....
مؤلف	....	صياغات	....
أقارب	....	رياضات جماعية	....
يوظف	....	طريقة	....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

مدرسة داخلية	....	يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)	....
يجلب النجاح	....	قلق بشأن	....
يقوم بعمل تجربة	....	ينتقل إلى	....
يرتكب خطأ	....	زيادة فى	....
تكوين صداقات	....	تنوع فى	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Many environmental problems .... during the last youth conference.
a) discussed b) are discussed c) were discussed d) had discussed

2 It was not .... they had found a restaurant that they entered.
a) when b) while c) after d) until

3 How did people .... to move from one place to another in the past?
a) use b) used c) using d) uses

4 After we .... to the news on TV, we went out for a walk.
a) has listened b) were listened c) would listen d) listened

5 The match, ... in the Cairo Stadium, was very amazing and enjoyable.
a) was played b) which played c) playing d) played

6 Companies have found that good .... brings good results.
a) ignorance b) advertising c) sleeping d) secretary

7 It was only later that I .... my mistake.
a) released b) realised c) improvised d) rationalised

8 It was .... to lock the dog in the garage all day.
a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind

9 Have you seen her act? She's absolutely ....
a) keen b) interested c) brilliant d) proud

10 The two men at the hotel were .... about politics.
a) bullying b) arguing c) encouraging d) changing

2 Fill in the space:

Plants have ....(a)................ used for treating different kinds of illnesses since the primitive times. Archaeologists discovered paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs ....(b)................ show that plants were being used ....(c)................ the ancient Egyptians for medical purposes. Today, some modern drugs ....(d)................ still based on natural herbs.

3 A) Translate into English:

إن التقدم الاقتصادى والزراعى والتكنولوجى الذى تشـهده مصر حاليًا ما هو إلا نتاج لجهود المخلصين من أبناء هذا البلد العظيم والذى بالفعل يستحق منا جميعًا أن نعمل من أجله.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We think so because the advertisements say so but it's not always right.

....

....

Unit 10

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

- يقدم (طلبًا) ....
- مؤهلات ....
- مُجزٍ ....
- فترة التدريب فى المهنة ....
- مرافق ....
- البناء ....
- عقد ....
- مؤهل ....
- صناعة ....
- عملى ....
- مهارة ....
- مرهق ....
- مجتمع ....
- واثق ....
- مثير ....
- خبرة ....
- يتخيل ....
- معرض الوظائف ....
- مخلص ....
- موثوق فيه ....
- يتطلب ....
- صفارات الإنذار ....
- عضو الفريق ....
- لعبة/ عروسة لعبة ....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

- يصنع سيارات ....
- تلبية الموعد النهائى ....
- المطبخ المصرى ....
- منتبه للتفاصيل ....
- أنشطة وقت الفراغ ....
- محبوب لدى ....
- يعتنى بـ ....
- يتأقلم مع ....
- مناسب لـ ....
- الكثير من ....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My father told me that we had to travel with him ....
a) the next day b) the following day c) the day before d) the day after

2 My wife asked me .... the car.
a) that I had fixed b) to have fixed c) unless I had fixed d) if I had fixed

3 Amira said just now that she .... television for two hours.
a) had watched b) has watched c) was watched d) would watch

4 Ali .... his brother his uncle wanted to meet them.
a) said b) asked c) told d) wondered

5 They said that they would meet us if they .... we were there.
a) have known b) knew c) had been knowing d) know

6 We need to .... for planning permission to build a garage.
a) apply b) supply c) imply d) employ

7 The literature course has been hard work, but very ....
a) stressful b) rewarding c) practical d) qualified

8 Working for long hours can be very .... It isn't easy at all.
a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) qualified

9 My car's quite old, but it's still pretty .... in difficult situations.
a) flexible b) fancy c) necessary d) reliable

10 We should be .... about the kind of work we can do.
a) flexible b) confident c) exciting d) honest

2 Fill in the space:

Many people ....(a)............... that if you want to be happy, you should have .... (b)............... money. However, I disagree ....(c)............... them as money is not the only thing that makes someone happy. There are many other things such as, health, good manners, respectable profession and family of course. Sometimes we can say ....(d)............... money is important, but it is also a source of evil and worry.

3 A) Translate into English:

تســاهم وسائل الإعلام بشكل كبير فى توجيه الرأى العام والتأثير على آراء الكثير من الشباب، ومن هنا يجب علينا استغلالها بشكل جيد يخدم مجتمعنا ووطننا.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

In the past, Sinai was only a dry desert but now it has become one of the most attractive places in the world with its wonderful landscape and important tourist attractions.

....

....

Unit 11

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

يحقق	يدعم ....
إنجاز	مقابلــة للحصول على وظيفة أو حوار صحفى ....
ناشط	يتدرب ....
يقوم بعمل حملة	تدريب ....
يتنافس	غير مطبوخ جيدًا ....
منافسة	يحجز ....
إعاقة	يضايق ....
مرتفعات ومنخفضات	ثقب ....
منحدر	مرتفع (للصوت) ....
ميدالية	قسم ....
عضلة	موظف ....
شلل الأطفال	مبيعات ....
لاعب رفع الأثقال	هيئة العاملين ....
تشقق العمود الفقرى	مؤهلات ....
كرسى متحرك	مزعج ....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يقدم شكوى	يبحث عن ....
يصدر ضوضاء	يتطلع إلى ....
يتأكد	مؤهل لـ ....
يمارس الرياضة	حملة من أجل ....
يصنع اختلافًا	مسئول عن ....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The home .... housekeeper is respectful, is a very good and comfortable one.
a) who b) whose c) when d) where

2 The Great Pyramid is the greatest building .... I have ever seen.
a) that b) where c) whose d) whom

3 Can you hear .... I am saying or you want me to say it again?
a) that b) which c) whom d) what

4 This is the street .... we cleaned and made it a better place to live.
a) where b) when c) which d) who

5 The mobile .... was so expensive but a really modern one.
a) which I bought it b) I bought it c) which bought d) I bought

6 The conference was an important social .... which people can meet each other at.
a) incident b) accident c) event d) happening

7 She eventually .... her goal of becoming a professor.
a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved

8 I believe we should support responsible organisations .... for the right of animals.
a) achieving b) improving c) campaigning d) inspiring

9 Games and songs provide a/an .... for classroom interaction.
a) competition b) chance c) opportunity d) achievement

10 This price reduction is due to .... among suppliers.
a) competition b) campaign c) medal d) achievement

2 Fill in the space:

A lot of people decide to move to the countryside nowadays, but there are still many people ....(a)............. prefer to stay in the city and say that they couldn't live anywhere else. I think that living in the city is better as it is the place ....(b)............. you can find everything ....(c)............. you want at any time. Also, we can ....(d)............. fun with the many amusing places in the city.

3 A) Translate into English:

مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة تساهم بشكل كبير فى تنمية عقل الطفل، وتزيد من مداركه، حيث إنها توفر له كل فروع المعرفة.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

The government should exert great efforts to find and save work for unemployed people because unemployment is the cause of many crimes in our society.

....

....

Unit 12

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

يختفى	....	شخصيات	....
صانع النسيج	....	سرعة	....
مذنب/ مجرم	....	مهجور	....
لغز/ غموض	....	يتبنى	....
كوخ/ بيت ريفى	....	يفحص/ يتأكد	....
يحل	....	قريب	....
يعرض/ عرض	....	مجتمع	....
يثبت	....	جريمة	....
يسرق	....	يُقسم	....
مندهش	....	يؤكد	....
غير سار	....	بشكل متساوٍ	....
المدفأة	....	حدث	....
شاحب/ باهت	....	أسطورة	....
يثق/ ثقة	....	لغز	....
خاص	....	مستودع	....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

مخطوب لـ	....	يهتم بـ	....
متزوج من	....	يأتى من	....
يكسب مالًا	....	بالمقارنة بـ	....
يشعر بالأسف لـ	....	ينتمى إلى	....
يلتقط صورًا لـ	....	مملوء بـ	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I saw him carry a huge box alone. He .... strong.
a) can't be b) might be c) must be d) should be

2 I .... them as they were so rude with us and I regret doing this.
a) must have visited b) can't have visited
c) should have visited d) shouldn't have visited

3 Salwa didn't go out today. She .... ill, but I don't think so. I think it was laziness.
a) must have been b) must be c) might have been d) can't be

4 He always wins the matches he plays. He .... a very talented player.
a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been

5 It is .... for all of us to have healthy dental habits.
a) advice b) necessity c) forbidden d) a must

6 Where are my keys? They seem to have ....
a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost

7 What happened to the paintings after that is an unsolved ....
a) presence b) mystery c) decision d) proof

8 .... that all the doors are locked securely.
a) Look b) Research c) Check d) Pull

9 Unless these .... were put in prison immediately, they would continue to terrorise the public.
a) monsters b) human c) man d) children

10 You shouldn't put your .... in a man like that. He is a deceiver.
a) hate b) trust c) distrust d) dislike

2 Fill in the space:

It must ....(a).............. been 3 a.m. when a sharp knock at my door woke me up. To my surprise, the light was off and I ....(b).............. to comfort my wife and children who got up in terror. Naturally, I went to the door and was careful enough to ask who the man was and what he wanted ....(c).............. opening. He was my neighbour whose son was very ill and wanted help. I helped him and did ....(d).............. was best for his son.

3 A) Translate into English:

من حق كل شخص أن يعبر عن رأيه بحرية تامة، ولكن يجب أن يضع فى اعتباره احترام الرأى الآخر، وكذلك عدم الإساءة للآخرين.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

Scientists have helped in making roads much safer, but the number of accidents continues to rise because of careless drivers and the big increase in the number of cars on roads.

....

....

Answers to Main Book Exercises and Tests



Health and safety

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) allergy
2. d) bedding
3. b) first aid
4. d) emergency services
5. b) breathing
6. a) bacteria
7. c) CPR
8. b) hygiene
9. d) bin
10. c) responding
11. a) soil
12. b) danger
13. d) safety
14. c) research
15. a) grow
16. a) health
17. d) dust
18. a) cable
19. b) ingredients
20. c) electrical
21. b) caused
22. c) to
23. b) up
24. c) wear
25. b) for
26. c) to
27. a) on
28. d) to
29. c) separate
30. a) clarify/ e) explain
31. c) safety/ e) security
32. a) avert/ d) evade
33. b) modified/ c) altered
34. a) reaching/ b) arriving

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) must
2. c) ought to
3. b) aren't allowed
4. a) must
5. d) mustn't
6. b) mustn't
7. b) should
8. c) had better
9. a) should
10. c) mustn't
11. b) must
12. d) allowed
13. c) should have listened
14. d) have to
15. d) mustn't
16. a) write
17. a) must
18. c) ought
19. d) ought to
20. c) must
21. c) shouldn't
22. d) mustn't
23. b) mustn't
24. a) must
25. c) should

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) must	b) allowed	c) be	d) necessary
2. a) mustn't	b) ought	c) better	d) must
3. a) should	b) get	c) mustn't	d) shouldn't
4. a) must	b) be	c) ought	d) should
5. a) up	b) can/may	c) be	d) should



General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) allergy
2. a) breathed
3. b) personal cleanliness
4. b) coughing
5. a) first aid
6. a) take-off
7. b) carry
8. d) with
9. c) should
10. c) must
11. d) mustn't
12. c) must
13. b) advisable
14. b) should
15. c) had better
16. c) shouldn't have washed

2 Fill in the space:

a) be
b) must
c) have
d) may/can

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) once
2. c) it can't be cured and death is sure
3. d) she hated him most of all
4. b) she died
5. c) strongly

B) Answer the following questions:

5. When they think they are about to die.
6. Because she was reputed as a wicked and quarrelsome lady.
7. It is incurable disease caused by the bite of a mad dog.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- علينا أن نعتنى جيدًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد فى الحفاظ على توازن الطبيعة، وكما يقول العلماء: «الأشجار تساعد الأرض على التنفس».

٢- لطالما حلمنا جميعًا بالعيش فى بلد حديث ومتقدم حيث الناس يحترمون ويتسامحون مع بعضهم البعض.

٣- يُعتقد أن التلفزيون يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التى تجذب الأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار. كما أنه يساعد الطلاب من خلال تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.

B) Translate into English:

1. Parents must have proper health habits and personal hygiene rules in order for the child to learn these habits as children imitate their parents.
2. We must all bear the responsibility for maintaining the cleanliness of the Nile water, as well as preserving every drop of water because the Nile River is considered the artery of life in Egypt.
3. The government usually makes a great effort in times of crises, especially when the country is exposed to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses such as the coronavirus.

5 Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) blanket
2. b) burns
3. a) evacuated
4. c) immediately
5. a) wrapping
6. d) advice
7. c) injured
8. b) complains
9. d) argument
10. a) serious
11. c) hurt
12. b) apologise
13. d) argument
14. b) explain
15. c) on
16. d) for
17. c) about
18. b) with
19. d) on
20. b) understand/ e) grasp
21. b) safe/ d) secure
22. a) at once/ e) instantly
23. d) abandon/ e) empty
24. b) covered/ e) folded

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) don't have to
2. c) needn't
3. d) shouldn't have
4. b) needn't
5. d) had to
6. d) needn't have bought
7. b) should have checked
8. d) didn't have
9. c) have to
10. c) should have remembered
11. a) needn't have taken
12. c) was necessary
13. d) don't need
14. b) needn't have gone
15. a) should have studied
16. d) could have spent
17. b) will have to
18. c) needs
19. a) don't have to
20. c) was
21. b) won't have to go
22. d) must
23. b) mustn't
24. b) banned
25. a) needn't
26. c) have to
27. d) mustn't
28. b) shouldn't have
29. d) ought to have slept
30. d) had better

2 Fill in the space:

1.	a) mustn't/shouldn't	b) must	c) teach	d) necessary
2.	a) who	b) can	c) in	d) ought
3.	a) on	b) get/employ	c) must	d) have
4.	a) was	b) used	c) couldn't	d) have
5.	a) is	b) who	c) should	d) can/may



General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) trust
2. c) immediately
3. b) interpret
4. d) damage
5. a) cuts
6. b) stay
7. a) get
8. b) on
9. b) necessary
10. a) have to
11. b) mustn't
12. c) didn't have to go
13. c) mustn't
14. d) should have trained
15. d) needn't have worried
16. b) can't

2 Fill in the space:

a) must

b) where

c) be

d) might

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) They want to see if they can survive there.
2. a) One day, we will all live on Mars.
3. b) A place where a group of people live.
4. a) An offer to go to Mars.
5. d) tough

B) Answer the following questions:

6. Student's own answer.
7. Student's own answer.
8. special.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا فلا يمكن للناس الاستغناء عنه؛ لأننا نعتمد على الكهرباء في جميع جوانب الحياة تقريبًا.

٢- من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس الحياة وشرايينها. لا يمكن لجميع الكائنات الحية والآلات العيش أو العمل بدونها.

٣- يجب أن نضع في اعتبارنا أن زيادة الإنتاج هي الطريقة الوحيدة للاستقرار والأمان فبواسطته يمكننا زيادة دخلنا وتجاوز أعباء الحياة.

B) Translate into English:

1. It is necessary for any person to maintain the cleanliness of the surrounding environment, as well as his personal hygiene; in order not to be exposed to many infectious diseases.
2. Modern technology plays an outstanding and important role in our lives. We cannot imagine life without modern means of communication and transportation.
3. There is no doubt that pollution has serious effects on the environment, whether for humans, animals or plants, and hence we – individuals and governments – must work hard to reduce the percentage of pollution.

5 Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d)breathe
2. a)tie
3. a)contain
4. a)blanket
5. b)interpret
6. b)responding
7. d)remove
8. d)researching
9. c)realised
10. b)soiled
11. b)were
12. d)to send
13. b)have finished
14. c)Were
15. b)yourselves
16. c)had owned
17. d)quickly
18. b)has been playing
19. d)asleep
20. b)apart from

Test 1 Based on Unit 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) allergy
2. b) breathing
3. b) advice
4. c) equipment
5. b) ingredient
6. a) against
7. c) must
8. c) should have studied
9. b) mustn't
10. a) must
11. c) can't have attended
12. d) have to
13. a) smoothly/ b) simply
14. d) peak/ e) top

15. Fill in the space:

a) have

b) shouldn't

c) important/necessary

d) are

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) open
17. b) clever
18. b) Mr Hassan and the writer.
19. d) precious
20. b) announced

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Student's own answer.
22. Everything was in a terrible mess. The armchairs were all overturned, two small tables lay turned over on the floor and the radio had been smashed.
23. Student's own answer.

24. Translate into English:

- Keeping the environment clean has become a necessity, so the government and individuals must cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment good for life free from epidemics and diseases.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن الفيتامينات مهمة جدًا للصحة الجيدة، ومن المعروف أن عدم وجودها من الممكن أن يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة، وتسمى الأطعمة التى تحتوى على الفيتامينات الأطعمة الوقائية.

26. Student's own answer.



Robots



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) click
2. a) familiar
3. b) invention
4. c) navigate
5. d) GPS
6. a) get around
7. b) robot
8. c) location
9. c) internet
10. b) air-conditioning
11. d) chose
12. a) useful
13. c) consequences
14. c) annoying
15. b) stressful
16. d) ride
17. a) charging
18. b) hybrid
19. a) consequence
20. c) like
21. a) luxurious
22. a) give
23. d) with
24. b) on
25. c) gets
26. d) to
27. d) on
28. c) out
29. d) out
30. e) enjoyment/ c) amusement
31. c) difficultly/ e) hard
32. b) disturbing/ d) troublesome
33. a) passed/ e) succeeded
34. a) uncommon/ c) unfamiliar

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) stopped
2. c) are bitten
3. b) take
4. c) will call
5. c) get
6. b) don't pay
7. b) won
8. b) would get
9. d) knew
10. c) Should
11. a) ring
12. c) would be
13. b) will
14. d) dies
15. a) feel
16. d) would you be
17. d) didn't help
18. d) arrived
19. b) buy
20. b) read
21. c) feel
22. b) have
23. b) to see
24. c) weren't
25. d) Were
26. d) should
27. c) Should
28. d) visit
29. b) has
30. c) Were he to study
31. c) pick
32. b) threw
33. c) expands
34. b) should

2 Fill in the space:

1.	a) were	b) should	c) will	d) unless
2.	a) would	b) are	c) making	d) must
3.	a) should	b) being	c) long	d) most
4.	a) is	b) don't	c) are	d) if
5.	a) makes	b) if/when	c) where	d) reading

UNIT 8

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) familiar
2. c) robot
3. d) click
4. a) went
5. d) with
6. b) to
7. c) had
8. a) would flood
9. a) get
10. d) freezes
11. d) leave
12. d) When
13. c) unless
14. d) If

2 Fill in the space:

a) would
b) when
c) will
d) being

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. d) it would cause a big loss of wealth
2. c) it is a habit that causes death
3. a) encouraged a large number to stop smoking
4. c) they opened new markets in the Third World Countries
5. a) exceeded

B) **Answer the following questions:**

6. Media campaigns were launched explaining the dangers and encouraging smokers to stop smoking.
7. Because the number of those who have died from smoking-related diseases surpasses the number of victims of epidemics, wars or accidents in our times.
8. By opening new markets in what is called the Third World Countries.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- لقد وجد بعض العلماء أن الناس أكثر عرضة للإصابة بالزكام عندما يكونون غير سعداء أو تحت الضغط لأن جهاز المناعة يكون أقل كفاءة عندما نكون قلقين.

٢- تحترم جميع الأديان الديمقراطية، فجميعها تحترم حقوق الإنسان وتحترم كل القيم التى نحملها جميعًا.

٣- أي بلد فى حاجة ماسة إلى أصحاب الحكمة لتحديث نظام التعليم وتحقيق العدالة بين الناس.

B) **Translate into English:**

1. The underground is one of the important achievements of the Egyptian state in recent years, for its important role in solving the problem of traffic congestion and reducing the number of accidents.
2. We all, as individuals and governments, must do our utmost to be able to improve the quality of our domestic products and thus achieve economic growth.
3. The mother is the child's first school, as she is the one who teaches him morals and values and how to deal with those around him before he learns to read and write.

5 Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) quiz
2. a) translation
3. c) chatting
4. d) feedback
5. b) app
6. c) cost
7. a) understanding
8. d) comments
9. b) documentary
10. c) surprising
11. b) effect
12. a) technology
13. d) exactly
14. a) smartphone
15. b) do
16. c) make
17. c) into
18. a) of
19. b) confessed/ e) acknowledge
20. d) relaxed/ e) calm
21. a) merit/ c) pros
22. b) incompletely/ d) partially
23. a) astonishing/ b) amazing

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) would have got
2. b) would have been
3. c) had taken
4. d) unless
5. a) had arrived
6. c) had known
7. c) wouldn't eat
8. d) could have sent
9. d) had seen
10. c) had lived
11. b) would have become
12. a) would have lost
13. c) had thrown
14. a) would have grown
15. b) had had
16. c) had given
17. d) would have happened
18. c) had been
19. d) wouldn't have been
20. b) being helped
21. d) Had
22. c) hadn't been
23. a) if
24. c) As long as
25. a) If
26. d) If it weren't
27. c) would go
28. b) had been
29. b) provided
30. d) Unless they ran

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) were b) sent c) for d) will
2. a) started b) has c) hadn't d) when
3. a) when b) in c) should d) which
4. a) many b) know c) when d) the

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) chatting
2. b) everyday
3. d) type
4. b) personal
5. a) extreme
6. c) against
7. a) to
8. c) would have irrigate
9. b) had won
10. d) if
11. b) Had
12. a) if
13. d) would have had
14. a) would have died
15. b) would have gone

2 Fill in the space:

a) will
b) that
c) be
d) happens

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) felt uneasy
2. c) eighteen
3. b) persuade them to be vegetarians
4. c) eating a few meat meals
5. c) ignored

B) Answer the following questions:

6. When she suddenly thought of it as eating an animal/ After eating a few meat meals.
7. Student's own answer.
8. Student's own answer.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- إن تدخين السجائر والتلوث عدوان مخيفان للإنسان لأنهما يدمران الصحة ويجلبان المعاناة والموت.

٢- على عكس وسـائل النقل الأخرى، فإن الدراجة لا تسـتخدم البنزين، وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على الهواء نظيفًا ولا تحتاج إلى مسـاحة كبيرة لوقوفها مثل السيارات.

٣- هناك أنواع مختلفة من السياحة التى تجذب السياح إلى بلادنا، والنوع الأكثر شيوعًا هو السفر من أجل المتعة والاسترخاء.

B) Translate into English:

1. In Egypt, there is no discrimination based on religion, gender, colour, social position or wealth. We are all equal; man or woman; Muslim or Christian.
2. The government encourages local industries to do without many imports which need a lot of hard currencies and in the same time, provide job opportunities for youth.
3. At the present time, no country can stand apart from other countries and no country can produce all its need of food.

5 Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) advantage
2. b) benefits
3. c) click
4. a) communicated
5. b) control
6. b) familiar
7. d) navigate
8. a) vehicle
9. c) got around
10. a) position
11. c) the best
12. a) him
13. a) since
14. d) whoever
15. b) a few
16. c) has been learning
17. d) is
18. b) was written
19. c) interesting
20. d) large enough

Test 2 Based on Unit 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) get around
2. a) electric
3. c) journey
4. b) discovered
5. d) abroad
6. a) with
7. b) send
8. d) didn't have
9. a) use
10. b) wouldn't be
11. d) is put
12. c) had been invited
13. a) disturbing/ e) troublesome
14. c) harmful/ e) useless

15. Fill in the space:

a) go

b) have

c) are

d) fast/soon

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) his parents at home
17. d) little care
18. b) difficult
19. b) baby
20. c) trust in

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Student's own answer.
22. The care there is mechanical rather than warmhearted. There is too much risk of epidemics of colds and other infectious diseases.
23. Student's own answer.

24. Translate into English:

- The people should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting up small projects which employ a number of workers.

25. Translate into Arabic:

• لقد أصبح الاتصال أسهل وفرصة للأفراد للحصول على معلومات ضخمة بسرعة كبيرة متاحة.

26. Student's own answer.



A good education



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) governess
2. b) cruel
3. a) employ
4. d) servants
5. c) author
6. c) employer
7. a) fire
8. b) advertised
9. d) Education
10. c) nearby
11. a) orphan
12. b) wealthy
13. d) Honesty
14. c) hurt
15. a) dead
16. b) energy
17. d) continue
18. c) gardener
19. a) imagined
20. a) upset
21. c) taught
22. c) improve
23. d) extra
24. c) become
25. d) apply
26. c) of
27. b) for
28. d) for
29. b) fire/e) discharge
30. d) wicked e) unkind
31. a) fitting/b) relaxing
32. c) common d) conventional
33. a) earlier/d) former

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) was given
2. d) were sent
3. c) were taken
4. b) was taken
5. d) be postponed
6. a) were arrested
7. c) was stolen
8. c) wasn't checked
9. a) wasn't used
10. d) to make
11. b) to be disturbed
12. b) is reported
13. a) was damaged
14. b) was formed
15. d) designed
16. c) being cooked
17. d) be deceived
18. a) to
19. b) was made
20. c) was born
21. c) was told
22. b) were invited
23. c) disappeared
24. c) was forced
25. d) being seen
26. a) weren't answered
27. d) was invited
28. a) built
29. b) being taken
30. d) collapsed

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) was b) taken c) called d) most
2. a) was b) called c) were d) to
3. a) was b) are c) is d) used
4. a) being b) of c) make d) by
5. a) known b) used c) are d) be

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) cruel
2. d) education
3. b) argue
4. a) orphan
5. d) servants
6. c) author
7. c) century
8. a) employ
9. c) had been finished
10. a) was elected
11. b) was invented
12. c) were locked
13. b) got lost
14. d) can't be denied
15. a) to me
16. c) been treated

2 Fill in the space:

a) visited
b) is
c) been
d) be

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) it gives a sweet flavour to our life
2. c) men who side against fashion are becoming a little in number
3. d) it provides employment and gains for those connected with it
4. c) new materials have been introduced
5. d) large numbers

B) Answer the following questions:

6. The world would be a dull place if women always wore the same clothes.
7. Student's own number.
8. The clothing industry spends a lot on industrial research new materials such as nylon; rayon and terylene have been introduced. Also, it is a huge import-export business which is important to the world trade.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - لقد أصبح من الواضح أن أخطر مشكلة تؤثر علينا فى الوقت الحالى هى العدد المتزايد للأشخاص الذين يسكنون هذا الكوكب بالفعل.
٢ - أحب الموسيقى لأنها تعتبر من أهم وأقوى الأشياء فى حياتى. ستكون حياتى بدون الألحان والتناغم فارغة تماماً.
٣ - تظهر القيم والأخلاق الحميدة للشعب المصرى فى أوقات المحن والأزمات كما رأينا فى أزمة فيروس كورونا.

B) Translate into English:

1. We must provide a safe environment for people with special needs, take care of the talented and provide educational systems that develop their talents.
2. Many Egyptian writers have written many articles and books to demand women's rights and equality between them and men.
3. Good, advanced and creative education is a right for every Egyptian child to grow up and be a citizen able to help his country keep pace with developed countries.

5 Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) argues
2. d) change
3. a) equipment
4. b) explain
5. c) brilliant
6. b) description
7. c) exciting
8. a) serious
9. c) discussion
10. d) so-called
11. a) bridge
12. a) confidence
13. b) solve
14. c) instead
15. a) terrible
16. b) keen
17. c) instance
18. d) to
19. d) for
20. d) lonely
21. b) distract / e) complicate
22. a) certainly / d) absolutely
23. a) boring / b) dull

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) was
2. c) had
3. d) Having
4. b) had left
5. b) because
6. b) had learnt
7. b) No sooner
8. c) had seen
9. c) had caused
10. a) On
11. c) walked
12. b) hadn't eaten
13. c) screamed
14. d) wasn't done
15. b) had finished
16. c) done
17. a) had had
18. a) had forgotten
19. a) began
20. a) had left
21. d) had broken
22. a) had fallen
23. b) hadn't cleaned
24. a) had gone
25. c) when
26. d) when
27. b) invited
28. d) did I arrive
29. a) until
30. d) After

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) was b) didn't c) When d) went/travelled
2. a) where b) on c) by d) have
3. a) being b) had c) were d) by
4. a) be b) to c) was d) by
5. a) before b) used c) than d) which

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) wealthy
2. c) hurt
3. d) continue
4. b) energy
5. a) boarding
6. c) significance
7. c) a success
8. d) with
9. d) didn't
10. b) in
11. a) travelled
12. c) than
13. a) had disappeared
14. b) 'd bought
15. c) didn't recognise
16. d) had lived

2 Fill in the space:

a) is
b) is
c) Because
d) to

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) are sometimes frightened to go home
2. b) nurseries and child minders cost a lot
3. c) look after children whose parents both work
4. a) is usually bad
5. c) rare

B) Answer the following questions:

6. They may get into trouble in the streets or they may get into dangerous situations at home, when playing with matches, or while preparing something to eat. But the problem goes beyond that of school children.
7. Student's own answer.
8. Babies.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين، لأنها السلم الذى من خلاله ترتقى البشرية وتتطور، ولكنها يمكن أن تكون أيضا أداة للتدمير.
٢- تعتمد السعادة وراحة البال على قوة التحكم فى أفكار الفرد وتوجيهها. على المرء أن يتجنب ما هو مؤلم.
٣- شخصية كل شخص مختلفة وفريدة مثل بصمات الأصابع. يمكننا عادة معرفة شخصية الناس من خلال تصرفهم مع الآخرين.

B) Translate into English:

1. Every year, Egypt celebrates the World Child's Day in November when children, who successfully take part in different activities, are given prizes.
2. In most countries, men usually catch heart diseases more than women and doctors say that heart disease is connected to daily life pressures, living style and kind of food.
3. The government has prepared an ambitious plan to upgrade education, raise the standard of teachers and also attract students to come to school.

5 Student's own answer.



Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) orphaned
2. c) copy
3. d) argued
4. b) expert
5. a) conclusion
6. a) believed
7. d) cruel
8. a) stranger
9. a) brilliant
10. b) explain
11. b) myself
12. a) don't they
13. d) no article
14. d) complaining
15. d) to sit
16. c) because
17. b) as well as
18. b) in spite of
19. b) are
20. a) working

Test 3 Based on Unit 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) equipment
2. d) expert
3. a) especially
4. a) team
5. a) feelings
6. d) with
7. b) had we heard
8. c) had already eaten
9. c) spending
10. b) worked
11. b) were committed
12. a) are being cleaned
13. d) poor/ e) destitute
14. a) enormous/ e) giant

15. **Fill in the space:**

a) gives

b) is

c) said/known

d) without

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

16. a) He was optimistic about science.
17. c) anything might happen
18. d) Space exploration
19. c) To get control of
20. a) put solutions to

B) **Answer the following questions:**

21. He saw technology differently. He wrote about the possible dangers of technology. He thought that technology could be bad.
22. Because it is evolved with technology and technology is changing all times.
23. Student's own answer.

24. **Translate into English:**

- The rise in committing crimes among youth is considered one of the most serious problems that face the state and that we should all fight strictly to be able to live in a safe society.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- لا ينبغي أن تكـون الوظيفة مجرد مصدر للمال. يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا للتنمية الذاتية. فالعثور على وظيفة في مجال تستمتع به هو عامل مهم للغاية.

26. **Student's own answer.**

Test on Revision 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) sneeze
2. c) off
3. c) allergy
4. b) realises
5. c) employees
6. b) advertised
7. b) would go
8. c) until
9. a) mustn't
10. c) can't have seen
11. c) were marked
12. d) advisable
13. a) understood/ d) grasped
14. b) stay/ e) remain

15. Fill in the space:

a) is

b) be

c) will

d) than

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. b) less flavoured
17. d) moderate
18. b) increases appetite
19. a) more
20. b) losing some weight

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Student's own answer.
22. Student's own answer.
23. By chewing food.

24. Translate into Arabic:

إن للوالدين دورًا مهمًا في تشكيل شخصية أطفالهم وتعديل سلوكياتهم وأخلاقهم.

25. Translate into English:

Communication is one of the greatest challenges in relations between men and women. Researchers say that the main problem is different ways of communications for men and women.

26. Student's own answer.



What's your job?



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) attendants
2. d) construction
3. b) contracts
4. c) qualified
5. a) practical
6. d) industries
7. b) degree
8. c) skills
9. a) stressful
10. d) training
11. b) qualifications
12. a) casualty
13. c) communicators
14. b) natural
15. a) construction
16. c) airline
17. a) compassionate
18. b) non-biased
19. d) so far
20. a) meet
21. c) do
22. b) to
23. d) with
24. d) variety
25. a) did
26. a) last
27. b) breaking
28. c) for
29. d) sympathy / e) mercy
30. a) amazingly / e) astonishingly
31. a) annoy / d) worry
32. c) afraid / e) scared
33. a) analysed / e) clarified

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) boil
2. a) told
3. c) is
4. a) is enjoying
5. d)told
6. c) couldn't
7. c) wouldn't be
8. b) would buy
9. d) had been
10. a) will meet
11. c) the previous week
12. d) said
13. a) asked
14. c) that he had seen
15. d) was doing
16. b) the following lesson
17. d) did
18. c) was
19. a) said
20. d) had been repaired
21. c) is
22. a) wants
23. a) said
24. b) had to
25. c) was travelling
26. b) must
27. d) met

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) said b) told c) had d) asked
2. a) that b) said c) will d) to
3. a) before b) was c) tell d) said
4. a) why b) say c) better d) can
5. a) say b) with c) that d) being

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b)reassurance
2. d)frightened
3. a)casualty
4. b)natural
5. d)construction
6. c)qualifying
7. c)decline
8. b)too
9. c)was making
10. a)loves
11. b)was watching
12. c)was
13. b)had
14. a)had done
15. a)was
16. c)how to get

2 Fill in the space:

a)say
b)is
c)most
d)that

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b)women are superior to men
2. d)women are the boss in every branch
3. d)Being wives and mothers
4. d)women are bad drivers
5. a)responsible

B) Answer the following questions:

5. To ask for equality with men as they have a weaker case.
6. To claim that men and women are equal and have the same abilities.
7. It means that no one chooses women to share in politics but they themselves can share without any help.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- إن سيناء جزء عزيز من بلدنا وهي ليست مجرد صحراء في الشمال الشرقي لمصر، ولكنها رمز لكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.

٢- إن الإنسان اجتماعي بطبيعته، وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب عليه أن يولي اهتمامًا كبيرًا لكل ما يفعله لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حوله سواء بالسلب أو الإيجاب.

٣- يجب على المتقدمين للوظيفة أن يكون لديهم معرفة للغة أجنبية واحدة على الأقل، وأيضًا يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الآلي.

B) Translate into English:

1. Dams are built to store additional quantities of water behind them which can be used later. An example of this is the High Dam in Egypt that was built to face any water shortage.
2. We must reduce pollution in our environment by planting more trees and rationalising in using energy inside or outside homes.
3. Everyone in our society has a dream that they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hard and be patient to achieve it.

5 Student's own answer.

UNIT 10

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) confident
2. a) fair
3. c) firefighters
4. b) loyal
5. d) fancy
6. a) punctual
7. c) immediate
8. a) availability
9. b) sirens
10. d) interest
11. c) experience
12. a) detail
13. c) qualifications
14. c) plenty
15. d) cuisine
16. c) to
17. b) for
18. a) for
19. a) trustful / e) candid
20. d) boring / e) dull
21. a) disloyal / c) unfaithful

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) could score
2. c) if
3. d) will have
4. b) I had gone
5. c) she had been
6. b) whether
7. c) preferred
8. d) asked
9. b) visited
10. c) had played
11. b) was reading
12. a) have told
13. c) he is
14. d) I will take
15. b) the station is
16. c) Don't
17. b) advised
18. d) should study
19. b) prefer
20. d) denied
21. d) no word
22. c) tell
23. c) inquired
24. b) asked
25. a) go

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) asked	b) wanted	c) whether	d) to
2. a) told	b) said	c) was	d) promised
3. a) would	b) where	c) asked	d) were
4. a) say	b) would	c) who	d) Having

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) flexible
2. c) required
3. d) plumber
4. c) hardworking
5. a) major
6. a) practical
7. a) for
8. c) variety
9. c) but
10. d) asked
11. b) said
12. c) she could get
13. b) tell
14. d) promised
15. d) whether
16. c) what

2 Fill in the space:

a) made
b) be
c) if/when
d) may

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) honest
2. c) twice
3. c) the monkey's tricks were not very good
4. c) monkey
5. d) stayed without moving

B) Answer the following questions:

5. The Old Man and the Monkey.
6. When the old man put his hat on the ground and people began to put pennies in it.
7. He was holding the dead monkey and weeping.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- في الواقع نحن أكثر سعادة من أجدادنا؛ لأننا نستمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي تجعل حياتنا أسهل وأكثر متعة وراحة.

٢- لحل مشكلة نقص المياه فإن العالم يقتصد ويرشد في استخدامها، وهناك حل آخر وهو إعادة استخدام المياه وهذا يعني استخدامها مرة أخرى.

٣- يفشل العديد من الأشخاص في الحياة، وهذا ليس بسبب عدم معرفتهم بوظيفتهم، ولكن لأنهم يستسلمون بعد أول فشل فالفشل يجب ألا يحبطك.

B) Translate into English:

1. This revolution in using the computer and the internet has led to installing computers in every classroom and connect every school to the internet.
2. We all have a precious gem inside our skull that no one can believe that it is greater and more important than any computer. That's the brain without which man can't think or move.
3. There is no doubt that polluted water is not good for drinking, moreover it is dangerous as it makes man ill and destroy the environment, animals and fish.

5 Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) graduate
2. a) contracted
3. d) frustrated
4. a) casualties
5. c) careered
6. b) construction
7. b) attendant
8. a) confident
9. a) degree
10. b) reassured
11. c) to go
12. d) had met
13. b) who
14. c) Although
15. b) rich enough
16. a) would come
17. d) weren't told
18. d) yet
19. c) Should
20. b) to have had



Based on Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b)industry
2. b)compassion
3. c)stressful
4. d)training
5. a)practical
6. c)of
7. d)said
8. a)would
9. c)will buy
10. b)was cleaning
11. c)had been doing
12. a)suggested
13. a)major / d)leading
14. c)rigid / d)inflexible

15. Fill in the space:

a)thought/said
b)When
c)couldn't
d)have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. c)Doing business online.
17. a)Time spent with children at home.
18. c)The benefits companies can get from having telecommuters.
19. a)The concept of a "workweek" is disappearing from many people's lives.
20. b)not active

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Yes, as it will be much easier and comfortable.
22. They fear that employees who were not being watched would become lazy and undisciplined.
23. By using the telephone, email and instant messaging.

24. Translate into English:

- Reclaiming more deserts and developing farming methods to produce more crops are the positive solution to the problems of over population and starvation.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إنها لمسئولية الآباء والمدرسة والجامعة أن يحذروا الشباب من الآثار المدمرة للمخدرات وأصحاب السوء.

26. Student's own answer.



Amazing people



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) achieved
2. d) activists
3. b) disability
4. c) campaigned
5. b) medals
6. a) muscles
7. d) wheelchair
8. c) Ramps
9. b) amazing
10. a) competition
11. d) media
12. c) charities
13. c) guess
14. b) improve
15. c) inspire
16. d) charity
17. a) ensure
18. d) campaign
19. b) marketing
20. c) championship
21. a) Polio
22. a) noticed
23. c) Doing
24. c) northern
25. c) with
26. d) for
27. b) on
28. b) from
29. b) distinction / e) variation
30. d) privately / e) individually
31. a) discouraged / d) depressed

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) who
2. b) who
3. b) when
4. b) where
5. a) that
6. d) whom
7. b) where
8. c) which
9. c) where
10. c) who
11. c) whose
12. b) that
13. c) whose
14. a) who
15. c) whose
16. b) when
17. a) which
18. c) where
19. b) which
20. d) who's
21. b) whose
22. b) whom
23. a) are carried
24. a) to whom
25. a) who

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) where b) who c) told d) which
2. a) which b) whose c) has d) to
3. a) whom b) would c) who d) that
4. a) on b) be c) which d) by

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) accomplish
2. a) competition
3. b) medals
4. c) opportunity
5. c) event
6. a) went
7. a) amazed
8. d) repair
9. b) that
10. a) whom
11. b) from which
12. d) who's
13. b) where
14. c) in which
15. b) which
16. d) who

2 Fill in the space:

a) where
b) which
c) who
d) whose

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) reduces
2. b) It is not recommended
3. c) to make a future profit
4. b) Time makes your possessions increase in value.
5. d) master

B) Answer the following questions:

5. To buy beautiful objects from the past such as Persian rugs, furniture and silver and above all clocks. This makes your money increase with the passing of time.
6. Our culture and personality.
7. Certain men were clever at measuring the time of day according to the beating of their own hearts. Every hour or so, they would shout out the time.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - هناك الكثير من الأشياء تذكر فى صالح التقدم التكنولوجى ومنها أنها بلا شك تجعل حياة الناس أسهل.

٢ - إن المواطنين الصالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون وقتهم وأنفسهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية عائلاتهم، وهم أيضًا مستعدون للتضحية بأنفسهم عندما يكون وطنهم فى خطر.

٣ - إن الاحتباس الحرارى ليس فقط تهديدًا لصحتنا فى المستقبل، إنه بالفعل يؤدى إلى أكثر من مائة وخمسين ألفًا من حالات الوفاة سنويًا.

B) Translate into English:

1. Many writers and novelists depend on nonfictional stories in their writings and consider the experiences in them make us gain more experience in life.
2. In our society, crime rates have increased remarkably recently and crime is a serious phenomenon that requires cooperation of the individuals and the government sectors to find a radical solution to it.
3. We all should be proud of our disabled players who made great achievements in the field of sport that healthy players failed to make.

5 Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) support
2. d) sales
3. c) apologise
4. b) staff
5. a) interviews
6. d) department
7. a) hole
8. b) noisy
9. c) trains
10. c) training
11. d) make
12. a) for
13. c) for
14. b) to
15. d) qualifications
16. b) civilised / e) mannerly
17. b) damage / e) break
18. a) provide / e) aid

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) what
2. c) I applied for
3. d) which
4. c) whose
5. c) whom
6. d) written
7. a) who
8. b) from whom
9. b) which
10. a) I'd lend her
11. a) leading
12. a) whose
13. b) which
14. d) which
15. d) at which
16. d) that
17. d) from whom
18. d) where
19. c) with whom
20. c) ,who is 60,
21. c) in whose
22. d) whose

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) where b) whom c) which d) who
2. a) which b) some/other/different c) what d) whose
3. a) that/which b) which c) were d) on/in
4. a) what b) have c) mustn't d) by

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) loud
2. b) receive
3. c) Make
4. c) down
5. b) complaint
6. d) in
7. b) forward
8. a) to
9. c) built
10. b) where I worked
11. a) which
12. d) that
13. c) What
14. b) wearing
15. a) what
16. c) containing

2 Fill in the space:

a) that
b) which
c) all/our
d) when

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) teen stress
2. a) within control
3. c) quality
4. d) stress
5. d) caffeine

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Taking on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends.
6. By doing physical exercises, enough sleep and managing their time.
7. a) frightened = panic b) sufficient = enough

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- هل تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ يعتقد الكثير من الخبراء أن العقاب طريقة سلبية فى تربية الأطفال.

٢- فى الماضى كان الناس محرومين تمامًا من ممارسة حقوقهم خاصة الحقوق السياسية.

٣- إن قواتنا المسلحة تتصدى لأى تهديد خارجي أو داخلى لكى نستطيع أن نعيش بشعور من الأمن والأمان.

B) Translate into English:

1. Youth conference that is held every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth from different countries of the world to meet, discuss and exchange experiences and cultures.
2. Mass Media help in guiding public opinion towards the importance of hygiene, social distancing and taking protective measures to keep citizens' health from the diseases of the age among which the new coronavirus.
3. Our beloved country, Egypt, is considered an example of religious tolerance and national unity through peaceful co-existence among people's sections which has been found over hundreds of years.

5 Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) disabled
2. c) muscle
3. b) inspire
4. c) campaign
5. b) impact
6. a) charity
7. b) competition
8. a) positive
9. a) hold
10. b) lift
11. a) At
12. c) used
13. d) happy
14. c) much
15. c) has
16. d) so
17. a) ours
18. c) play
19. d) anywhere
20. b) despite



Based on Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) achieving
2. c) campaign
3. c) inspire
4. b) staff
5. b) effect
6. a) championship
7. b) who
8. c) where
9. a) that
10. c) on which
11. d) that
12. c) whose
13. a) noisy / c) blaring
14. c) please / d) satisfy

15. Fill in the space:

a) who
b) told
c) where/from which
d) whose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. d) different
17. c) women
18. c) fifty
19. d) decrease
20. b) low payment

B) Answer the following questions:

21. I think women are entering the work force in great numbers for the first time.
22. Women in China now receive equal pay for equal work, therefore they are not dependent on their families as they once were.
23. To assure that women are really equal to men in all fields.

24. Translate into English:

- Sport has a great role in fighting and solving social problems such as crime, violence and addiction and also can help children and youth to form an effective and independent personality.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- لا شيء نفعله في هذا العالم يتم في معزل؛ فالآن من المعروف أن أحد مفاتيح النجاح الأساسية هو القدرة على العمل مع الآخرين.

26. Student's own answer.



Hard work



Vocabulary Exercises (Part 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) disappeared
2. a) solution
3. b) mystery
4. d) weave
5. c) mysterious
6. a) weaver
7. a) offers
8. b) disappearance
9. d) called
10. c) cottage
11. a) empty
12. b) solve
13. c) fireplace
14. d) stealing
15. a) realise
16. b) surprised
17. d) unpleasant
18. d) prove
19. a) village
20. c) mystery
21. d) Artificial
22. a) manual
23. b) operate
24. b) customers
25. c) instead
26. a) on
27. d) from
28. c) of
29. a) blank / d) vacant
30. b) innocent / c) guiltless
31. d) nasty / e) undesirable

Language Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) must have gone
2. a) must have lost
3. b) can't have seen
4. a) must be
5. c) can't
6. a) must have been
7. d) must have passed
8. a) must
9. b) must have been
10. b) must have run
11. b) must
12. a) must be
13. c) must have been
14. c) must be
15. b) must be
16. c) must have rained
17. a) can't
18. a) must
19. a) must
20. a) might have been stolen
21. c) must have forgotten
22. b) might
23. b) must have escaped
24. a) must have got
25. b) must be
26. d) must have been
27. c) can't
28. d) might
29. d) can't

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) have b) been c) must d) was
2. a) can't b) must c) wasn't d) into
3. a) can't b) didn't c) might d) be
4. a) won't b) have c) will d) must
5. a) might b) may/might c) of d) be

General Exercises (Part 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) disappeared
2. c) empty
3. b) trust
4. a) hide
5. b) solve
6. b) guilty
7. a) weaver
8. c) to
9. c) can't have finished
10. c) must have missed
11. b) can't have
12. d) must have
13. b) must have
14. d) might be
15. b) must have been
16. a) can't

2 Fill in the space:

a) that/which
b) it
c) must
d) with

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) an atomic bomb is far more powerful than any bomb used before.
2. b) a hydrogen bomb has been perfected.
3. d) a hydrogen bomb could kill far more people than an atomic bomb.
4. c) the world would not have known how powerful the atomic bomb was.
5. d) entire

B) Answer the following questions:

5. If there were another war, and if hydrogen bombs were to be used in it, the whole world would be destroyed.
6. I think if there are no wars and no mass destructive weapons.
7. If this bomb had not been used then, the world wouldn't have realised to the full of destructive power.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- إن الصداقة الوطيدة هى أهم أشكال الدعم الاجتماعى تأثيرًا؛ فهى تهدئ من آثار التوتر وتؤدى إلى صحة بدنية وعقلية أفضل.
٢- لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل المؤثرة فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.
٣- هنـاك بعض الإجراءات البسـيطة والتى مـن الممكن أن تحافظ بها على صحتك لفترة أطول، وأول هذه الإجراءات هى غسـيل الأسنان بمعجون الأسنان مرتين يوميًا.

B) Answer the following questions:

1. It is known that extreme fear of exams is a double-edged weapon as it sometimes helps you to study and sometimes makes you worried and so affects your concentration badly.
2. We should put into consideration that there are some people who are unable to control their fears so they are in need of help to overcome these fears.
3. Illiteracy, ignorance and poverty are the real enemies that hinder the development of any nation and so there must be suitable and radical solutions to get rid of them.

5 Student's own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Part 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) character
2. c) page-turner
3. a) plot
4. b) abandoned
5. c) checked
6. d) close
7. a) crimes
8. a) divided
9. b) warehouse
10. c) puzzle
11. c) legends
12. b) BCE
13. a) monster
14. c) traditional
15. d) brought
16. a) gone
17. d) recommend
18. b) take
19. c) of
20. d) to
21. b) displeasure / e) gloom
22. a) comical / b) humorous
23. a) far / b) remote

Language Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) must have been
2. c) shouldn't have done
3. b) can't have
4. c) can't
5. a) must have been
6. d) ought to have bought
7. d) must have lost
8. b) must have
9. b) have been
10. b) must have been
11. d) might have left
12. c) must have been
13. b) might have
14. c) must have taken
15. d) can't
16. d) could have spent
17. b) might have told
18. a) can't
19. c) can't have been
20. d) must have been
21. a) might
22. b) can't have seen
23. b) can't have seen
24. d) shouldn't have eaten

2 Fill in the space:

1. a) after	b) must/should	c) who	d) will
2. a) gets	b) would	c) told/advised	d) prepared/arranged
3. a) needn't	b) can	c) can't	d) whether
4. a) must/might	b) have	c) can't	d) might/may
5. a) would	b) when/if	c) there	d) on

General Exercises (Part 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) deserted
2. d) shallow
3. a) believe
4. b) explain
5. d) interesting
6. a) laugh
7. b) describe
8. d) of
9. d) should have been
10. d) must be
11. d) must have
12. a) must have left
13. d) should have spent
14. b) must be
15. a) must have fallen
16. c) must

2 Fill in the space:

a) must
b) too
c) on
d) won't/don't

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) He had had a bad accident
2. d) He was famous
3. a) The same thing had happened to him in a film
4. c) Relax
5. a) on Monday

B) Answer the following questions:

5. When there are many patients and many accidents. Also, she worked such long hours that it was sometimes difficult to be sociable after work.
6. I think he will die as he was injured badly in his head.
7. She was respected by each member of the staff at the hospital. She always felt happy when people recovered and finally went home again.

4 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- يجب على الحكومة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية التحتية للكثير من العشوائيات، وإلا فسوف نواجه الكثير من الكوارث.
٢- ليس من المعقول أن ننتقد كل شيء دون أخذ أى خطوة إيجابية باتجاه التطور؛ ولذا يجب أن نعمل كثيرًا ونتكلم قليلًا.
٣- لقد عانت النساء كثيرًا فى الماضى من الأمية والتمييز من حيث النوع، وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق سياسية.

B) Answer the following questions:

1. It is a must for everyone in society, young or old, to respect and appreciate teachers as they are the base of learning process.
2. A good evidence of Egyptians' determination to build their country is carrying out the New Suez Canal project by the government under the president's leadership.
3. Thanks to mass media and satellites, the world has become a small village where it is easy to communicate with anyone in any country while sitting in your place.

5 Student's own answer.

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) abandoned
2. b) engaged
3. b) paces
4. a) plot
5. c) adopted
6. a) stone
7. a) bear
8. a) buried
9. a) puzzled
10. a) themes
11. b) such a
12. d) to have escaped
13. a) have
14. a) she go
15. b) to tell
16. a) Had
17. a) buying
18. b) went
19. d) hadn't bought
20. b) will have met



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) guilty
2. a) lonely
3. a) lies
4. b) ensure
5. d) shape
6. a) archaeologist
7. c) to
8. b) with
9. a) must have worked
10. c) might be
11. b) must have been
12. c) can't be
13. b) must have played
14. c) must be
15. a) amusing / d) entertaining
16. b) shallow / c) superficial

17. Fill in the space:

a) was
b) when
c) must
d) not

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18. d) the sun
19. a) two
20. c) energy without pollution
21. c) dry animal waste and form it into bricks for burning
22. c) high cost

B) Answer the following questions:

23. Once the seeds have been taken out, the rest of the plant can be dried and burnt.
24. It would produce huge amounts of power which could be sent down to the earth.
25. As the sun never stops shining, it can supply solar energy for twenty-four hours a day.

26. Translate into English:

- Many people object to what is called globalisation as they think that it serves rich countries not poor ones and they demand to modify this system to achieve justice among countries.

27. Translate into Arabic:

- واحدة من أول إجراءات حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هي تثقيف الجماهير لمساعدتهم على فهم الحاجة إلى إنجاب طفل أو طفلين على الأكثر.

28. Student's own answer.

Test on Revision 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) competed
2. a) applied
3. b) rewarding
4. d) confident
5. a) held
6. c) to
7. a) solution
8. b) mystery
9. d) stealing
10. b) surprised
11. d) would be
12. c) until
13. b) banned
14. d) were
15. d) asked
16. b) being listened

17. Fill in the space:

a) While
b) the
c) was
d) that

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

18. c) is less effective than what he does.
19. a) they follow the example set by their teacher.
20. c) disregard and ignore personal danger.
21. b) those who speak much and do little.
22. b) patriots

B) Answer the following questions:

23. When they don't follow advice they give to people by themselves.
24. By teaching people by what they said as much as by what they did.
25. Student's own answer.

26. Translate into English:

- The strong relation and mutual respect between father and mother are considered the fertile soil in which their children grow to be sound persons physically and psychologically.

27. Translate into Arabic:

حقيقة لا يمكن إنكارها أن الشباب هم أساس أي تقدم للأمة؛ لذلك يجب على الحكومة أن تعطي اهتمامها لمساعدتهم لكي يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين

28. Student's own answer.